



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.

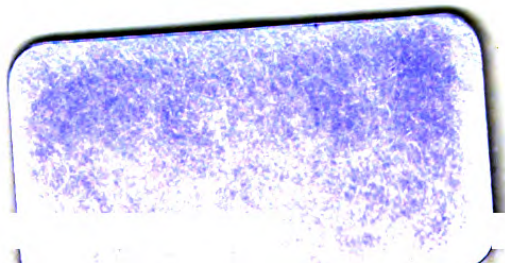
*Laurie's Manuals of Specific Instruction.*

FACTS AND FEATURES  
OF  
ENGLISH HISTORY.

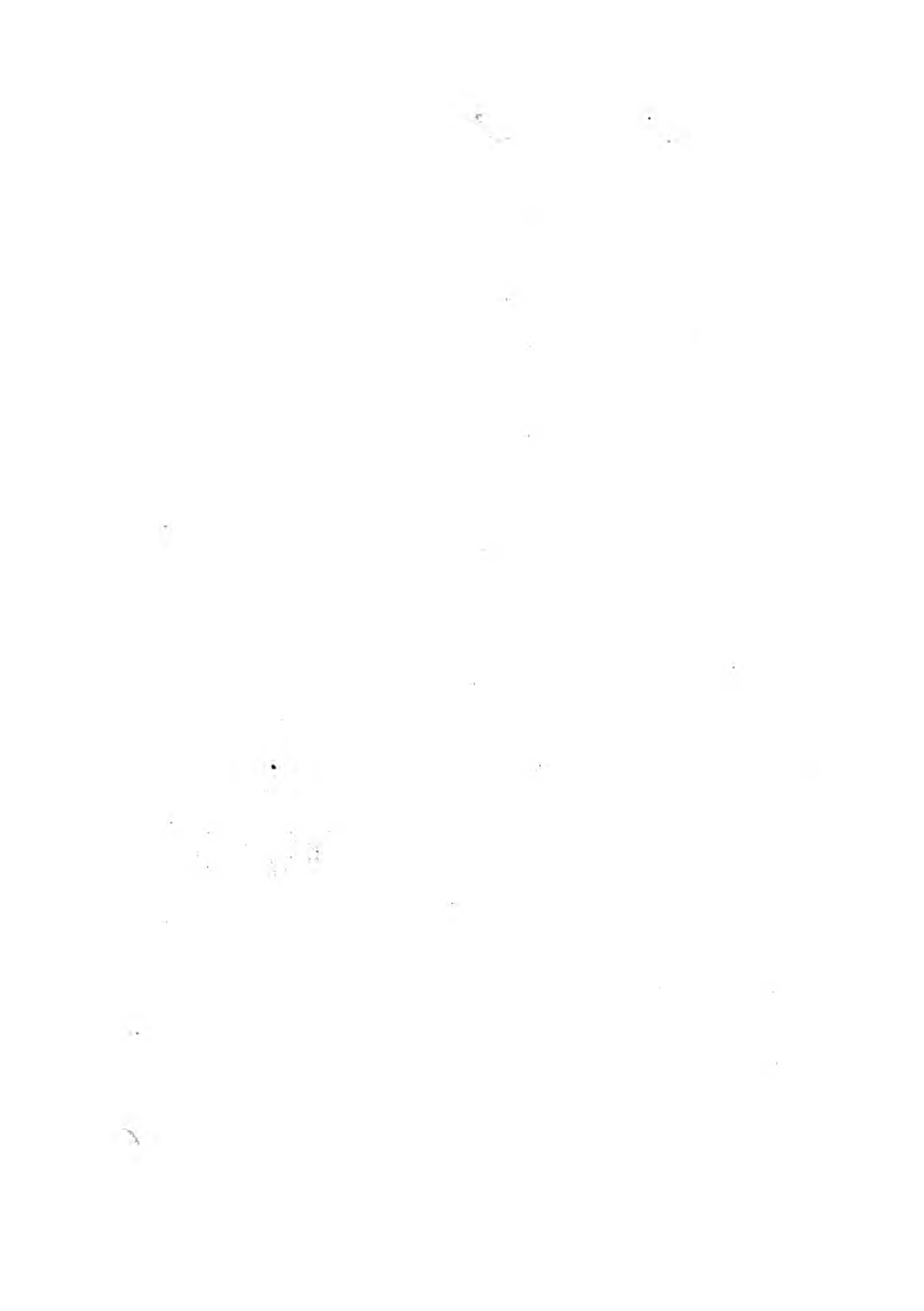




**600039465X**









# Manuals of Specific Instruction.

EDITED BY

J. S. LAURIE,

*Of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law; Formerly H.M. Inspector of  
Schools, England; Assistant Education-Commissioner, Ireland;  
Special Commissioner, W. Africa; Director of Public  
Instruction, Ceylon.*

---

## FACTS AND FEATURES

OF

### English History:

IN A SERIES OF

ALTERNATING READING AND MEMORY EXERCISES;

WITH HISTORICAL MAP AND APPENDICES.

BY

JOHN HILL,

*Principal of the Government Normal Institution, Colombo, Ceylon.*



“History is the tribunal of the world.”—SCHILLER.

LONDON:

JOHN MARSHALL & CO., 42, PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

SIMPKIN & Co., E.C.; HAMILTON, ADAMS & Co., E.C.

MANCHESTER: JOHN HEYWOOD. MELBOURNE: FRANK LAURIE.

1873.

226. k. 265.

BUTLER & TANNER,  
THE SELWOOD PRINTING WORKS,  
FROME, AND LONDON.

## PREFACE.

---

INNUMERABLE attempts have been made to compress the History of England into a small compass ; but the wide-spread popular ignorance of the subject, on the part even of those who have conscientiously committed to memory the usual compendiums, affords tolerably fair evidence that the common systems of compilation, "*memoria technica*" devices, and other time-honoured methods of instruction are somewhere at fault. In point of fact, if we merely consider the vastness of the field and the length of time to be traversed, the preparation of a complete, interesting, and effective History in miniature, is well-nigh as impossible as it was for the bookseller to supply the old lady's demand for "a small-sized Bible in very large print." The compilers of small histories have hitherto proceeded on the principle of too closely imitating the comprehensive and detailed plan of larger works, with the unavoidable result of accumulating series upon series of meagre, and too often incongruous and incoherent, facts, the recollection of which cannot but prove transient and evanescent ; and even if remembered,—so completely are symmetry of arrangement and the relative importance of facts lost sight of,—such dreary catalogues of events serve only to bewilder and clog the brain.

Given a limited compass and price, the question is, what practical shape should a smaller history assume, with the view of answering the two-fold purpose of giving due prominence and scope to points of really vital moment, and of presenting at the same time a complete and systematic *tableau* of subordinate and concurrent events ? The new-fashioned plan of treating the History of England in a number of so-called "epochs," or, rather, eras, wears an air of specious plausibility ; but, on reflection, it will appear obvious that the events of different periods are often as intimately connected with each other as are those of any individual era: *e.g.*, the successive steps in the development of commerce, of the law, and of the constitution. In short, while history may be viewed as one connected chain, the kindred links may be very far apart, indeed.

While it is here maintained that a rigid adherence to the lines of demarcation, suggested by the various ruling dynasties, is unphilosophical, and, in a historical sense, misleading, it must be acknowledged that such a mode of division, like so many resting-points in the ascent of a hill, is extremely convenient. But the student of history will approach the subject with a



radically erroneous view, if he imagines that such a mode of division is anything but an arbitrary one. Hence the distinct aim of the Reading Lessons in these pages has been, at the proper time and place, to lay firm and exclusive stress upon representative features, yet with a steady eye to the past, and even the future, as well as the present; or, in other words, to delineate—compatibly with the avoidance of controversial subjects—the characteristic individuality of the times described,—the essential facts being, for the most part, grouped, in a biographical form, around personages of historic note or central interest.

It is sometimes urged that sequential extracts from various original writers afford the best material for such a purpose; but it is too often forgotten that lessons intended for systematic instruction require to be specially framed; otherwise, that completeness of information and unity of plan, which form the essential merit of a good school book, are inevitably sacrificed.

The second distinguishing feature of this volume is, that it provides a fairly exhaustive *précis* of the memorable facts of English History, chronologically arranged in the form of standards of reference, but, primarily, intended to be used as Memory Exercises, or subjects of examination, oral or written. These have been given with unusual fulness, as they are intended to be employed as materials for the composition of independent themes, according to the plan exemplified by the Reading Lessons. The facts, being necessarily stated in the most succinct form possible, are suggestive rather than descriptive; for it is assumed that they will be illustrated by the teacher, or amplified from other readily available sources.

Lastly, the various historical tables at the end have been specially compiled with a view to meeting the requirements of Civil Service, College, or other professional examinations. The most cursory glance will indicate the practical value of these tables, which embrace the following subjects,—(1) The succession of the Sovereigns of England from the Conquest; (2) The great Battles of English History; (3) The more important Treaties in which England has been concerned; (4) The principal Statutes and Acts of Parliament; (5) The growth of the British Colonial Empire; (6) English Writers and their Chief Works; (7) Statesmen, Artists, Men of Science, etc.; (8) Military and Naval Commanders; (9) Administrations under the Brunswick Dynasty; and (10) The different Styles of Architecture.

So much for the novelty of the general scheme, of which the Editor assumes the responsibility: the entire merit of the execution belongs to his friend Mr. Hill.

J. S. L.

## CONTENTS.

READING LESSONS.		MEMORY EXERCISES.	
<i>No.</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
1. Ancient Britain . . . . .	7	1. B. C. 55 to A. D. 420 . . . . .	10
2. Julius Agricola . . . . .	12	2. From Departure of Romans to Accession of Egbert (A. D. 420-827) . . . . .	14
3. Egbert, King of the W. Saxons	16	3. Egbert to Canute (827-1017) . . . . .	18
4. Alfred the Great . . . . .	20	4. England under the Danes (1016-1042) . . . . .	24
5. Canute . . . . .	24	5. Restoration of Saxons (1042- 1066) . . . . .	28
6. Earl Godwin . . . . .	29	6. William I. (1066-1087) . . . . .	35
7. Domesday Book . . . . .	36	7. William II. (1087-1100) . . . . .	38
8. The First Crusade . . . . .	39	8. Henry I. (1100-1135) . . . . .	41
9. The Empress Matilda . . . . .	42	9. Stephen (1135-1154) . . . . .	42
10. Thomas Becket . . . . .	50	10. Henry II. (1154-1189) . . . . .	49
11. Magna Charta. . . . .	56	11. Richard I. (1189-1199) . . . . .	54
12. Simon de Montfort . . . . .	61	12. John (1199-1216) . . . . .	55
13. The Conquest of Wales . . . . .	66	13. Henry III. (1216-1272) . . . . .	59
14. Piers Gaveston . . . . .	71	14. Edward I. (1272-1307) . . . . .	64
15. England under Edward III. . . . .	77	15. Edward II. (1307-1327) . . . . .	69
16. Insurrection of the Peasants . . . . .	82	16. Edward III. (1327-1377) . . . . .	75
17. The Battle of Agincourt . . . . .	90	17. Richard II. (1377-1399) . . . . .	81
18. The King-Maker . . . . .	95	18. Henry IV. (1399-1413) . . . . .	87
19. England under the Plantagenets	105	19. Henry V. (1413-1422) . . . . .	88
20. Lambert Simnel . . . . .	113	20, 21. Henry VI. (1422-1461) . . . . .	93, 94
21. Thomas Wolsey . . . . .	116	22. Edward IV. (1461-1483) . . . . .	103
22. Thomas Cromwell . . . . .	124	23. { Edward V. (1483) . . . . . } { Richard III. (1483-1485) } . . . . .	104
23. Lady Jane Grey . . . . .	129	24. Henry VII. (1485-1509) . . . . .	111
24. Mary, Queen of Scots . . . . .	134	25, 26. Henry VIII. (1509-1547) . . . . .	115, 122
25. England under the Tudors . . . . .	141	27. Edward VI. (1547-1553) . . . . .	127
26. Robert Carr, Earl of Somerset	150	28. Mary (1553-1558) . . . . .	128
27. The Earl of Strafford . . . . .	155	29-31. Elizabeth (1558-1603) . . . . .	132, 133, 140
28. The Battle of Worcester . . . . .	161	32. James I. (1603-1625) . . . . .	149
29. General Monk . . . . .	165	33-35. Charles I. (1625-1649) . . . . .	152, 158
30. The Legislative Enactments of Charles II. . . . .	172	36, 37. Commonwealth (1649-1660) . . . . .	160, 163
31. Review of the Stuart Dynasty	177	38, 39. Charles II. (1660-1685) . . . . .	169, 170
32. Duke of Marlborough . . . . .	186	40. James II. (1685-1688) . . . . .	176
33. The South Sea Bubble . . . . .	197	41. William III. (1688-1702) . . . . .	182
34. Sir Robert Walpole . . . . .	202	42. Anne (1702-1714) . . . . .	185
35. The Rebellion of 1745 . . . . .	210	43. George I. (1714-1727) . . . . .	195
36. William Pitt, Earl of Chatham	218	44, 45. George II. (1727-1760) . . . . .	200, 209
37. The Revolution in America . . . . .	227	46-51. George III. (1760-1820) . . . . .	216, 225, 232, 237, 245, 247
38. Speech of Lord Chatham on the American War . . . . .	234	52. George IV. (1820-1830) . . . . .	257
39. Rise of the British power in India . . . . .	239	53. William IV. (1830-1837) . . . . .	258
40. Progress of the English nation	248	54-56. Victoria . . . . .	265, 266, 274
41. Parliamentary Reform . . . . .	259		
42. The Russian War . . . . .	268		
43. The British Constitution . . . . .	276		

## GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

	<i>Page</i>
Sovereigns of England before the Norman Conquest . . . . .	32
Descent of William I. from Rollo, Duke of Normandy . . . . .	36
Norman Line of Kings . . . . .	46
House of Plantagenet, No. I. (Henry II. to Edward III.) . . . . .	74
Descent of Edward III. from Phillip III. of France . . . . .	77
Descent of Henry IV. from Henry III. . . . .	88
Illustrating French Wars of Henry V. . . . .	89
House of Plantagenet, No. II. (Edward III. to Richard III.) . . . . .	108
Descent of Henry VII. from Edward III. . . . .	112
House of Tudor . . . . .	145
War of the Spanish Succession . . . . .	184
House of Stuart . . . . .	191
House of Brunswick . . . . .	202

## APPENDIX.

## TABLES OF REFERENCE.

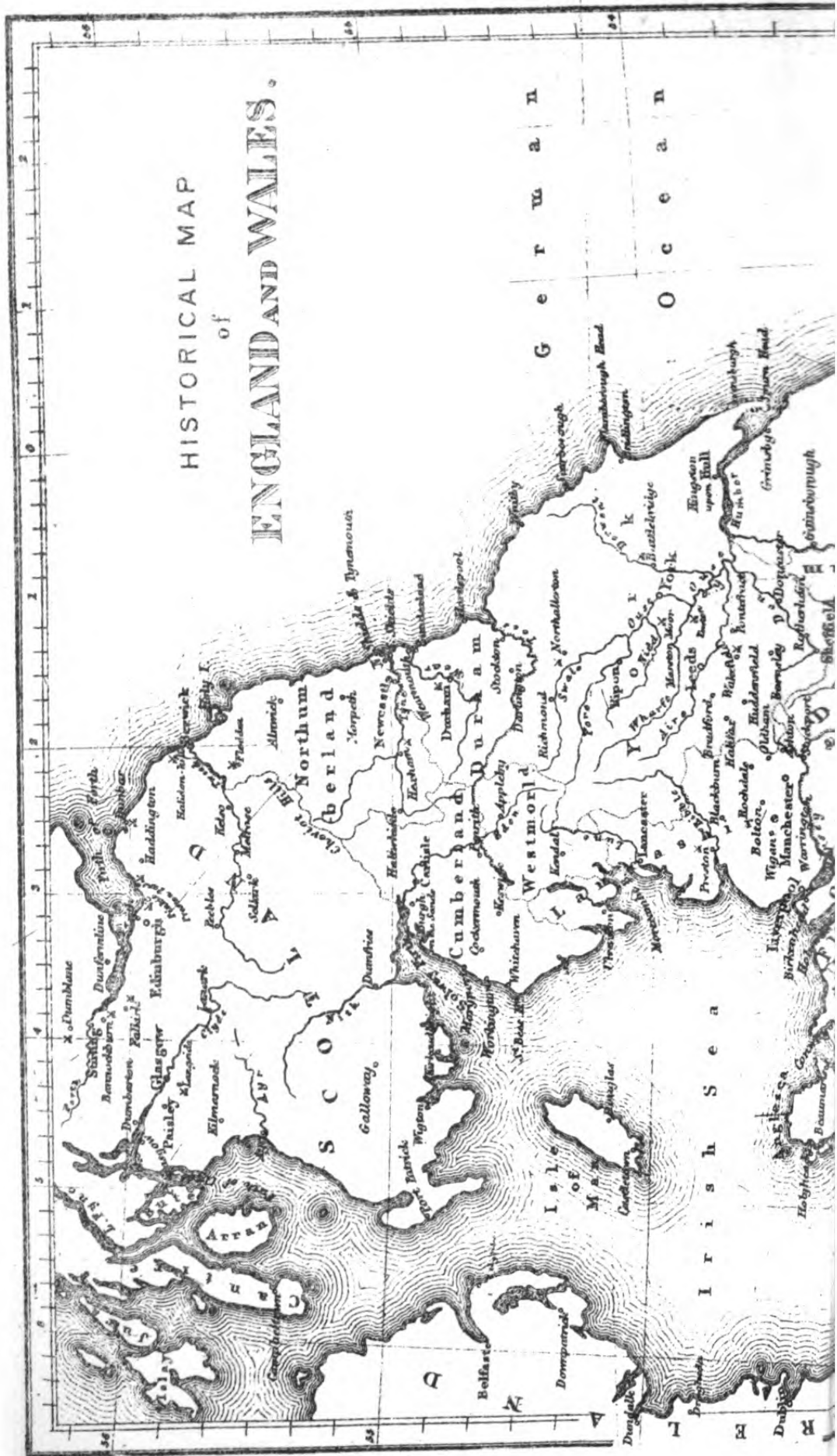
I. The Sovereigns of England . . . . .	iii.
II. A Chronological Table of the Principal Battles recorded in English History. . . . .	iv.
III. Important Treaties mentioned in English History . . . . .	vii.
IV. Statutes and Acts of Parliament . . . . .	viii.
V. A Table Exhibiting the Growth of the British Colonial Empire . . . . .	x.
VI. English Writers, with their principal Works . . . . .	xiii.
VII. Statesmen, Artists, Men of Science, etc. . . . .	xxv.
VIII. Military and Naval Commanders . . . . .	xxviii.
IX. Administrations under the Brunswick Dynasty . . . . .	xxx.
X. Styles of English Architecture . . . . .	xxxii.







# HISTORICAL MAP of ENGLAND AND WALES.





32  
31  
30  
29  
28  
27  
26  
25  
24  
23  
22  
21  
20  
19  
18  
17  
16  
15  
14  
13  
12  
11  
10  
9  
8  
7  
6  
5  
4  
3  
2  
1  
0  
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32

West Longitude  
East Longitude





-----

•

I.—Early British Period.

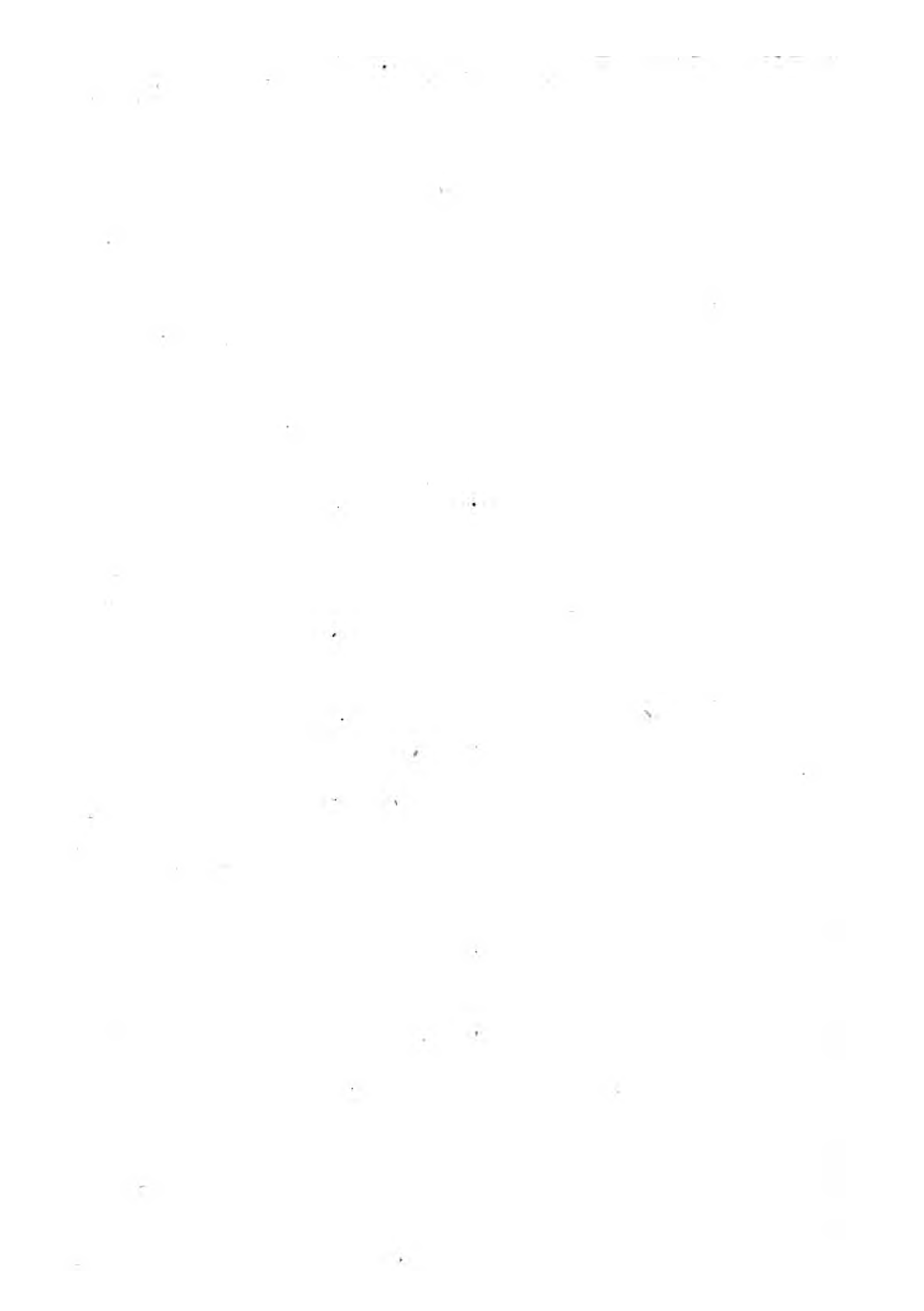
(TO B.C. 55.)

II.—Roman Period.

(B.C. 55 TO A.D. 420.)

III.—Britain under the Saxons and Danes.

(A.D. 420-1066.)



# ENGLISH HISTORY.

---

## I. EARLY BRITISH PERIOD.

TO B.C. 55.

### READING LESSON I.

#### ANCIENT BRITAIN.

VERY little is known of the early history of Britain. Tradition has, indeed, preserved a dim record of this country having been colonized in the 12th century B.C. by one Brutus, the great-grandson of Æneas of Troy ; but this statement, as well as the traditional account of his long line of descendants, must be regarded as entirely fabulous. There is little doubt, however, that Britain was known in very early times to the merchants of Tyre, Carthage, and the Greek colonists of Massilia and Narbo (the present Marseilles and Narbonne), who were attracted thither by the richness of the tin mines of Cornwall, and who, on this account, gave to the Scilly Isles the name of Cassiterides,\* or the Tin Islands. It was by this name that these islands were known to Herodotus, the great Greek historian and geographer, who flourished about 450 B.C. Aristotle, in the fourth century B.C. is, however, the first writer who mentions the British Islands by name. In

---

\* From Kassiteros (*κασσίτερος*), the Greek word for tin, which in turn may be traced to the Sanscrit *Kastira*—the Phœnicians having in all probability introduced the name into Greece with the article itself from India, the country from which they originally obtained their supplies of this metal.

his work "De Mundo," c. 3., he says: "In the ocean beyond the pillars of Hercules are two very large islands called Britannic, namely, Albion and Ierne." By the former of these names was meant England and Scotland; by the latter, Ireland. Other writers of a later date, as Polybius (B.C. 250), Diodorus Siculus (B.C. 44), and Strabo and Pliny, in the first century of the Christian Era, also make mention of Britain in connection with its production of tin—a metal in great request among the ancients, from its being employed by them in the manufacture of bronze, of which material all their instruments, whether weapons of war or implements of peace, were constructed. From these writers we gather that at least the southern shores of Britain were inhabited by a people who, from a long-continued intercourse with foreigners, had attained a higher degree of civilization than is attributed to the other ancient Britons; and that a considerable trade was carried on by them in the export of tin, lead, skins, slaves, and hunting-dogs. To this list of exports, as the Britons became more civilized, may be added corn, cattle, gold, silver, and iron, and an inferior kind of pearls. By far the greater part of the country, however, remained an almost impenetrable forest, inhabited by savage tribes, who lived in collections of rude huts, clothed themselves in skins, and depended for subsistence upon the chase or the produce of their herds.

The name Britain has been variously derived. Many writers refer it to a Celtic word *brith* or *brit*, signifying "painted," because the inhabitants stained their bodies with the juice of woad; others derived it from Prydain, an early British prince, by whose name the country is known in some old Welsh poems; while others again find the origin of the name Britain in *Brettan*, signifying "a land of hills." Whether, however, the term Britain is a genuine Celtic word or not

cannot now be determined. A notion prevailed during the Middle Ages that it was derived from the name Brutus, who has already been mentioned.

There can be no doubt that Britain was first peopled by Celts from the neighbouring continent of Europe. Two distinct settlements of the Celts in Britain are supposed to have taken place, giving rise to the distinctive names of Old and New Celts, or Gaels and Cymri. The descendants of the former of these are now to be found in the Gaels or Highlanders of Scotland and the Erse of Ireland—those of the latter, in the present inhabitants of Wales. From Cæsar's Commentaries we learn that the maritime parts of Britain were inhabited by Belgic Gauls, who had crossed over from the mainland for the sake of plunder; but that the interior parts of the island were peopled by an older race. The account of Cæsar, therefore, accords with the theory of two separate Celtic migrations into Britain.

The connexion of the Britons with the Celts of Gaul is to be traced in the identity of their language, their manners, and their religion and mode of government. Their religion,—which formed, indeed, an integral part of their system of government,—was an idolatrous superstition, the rites of which were administered by a class of priests called Druids. These Druids, in addition to the exercise of their priestly functions, had the care of the education of the British youth and the administration of justice in civil as well as in criminal causes. But little is known of the nature of their religious rites, which were generally performed in dark groves or other secret recesses. In their religious ceremonials they venerated the oak and the mistletoe; they worshipped a plurality of gods, taught the doctrine of the eternal transmigration of souls, and inculcated piety towards the gods, charity towards man, and fortitude in suffering. . So great an ascendancy had



Druidism over the ancient Gauls and Britons, and so difficult did the conquering Romans find it to reconcile those nations to the laws and institutions of their conquerors so long as the old religious system maintained its authority, that, tolerant as they always were of the superstitions of the nations they subjugated, they were compelled to abolish Druidism by penal statutes wherever they found it.

## II. THE ROMAN PERIOD.

B.C. 55 TO A.D. 420.

### MEMORY EXERCISE I.

B.C.

55. **JULIUS CÆSAR** invades Britain with two legions—lands at Deal—obtains victories over the Britons—upon the approach of winter, retires into Gaul.
54. **Second Invasion of Cæsar** with 20,000 men—the Britons united under Cassivelaunus (Caswallon)—they are defeated in several engagements—Cæsar crosses the Thames near Kingston—captures Verulamium (St. Albans)—obtains new tokens of submission from the Britons, and retires again into Gaul.

A.D.

40. **Caligula's mock invasion of Britain.**
43. **Aulus Plautius** and **Vespasian** despatched by **Claudius Cæsar** to reduce Britain.—S.E. parts formed into a Roman province.
47. **Ostorius Scapula** sent to command the Roman armies in Britain.—Roman camps established on the Avon and Severn.—The **Iceni** subdued.—The **Silures** under **Caradoc** (Caractacus) still hold out.
51. **Caradoc** betrayed by his step-mother, the queen of the **Brigantes**, and conveyed to Rome.
59. **Suetonius Paulinus** appointed by **Nero** to the command in Britain.—Two years of peaceful administration.
61. **Anglesey**, the chief seat of Druidism in Britain, taken.—**Massacre of the Druids.**—**Rebellion of the Iceni** under **BOADICEA.**—The Britons capture and burn London.

- A.D.
62. Boadicea defeated—80,000 Britons slain.
  71. Cerealis receives the command from Vespasian.
  78. **JULIUS AGRICOLA** finally establishes the Roman power in Britain.—Governs for seven years.—Constructs a line of fortresses between the firths of Clyde and Forth.—**Britain incorporated with the Roman Empire.**
  84. Agricola defeats the Caledonian chief, Galgacus, at the foot of the Grampians.
  121. **Hadrian visits Britain**, and causes a rampart to be built from the Tyne to the Solway Firth.
  140. **Lollius Urbicus**, in the reign of Antoninus Pius, builds a second wall, on the site of Agricola's forts, as a further protection against the Picts.
  211. The Caledonians continue their ravages.—**The Emperor Severus visits Britain**, makes a treaty with the Picts, strengthens Hadrian's wall, and dies at York.
  286. Incursions of Saxon pirates.—**Carausius** is appointed "*Comes littoris Saxonici*," (Count of the Saxon shore), and obtains supreme power in Britain.
  287. **Carausius acknowledged Emperor** by the Roman legions in Britain.
  293. Carausius assassinated by Allectus, who assumes the imperial title.
  296. Allectus defeated by Constantius.
  303. **Death of St. Alban.**
  306. **Constantius dies at York**, and is succeeded by his son, Constantine the Great.
  337. **Death of Constantine.**
  360. The Picts and Scots recommence their inroads into Britain.
  368. They penetrate as far as London, but are repulsed by Theodosius, the father of the emperor of the same name. The district between the walls of Severus and Antoninus recovered, and called Valentia, in honour of the Emperor Valentinian.
  409. Britain left independent by the **withdrawal of the Roman legions** for the defence of Rome against the northern barbarians.
  418. Temporary assistance against the Picts and Scots afforded to Britain by the Romans.
  420. **The Roman legions finally withdrawn from Britain.**



## READING LESSON II.

## JULIUS AGRICOLA.

The general who finally established the dominion of the Romans in Britain, was Julius Agricola. He was raised to the command of the legions in that province of the Empire A.D. 78, and governed the country till the year 85, in the reigns of the Emperors Vespasian, Titus, and Domitian.

Agricola had become versed in the art of war during the campaigns of Suetonius Paulinus against the Ordovices of North Wales and the rebellious Icēni of the eastern parts of Britain. Eight years after the defeat and death of Boadicea, we find him in command of the 20th legion in Britain; and, subsequently to this, he was appointed to the governorship of Aquitania, which post he appears to have held till, with the title of Consul, the administration of the province of Britain was entrusted to him by Vespasian.

Upon landing in Britain, towards the end of the summer of the year 78, Agricola found the Ordovices in arms against the Roman power. Collecting his forces, he at once—in spite of the advanced season of the year—marched against the Britons, and routed them in their mountain fastnesses of Denbigh and Caernarvon. Then, without waiting for the means of transport, he swam his legions across the strait of Anglesey, and effected the complete subjugation of that island of the Druids.

The second year of Agricola's administration was devoted by him to restoring tranquillity to Southern Britain, which was at this time disturbed by hostile bands dispersed throughout the country. By acquiring an accurate knowledge of every locality; by making sudden incursions wherever a tribe was collected in arms; by holding out the hand of friendship to the

chiefs who submitted to him ; by encouraging these chiefs to form townships, with municipal institutions, and to adopt a more settled mode of life ; and by planting garrisons and building fortresses throughout the land, Agricola succeeded in establishing the Romans in peaceable possession of the country from the Thames to the Severn, and from the Humber to the Dee. In the third and fourth years of his government, Agricola was engaged in a conflict with the natives of Northern Britain, or Caledonia. Having subdued all the country south of the Grampians, he established a line of garrisons across the narrow isthmus between the Firths of Forth and Clyde. He then extended his conquests along the western shores of Britain, and even meditated the subjugation of Ireland. The continued inroads, however, of the Caledonians prevented this plan being carried into execution ; for in the sixth and seventh years of his administration, Agricola was again compelled to march northwards to repel these northern invaders. In the last of these expeditions he defeated with immense slaughter a force of upwards of 30,000 Caledonians, who had assembled at the foot of the Grampians under their leader Galgacus. In all these expeditions the land forces of the Roman commander were usually accompanied by a fleet ; and at the end of the Caledonian war, Agricola is said to have caused his admiral to sail completely round Britain—thereby establishing the fact of its being an island, and settling a controversy which had long agitated the speculative philosophers of Rome, some of whom regarded Britain as part of an unexplored continent.

During all his military enterprises, Agricola neglected not the arts of peace. He introduced laws and civilization among the Britons ; cultivated among them the desire for, and taught them how to obtain,



all the necessaries of a more refined mode of life ; reconciled them to the Roman language and customs ; instructed them in all the learning of the Roman schools ; encouraged them in the building of baths and temples and more civilized dwellings ; and endeavoured in every possible way to render the Roman yoke easy and agreeable to them. It is not therefore a matter of surprise, that the Britons, having experienced how unequal they were to cope with the forces of the Romans, should now submit to the dominion of their masters, and become gradually incorporated with the great Roman Empire.

Agricola was recalled from his proconsulship to Rome, A.D. 85—Domitian, who was then Emperor, being jealous of the renown which had attended his administration.

### III. BRITAIN UNDER THE SAXONS AND DANES.

A.D. 420—1066.

§ 1. *From the Departure of the Romans to the Accession of Egbert (A.D. 420—827).*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE II.

A.D.

450. **The Picts and Scots continue their incursions.**—By the counsel of Vortigern the Britons invite the assistance of the piratical Saxons.—**Arrival of Saxons under Hengist and Horsa.**—Thanet assigned to them.—Vortigern marries Rowena, the daughter of Hengist.—The story of this invasion, and of the incidents connected therewith, partially mythical.
455. Horsa killed at the battle of Æglesford (Aylesford), in Kent.
457. Battle of Crayford.—**Saxon kingdom of Kent founded by Hengist and his son Eric.**

A.D.

477. Ella lands with a body of Saxons in Sussex.
490. The kingdom of the South-Sexe, or Sussex, founded.
495. Third settlement of the Saxon invaders under the command of Cerdic.
514. Cerdic receives re-inforcements from Germany.—The Isle of Wight conquered.
519. Cerdic assumes the title of King of the West-Sexe, or Wessex.
520. Progress of the Saxon arms checked by **ARTHUR**, the chief of the Silures.—Battle of **Mt. Badon**.
527. Fourth settlement of the Saxons.—The kingdom of the Middle-Sexe, or Middlesex, founded.
547. **Ida** lands near Flamborough Head with a powerful body of Angles, and founds the kingdom of **Bernicia**—The kingdom of **Deira** established by **Ella**. [These two kingdoms were united, and formed into the kingdom of Northumbria, about the year 600.]
570. The kingdom of **East Anglia** founded by Angles under **Uffa**.
597. Mission of **Augustine**.—Christianity re-introduced into Britain.
610. **Sebert**, king of **Essex**, dedicates a church to **St. Peter** on the site of the present Abbey at **Westminster**, and another to **St. Paul** upon the site of a former temple of **Diana**.—The University of **Cambridge** founded.
616. Death of **Ethelbert**, king of **Kent** and **Bretwalda**, after a reign of 50 years.—**Redwald**, king of the **East Angles**, succeeds to the office of **Bretwalda**.
626. **Mercia** established as a kingdom by **Penda**.
627. Conversion and baptism of **Edwin**, king of **Northumbria** and fifth **Bretwalda**.—**Paulinus** first Archbishop of **York**.
634. The kingdoms of **Northumbria** re-united under **Oswald**, sixth **Bretwalda**.
642. **Oswald** defeated and slain by **Penda**.—**Oswy** succeeds his brother **Oswald** in the kingdom and dignity of **Bretwalda**.
656. **Penda** defeated and slain by **Oswy**.
664. A pestilence, known as the *yellow plague*, ravages the whole island.
670. Death of **Oswy**.—The title of **Bretwalda** lapses for a time.
688. **Ina** ascends the throne of **Wessex**.
700. The payment of **Peter's pence** instituted by **Ina**.
736. **Ethelbald**, king of **Mercia**, assumes the title of "**King of Britain**."



A.D.

755. Ethelbald slain in battle with the West Saxons.

757-796. **Reign of Offa the terrible over Mercia.**—His victories over other Anglo-Saxon princes.—Wars with the Cambrians.—Offa's dyke erected from the mouth of the Dee to that of the Wye.—Alliance with Charlemagne.—Visit of the learned Alcuin.—Assassination of Ethelbert king of Kent, and seizure of that kingdom (A.D. 792).

787. First appearance of the Norse invaders in England.

800. Egbert begins to rule over Wessex.—He subdues in succession the kingdoms of Kent and Sussex.

827. **EGBERT is acknowledged liege lord over the whole of England, excepting Cambria and Cumbria.**

---

### READING LESSON III.

#### EGBERT.—KING OF THE WEST SAXONS.

Egbert was the son of Eathmund, king of Kent, and fourth in descent from Ingild, the brother of Ina, the famous king of Wessex. The throne of Wessex being vacant A.D. 786, Egbert contested the succession with one Beortric or Brithric. The latter was preferred, and Egbert was obliged to withdraw from the country to France, where he was favourably received at the court of Charlemagne. Here for fourteen years he remained, serving in the armies of that able and generous prince, and acquiring those accomplishments which were afterwards to render his rule in England so brilliant and successful.

Beortric having been accidentally killed by partaking of a poisoned cup, which his wife, the daughter of Offa, king of Mercia, had prepared for a friend of her husband who had roused her jealous anger, Egbert was recalled to England by the nobility of Wessex, and ascended the throne of his ancestors in the last year of the 8th century. For some years after his accession, Egbert employed his arms against the Britons of Wales and Cornwall, whom he defeated in several engagements; but it was not until the inva-

sion of his own dominions by Beornwulf, king of Mercia, that he gave any disturbance to the neighbouring Saxons. Returning from his conquests over the Britons, he overthrew the Mercian invaders, and then subdued with ease the tributary kingdoms of Kent and Sussex. The East Angles, freed from the domination of Mercia, now rose in arms and placed themselves under the protection of Egbert. Taking advantage of the state of anarchy which at this time prevailed in Northumbria, Egbert next proceeded against that kingdom; and the inhabitants, unable to resist his victorious arms, and at the same time anxious to establish some settled form of government within their territory, sent deputies to him with an offer of allegiance and submission to his authority. In order to reduce the inhabitants of these conquered kingdoms the more readily to submission, Egbert allowed them to retain the privilege of electing their own nominal sovereigns, who became his vassals, and paid tribute to him and his successors, till their sovereignties were swallowed up by the Danish invasion. Thus by the year 827, about 400 years after the first arrival of the Saxons in Britain, all the Anglo-Saxon kingdoms were nominally united into one State. The title, however, of "REX ANGLORUM" or king of the English, was not adopted by the ruling monarch till the reign of Edward the Elder—Egbert and his successors, down to King Alfred, styling themselves simply Kings of Wessex. Athelstan, the grandson of Alfred the Great, is the Saxon monarch who has the greatest right to be considered the *first king* of all England.

Egbert, after consolidating his power over the other Saxon kingdoms, renewed the war with the Britons, which the events detailed above had interrupted. He led his victorious army into North Wales, laid waste the whole country as far as Snowdon, penetrated into Denbighshire, and reduced the island of Anglesey to

subjection; so that now, of all the territory which had been comprised in what was known as Roman Britain, Cambria, Cumbria, and Strathclyde were alone free from vassalage to his crown.

These bright prospects were, however, soon to be overcast, for troublous times for England were at hand. The latter part of Egbert's reign was one continual struggle against the incursions of hordes of Scandinavian freebooters. These had made their first appearance upon the shores of England about the year 787; but they now began their more regular and systematic ravages of the country—at first making brief and rapid descents upon the coast and returning to their northern homes with the plunder they had gained, and afterwards taking up their permanent abode in England, and renewing their devastations with the return of every spring. In the midst of all these troubles Egbert,—the only man with ability to cope successfully with the evil,—died, A.D. 836, leaving the government of the country to his son Ethelwulf.

## § 2. *Egbert to Canute* (A.D. 827–1017).

### MEMORY EXERCISE III.

A.D.

- 828. Wales overrun and Anglesey subdued by Egbert.
- 835. The Norse invaders of England defeated by Egbert at Hengesdown, Cornwall.
- 836. **Death of Egbert and Accession of his son Ethelwulf**, who invests his son Athelstan with the sovereignty of Essex, Kent, and Sussex.—Tithes said to have been first established in England by Ethelwulf, as well as the first poor-law.
- 858. Death of Ethelwulf.—His sons **Ethelbald** and **Ethelbert** succeed.—The Danes continue their ravages.
- 864. Wreck of **Regnar Lodbrog** off the coast of Northumbria.
- 866. **Ethelred**, another son of Ethelwulf, succeeds to the

A.D.

- crown.—The Danes penetrate to the heart of the country.—Numerous battles.
- 871.** Martyrdom of Edmund, king of East Anglia.—His body interred at Bury St. Edmund's.—**Ethelred dies** of wounds received in battle with the Danes at Merton, in Surrey, and is succeeded by his brother **ALFRED**.
- 878.** After seven years' constant fighting with the Danes, **Alfred is obliged to resign his sovereignty** and become a fugitive.—He collects followers at Athelney.—**Defeats Gothrun the Danish leader**.—Makes a treaty with the invaders.—Their settlement in **Danelagh**.—England at rest for some years.
- 893.** The country devastated by the Danes under their leader **Hastings**.—Tranquillity again restored, after five years' warfare.
- 901.** **Death of Alfred the Great**.—**Edward, his second son**, elected by the **Witena-gemôt** (Great Council).—Edward's succession disputed by his cousin Ethelwold, the son of Ethelred, the elder brother of Alfred.—Ethelwold compelled to retire into Normandy.—He afterwards joins the Danes of Northumberland and East Anglia; but is subsequently defeated and slain.—**Edward wars successfully against the Danes**.
- 925.** **Death of Edward the Elder**.—His son **Athelstan succeeds**.—Gains victories over the Danes.—Ablest and most active of the Anglo-Saxon princes.—Encourages commerce.
- 934.** League of the kings of Scotland and Cumberland against Athelstan.—The Danes and Welsh also in arms.—Their total overthrow in the bloody **battle of Brunanburgh**.
- 940.** **Death of Athelstan**.—His second brother **Edmund succeeds**.—The Danes revolt.—Edmund takes Cumberland from the Britons and confers it upon **Malcolm, king of Scotland**.
- 946.** **Assassination of Edmund** by Leolf, a robber, whom he had banished.—**Accession of Edred**, another brother of Athelstan.—Revolts of the Danes.—Their defeat.—**Dunstan, the king's chief adviser**.—Increase of monastic establishments in England.
- 955.** **Edred dies** and is succeeded by his nephew **Edwy**, son of Edmund.—Edwy quarrels with Dunstan.—Banishment of the latter.—Revolt of the monks.—**Dunstan recalled**.—Ill-treatment of Edwy's queen, **Elgiva**, by Archbishop Odo.



- A.D.
958. Death of Edwy.—His brother **Edgar succeeds**.—**Dunstan made Archbishop of Canterbury**.—More than 40 Benedictine convents founded.—No fresh revolts or incursions of the Danes during this reign.—Wars against neighboring sovereigns.
975. Death of Edgar:—His son, **Edward II. (the Martyr)**, by his first wife **Ethelfleda**, succeeds.—Supported by **Dunstan**.
978. **Edward** murdered by the instigation of his step-mother, **Elfrida**.—Her son **Ethelred II. ascends the throne**.—The Danes recommence their ravages.—The tax called **Dane-gelt** levied, wherewith to buy them off.
993. **Descent of the northern invaders under SWEYN, king of Denmark**.
994. The Danes sail up the Thames, and lay siege to London.
1001. **Ethelred marries Emma, sister of Richard II., Duke of Normandy**.
1002. (Nov. 13) **Massacre of the Danes of Danelagh**.
1003. **Sweyn** revenges the massacre of his countrymen.
1013. **Sweyn the virtual sovereign of England**.—**Ethelred** flies to Normandy.
1014. Death of **Sweyn**.—**CANUTE**, his son, named his successor.—**Ethelred** returns, and **Canute** leaves for Denmark.
1015. **Canute** returns with large forces.
1016. Death of **Ethelred**.—His son, **Edmund Ironside**, continues the struggle.—**Edmund** elected **King**.—**Canute** arrives at London.—Fails in his attempt to capture it.—A compromise effected.—The kingdom divided between **Edmund** and **Canute**.—Murder of **Edmund** (Nov. 30th).—**Canute** succeeds to the crown of England.

---

#### READING LESSON IV.

##### ALFRED THE GREAT.

Alfred, the youngest of the sons of Ethelwulf, was born at the royal manor of Vanathing (now Wantage), in Berkshire, in the year 849. When only four years of age, he is said to have accompanied his father upon a pilgrimage to Rome, and to have been there consecrated to the kingly office by Pope Leo IV. It is

not known how long Alfred remained at Rome ; but it may reasonably be conjectured that, young as he was, his stay in what was still the greatest and most civilized city in the world must have had some influence upon his dawning intelligence. The earliest story related of him speaks of his aptitude for learning and his love of poetry and books. Even before he had learned to read, he took great delight in committing to memory the Anglo-Saxon poems which he heard recited by the minstrels and gleemen in his father's hall. This love of letters clung to him throughout his whole life.

In the year 871, when Alfred was in his 22nd year, Ethelred, the last of his kingly brothers, died of wounds received in battle with the Danish invaders ; and Alfred, by the unanimous voice of both nobles and people, was elected his successor. He had scarcely been seated a month upon the throne when he fought the great battle of Wilton ; and for seven long years did he manfully continue the struggle for his kingdom and for life against the formidable Danes, who, being continually reinforced by fresh hordes of northern barbarians, overran the whole country, and at length compelled King Alfred to relinquish the ensigns of his dignity, and retire, with a few faithful followers, to an inland island called Athelney, or the Nobles' Island, near the confluence of the rivers Tone and Parret. The stories of Alfred and St. Cuthbert, of Alfred in the swineherd's cottage, and of Alfred visiting the Danish camp in the disguise of a minstrel, are so well known that they need hardly be repeated here. Such narratives may not be very authentic, but they are not the less interesting in themselves, as indicative of the hold which the history of this prince has always maintained over the affections and imaginations of Englishmen of all ages.

The small but faithful band of followers which had



sought shelter with the king in Athelney was soon augmented by other Saxon fugitives, and Alfred resolved upon another attempt against the Danes. Secret and swift messengers were sent in all directions to summon the Saxons to meet on an appointed day at Egbert's Stone, to the east of Selwood Forest. With the forces thus collected, Alfred fell upon the Danes at Ethandune, on the banks of the Avon, and succeeded in utterly routing them in the great battle which ensued. The Danish leader, Gothrun, was compelled to embrace Christianity and to enter into a treaty, according to the stipulations of which Alfred was to rule over Wessex, Sussex, Kent, and Mercia, while the Danes were to be confined to the territory along the eastern side of England, which had so long suffered from their depredations, and which henceforth came to be known under the name of Danelagh. This treaty, which was known as "Alfred's and Gothrun's Peace," was concluded A.D. 878.

During the fourteen years which followed the treaty with Gothrun, England was in enjoyment of tranquillity; and Alfred devoted his whole energies to the establishment of order, the consolidation of his kingdom, and the moral and intellectual improvement of his people. He repaired the mischiefs wrought in the late wars, organized a militia, equipped a numerous and well-appointed fleet for the protection of the shores against invaders, strengthened his fortresses, rebuilt London and the other towns which had been destroyed by the Danes, reformed the laws, and encouraged and promoted learning. "It was Alfred's grand object to consolidate the dominions of England, to make one consistent and inseparable whole of the various States into which it had been divided by the Saxon conquerors,—States which were still separated by old jealousies and antipathies,—to regenerate the whole Saxon people, and to create a new national spirit; and,

as he effected this, not ostentatiously, but by unwearied political activity, he was in reality the King, the Liberator, the Reformer of all England." \*

Another Danish war broke out in 893, when the invaders, under their great leader Hastings, devastated the country. This new war lasted for about five years, at the end of which time tranquillity was again fully restored by Alfred; and those of the invaders who yet remained, dispersed themselves among the former Danish settlers in Northumbria and East Anglia.

Alfred died A.D. 901, in the 51st year of his age, after a glorious reign of 29 years; and was buried at Winchester, in the monastery which he had founded. He was not only the first warrior, the first statesman and legislator, but he was also the first scholar in his dominions. To him have been attributed the division of England into counties, hundreds, and tithings; the establishment of trial by jury; the law of frank-pledge, etc. He collected the codes and dooms of his predecessors; and without adding much of his own, or indeed of any new matter, compiled a very intelligible and consistent code of laws, which he submitted to the Witena-gemôt, or Great Council of the nation, for their sanction. In his zeal for the encouragement of learning, he established schools in all the towns which he rebuilt. As an author, his writings were very considerable—being chiefly translations of Latin works into Anglo-Saxon, and the composition of poems and essays in the same tongue.

---

\* The Penny Magazine.



§ 3. *England under Danish Rule. From the Accession of Canute, A.D. 1016, to the Restoration of the Saxon Monarchy, A.D. 1042.*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE IV.

A. D.

1016. **CANUTE** sole sovereign of **England**.—Alfred and Edward, the sons of Ethelred the Unready, by his wife Emma, sheltered at the court of their uncle, Richard Duke of Normandy.—The children of Edmund Ironside sent to Sweden, and thence to Stephen, king of Hungary.—Canute marries Emma, the widow of Ethelred.—Restores Saxon customs.
1019. Canute visits Denmark.—**Earl Godwin** serves him in his wars with the Wends and the kings of Sweden and Norway.
1027. **Canute's pilgrimage to Rome**.—He enforces payment of "Peter's Pence."
1030. Expedition against Scotland.—Malcolm, the king of that country, and his nephew Duncan, king of Cumberland, reduced to subjection.
1035. **Death of Canute at Shaftesbury**.  
**Harold supplants his brother Hardicanute** on the throne of England.—The exiled princes, Alfred and Edward, fail in their attempts to restore the Saxon line.
1040. **Death of Harold I**.—**Hardicanute acknowledged king**.—The imposition of Dane-gelt renewed.—Much discontent in consequence.
1042. **Death of Hardicanute at Lambeth**.

#### READING LESSON V.

##### CANUTE.

Upon the death of Sweyn, at Gainsborough, in 1014, Canute his son was named his successor to the throne of England. Ethelred the Unready, the Saxon king, who had been driven from his dominions

by Sweyn, and had taken refuge with his wife and children at the court of the Duke of Normandy, now returned to England on the invitation of the Saxon prelates and nobility ; and Canute was compelled to embark with his forces for Denmark.

In the following year (1015), he returned with a large fleet, and, landing in the west of England, soon overcame the feeble resistance offered by Edmund, the eldest son of Ethelred. Canute then marched upon London, where Ethelred had established himself. Ethelred died before Canute's arrival, and Edmund, whose hardy valour had procured him the name of Ironside, was now elected king. Canute, failing in his attempt to capture the city of London, marched westwards against Edmund, who had been gaining considerable successes over the Danes in those parts. At length the Danish and English nobility, equally harassed by these convulsions, obliged their kings to come to an agreement, by which Canute retained the sovereignty over Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumberland, which he had entirely subdued, while the southern parts were left under the rule of Edmund. Upon the death of the latter in the month of November following, Canute was left in undisputed possession of the throne of England (1016).

The reign of Canute was marked at the outset by much harshness towards those who had supported the claims of Edmund, and by many cruel exactions ; but afterwards, like a wise prince, being resolved that the English should become reconciled to the Danish rule by the impartiality of his administration, Canute abolished all distinction between Saxon and Dane in the administration of justice ; restored, by a formal decree of the Witan, all the old Saxon customs ; and took care, by a strict execution of the law, to protect the lives and properties of all his people. For the further security of his position on the throne of Eng-



land, Canute sent the two sons of Edmund Ironside into banishment, and married Emma, the widow of Ethelred.

Shortly after his accession, Canute embraced Christianity, and became the instrument for the spread of the Christian religion among all the Scandinavian peoples. He built many churches, and attracted Christian teachers to Denmark, Sweden, and Norway by liberally granting them houses and lands.

The tranquillity of England, which could have only been secured by wise and good government, was such, that Canute was enabled, without any fear of disaffection or disturbance, to absent himself from the island frequently and for long intervals, on visits to his continental dominions. Many of these absences from England were necessitated either by the revolts of the tributary sovereigns of Scandinavia, or by the incursions of the *Wends*.\* The Saxon Earl Godwin, having rendered great service to the king in one of these expeditions, was rewarded with the hand of the daughter of Canute in marriage, and soon rose to great eminence in the State.

In the year 1030 Canute made a pilgrimage to Rome. He is represented as starting on his journey, equipped like a common pilgrim, with a wallet on his back and a pilgrim's staff in his hand; his earls, knights, and other attendants being equipped in like manner. On recrossing the Alps, he did not return at once to England, but made his way to Denmark, where he remained for some months, and whence he addressed a letter of explanation, command, advice and exhortation to "Egelnoth the metropolitan, to Archbishop Alfric, to the bishops and chiefs, and to all the nation of the English, both nobles and com-

---

\* *Wends*, the name by which the Germans and Scandinavians designated their Slavonic neighbours.

moners, greeting." This interesting letter, which is remarkable alike for its mildness and simplicity, contrasts singularly with the early education of the fierce and heathen Sweyn, and even with the first acts of Canute's own reign. It is recorded that, after this visit to Rome, Canute was milder and juster than before, and that his acts were more strictly in accordance with the spirit of the letter above referred to, which represents him as saying to his people, "Be it known to you all, that I have dedicated my life to God to govern my kingdoms with justice, and to observe the right in all things. If in the time that is past, and in the violence and carelessness of youth, I have violated justice, it is my intention, by the help of God, to make full compensation."

Canute reigned four or five years longer; and these appear to have been years of tranquillity and happiness for England. He died A.D. 1035.

Under his rule England recovered from the desolation it had suffered in the previous reigns, and rapidly attained that condition of peace and prosperity which it had enjoyed during the last years of the reign of King Alfred. "No power from beyond sea could touch our coast or dispute the sovereignty of the ocean with his fleets; and the turbulent and marauding Scots, Cumbrians, and Welsh were chastised and kept in awe by his English militia. Malcolm, the Scottish king, is said to have become his liegeman, or to have acknowledged his supremacy. The 'Basileus,' or Emperor of the Anglo-Saxons—for this was the title which Canute took to himself in the latter part of his reign—could thus boast that the English, the Scotch, the Welsh, the Danes, the Swedes, and the Norwegians were his subjects, and he was called 'the king of Six Nations.' . . . The ability, the energy, the industry, which could keep such vast and distant countries together, and bring so many barbarous and cruel



people within the pale of Christendom, must have been altogether extraordinary. The disseverance which immediately followed his death, is a proof that the union depended on the personal character and genius for government of Canute the Great.\*

§ 4. *Restoration of the Saxon Dynasty,*  
A.D. 1042–1066.

MEMORY EXERCISE V.

A.D.

1042. **Edward, the son of Ethelred II. crowned king.**—He is supported by Earl Godwin.—Edward marries the Earl's daughter Edith.—Emma, the queen dowager, imprisoned.—**Introduction of Normans to offices in Church and State.**
1051. **Tumult at Dover.**—Godwin the defender of the English cause, against the king's foreign predilections.—Rivalry of Dukes Leofric and Siward against Godwin.—Godwin and his family banished the kingdom.—**William Duke of Normandy visits England.**
1052. **Godwin and his sons enter the Thames with a fleet.**—Edward's Norman courtiers fly the country.—The Witan declare the family of Godwin innocent of the charges laid against them.—**Death of Godwin. Harold, his son, succeeds to his dignity and office.**
1055. **Death of Siward, Duke of Northumberland and rival of Godwin, after restoring Malcolm to the throne of Scotland, which had been usurped by Macbeth.**—Tosti, the brother of Harold, obtains the Dukedom of Northumberland.
1057. **Edward invites Edward the "Outlaw," son of his elder brother Edmund Ironside, to England, with the intention of nominating him his successor.**—The "Outlaw" dies a few days after his arrival in England. Edgar Atheling his heir.—**Visit of Harold to William Duke of Normandy.**
1065. **Tosti expelled from his dukedom by Edwin and Morcar, the grandsons of Leofric.**—Harold refuses to assist

\* C. Macfarlane.

A.D.

Tosti, and marries the sister of Morcar.—Tosti takes shelter in Flanders.

1066. **Death of Edward the Confessor** (Jan. 5).—**Harold crowned and anointed king** by Aldred, Archbishop of York (Jan. 6th).—Embassy from William to remonstrate with Harold upon his breach of faith.—The Normans expelled from England.—**Battle with the Norwegians** under Hardrada and Tosti at **Battle Bridge** (Sept. 25).—Tosti and Hardrada both slain.—Landing of William and the Normans in Sussex (Sept. 28th).—**BATTLE OF HASTINGS** (Oct. 14th).—**Defeat and death of Harold.**

---

## READING LESSON VI.

### EARL GODWIN.

The origin of this great Saxon chieftain is veiled in obscurity. An old chronicle states that he was the son of a herdsman. The earliest known incident which is related of him is, that he rendered substantial assistance to Canute in one of that monarch's continental wars, thereby obtaining the favour of the king, who conferred upon him high dignities and gave him the hand of his daughter in marriage. Upon the death of Canute, Godwin, who was then in possession of the most important earldom of the south, favoured the claims of Hardicanute, the late king's son by Emma of Normandy; while Leofric, the Earl of Mercia, asserted the pretensions of Canute's illegitimate son Harold.

A compromise was, however, effected, by which it was agreed that Harold should rule over the provinces north of the river Thames, and Hardicanute over those to the south.

Attempts were soon afterwards made by Edward and Alfred, Emma's sons by Ethelred, to secure possession of the English throne; but none of these were successful. The former made a descent upon

Southampton, but meeting with no support, was obliged to return to Normandy; the latter landed in Kent at the head of about 600 followers; but being deceived, as it is said by Earl Godwin, who pretended to espouse his cause, was decoyed with his followers to Guildford, and there treacherously murdered. Upon the death of Harold (1039), Hardicanute became sole King of England; but being a weak prince, he suffered the reins of government to fall into the hands of Godwin and the Queen Dowager Emma, while he amused himself in drunken carousals with Danish favourites. In one of these revels he was seized with a fit and died, A.D. 1042.

Edward, being in England at the time of Hardicanute's death, was elected to the sovereignty, chiefly through the influence of the great earl, who, in return for his support, stipulated that the new king should marry his daughter Edith. Godwin was now by far the most considerable personage in England. His own earldom included Kent, Sussex, and part of Wessex; his son Sweyn possessed the same authority over the counties of Oxford, Berks, Gloucester, Somerset, and Hereford; Harold, his second son, was Duke of East Anglia and Governor of Essex; while his other sons, Wulnoth, Tosti, Gurth, and Leofwin were subsequently advanced to offices of dignity and importance. Two other great Saxon chieftains—Leofric, who ruled the northern part of Mercia, and Siward, whose earldom reached from the Humber to the Scottish border, united with Godwin and his sons in upholding the authority of Edward and asserting the supremacy of the Saxon race. After a time, however, they began to regard the growing influence of the family of Godwin with suspicion and alarm; and when Godwin, as he soon afterwards did, allied himself with the popular party, and endeavoured to secure the dismissal of Edward's Norman favourites and the

redress of public grievances, these powerful noblemen, in their jealousy of the great Earl, espoused the cause of the king, and obtained the banishment of the whole family of Godwin, and the confiscation of their vast possessions. Even the Queen Edith was stripped of money and lands and confined in a monastery (1051). But the banishment of Godwin and his sons was connected with too many interests to be of long duration; and they neglected no means of securing for themselves a triumphant restoration. Having fitted out a fleet in the Flemish harbours, and being joined by his son Harold with a squadron he had collected in Ireland, Godwin sailed up the Thames to London (1052), where, being supported by many who sympathised with him in his hatred of the king's foreign favourites, he was soon in a position to demand from Edward the restoration of all his honours and possessions. At a meeting of the Witan, which was convened immediately afterwards, Godwin and his sons were declared innocent of all the charges which had been brought against them by their enemies; whereupon they were received again into the king's full friendship, and were reinstated in the complete possession of their estates and dignities. The Queen Edith was also restored to her former station.

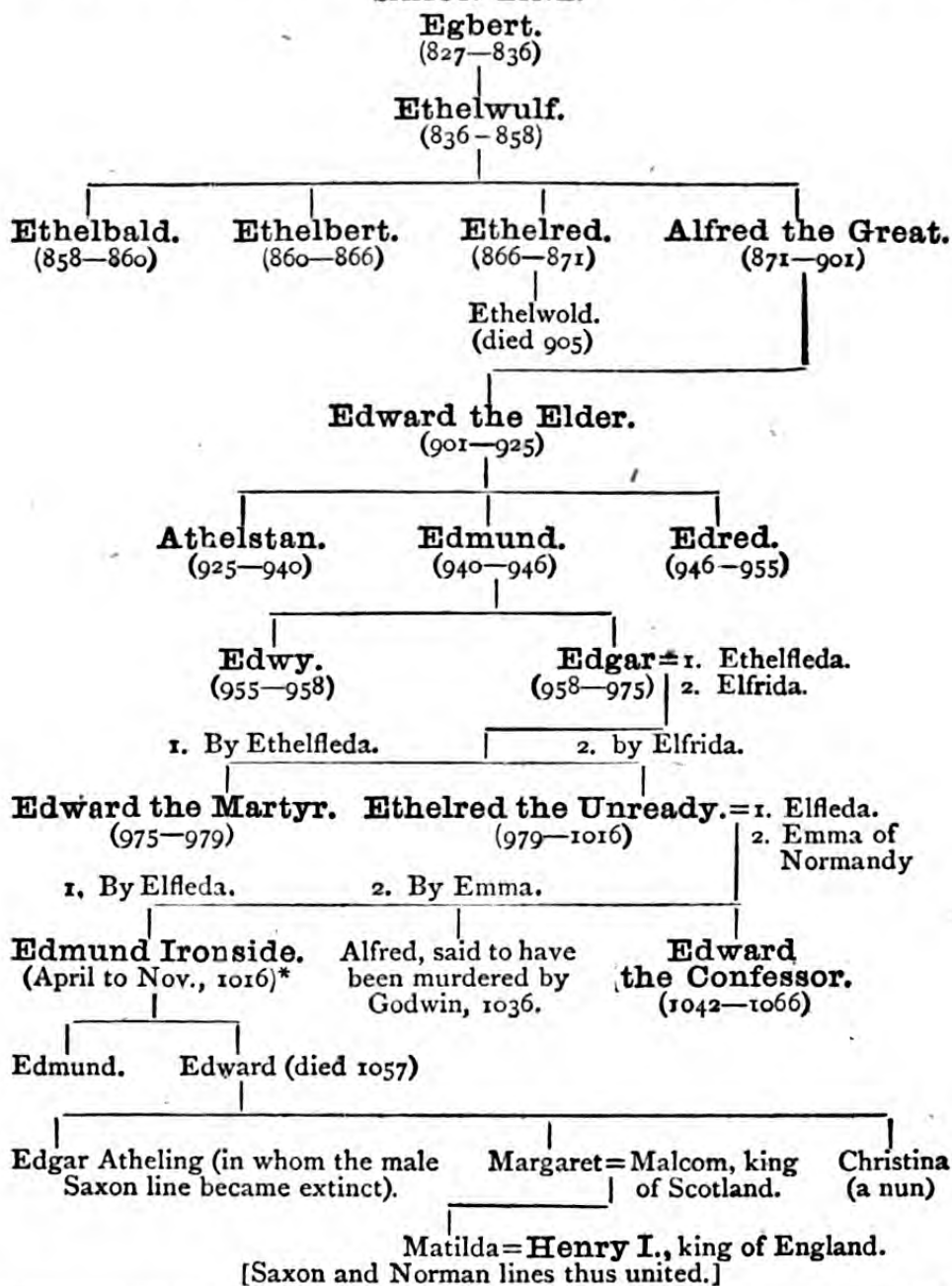
The universal joy which was manifested at this restoration of the Godwin family, must have convinced the king that his weak partiality for Norman courtiers and his love of Norman customs and institutions were odious to his people and likely to do injury to his kingdom.

To the great misfortune of the Saxon people, for whose freedom from Norman oppression he had so manfully struggled, Earl Godwin died within a year of the date of his return from exile, A.D. 1053, leaving *his governments and offices* to his son Harold.



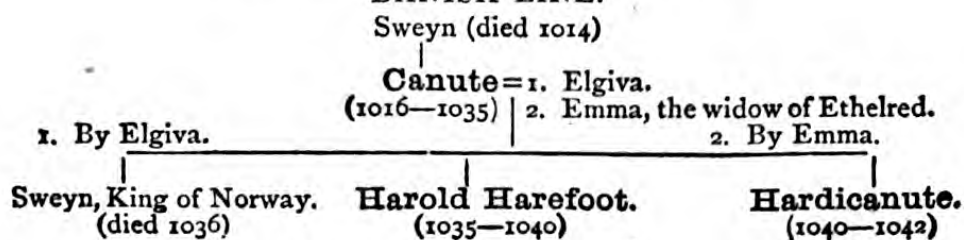
# GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND BEFORE THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

## SAXON LINE.



\* The succession is here interrupted by the

## DANISH LINE.





IV.

England under the Rule of the  
Norman Line of Kings.

(A.D. 1066-1154.)



## IV. ENGLAND UNDER THE RULE OF THE NORMAN LINE OF KINGS.

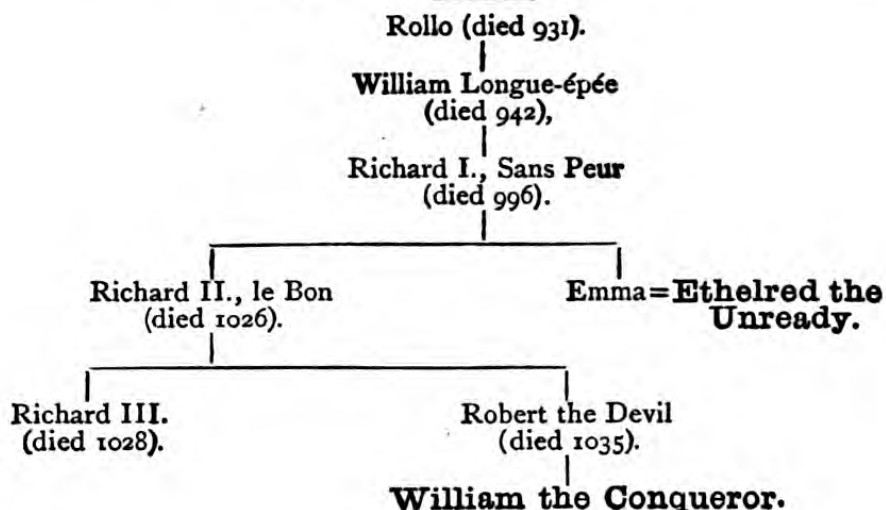
### § I. *William I., surnamed the Conqueror.*

*Born A.D. 1027; Reigned 21 years (1066-1087).*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE VI.

- A.D.
- 1066.** **Edgar Atheling proclaimed king.**—William captures Dover and advances upon London.—Submission of Edgar and his supporters. **William's coronation at Westminster** (Dec. 25).
- 1067.** The king visits Normandy.—Odo administers the government.—Conspiracies and tumults during the king's absence.—William returns and quells these disturbances.
- 1068.** Matilda joins her husband at Winchester.—Her coronation.—Insurrection headed by the earls Edwin and Morcar.—William takes York, and concludes a treaty with Malcolm, king of Scotland.
- 1069.** **Another revolt in the North.**—Norman garrison at York massacred.—The king defeats the rebels, and lays waste the country from the Humber to the Tees.
- 1070.** The Saxons deprived of all offices in the State.—The Saxon prelates degraded, and Saxon monasteries plundered.—**Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury.**
- 1071.** **THE CONQUEST OF ENGLAND COMPLETED** by the surrender of Morcar and Edgar Atheling, and the death of Edwin.—Discontent among the Norman barons.
- 1075.** Insurrection of the Norman conspirators quelled.—Waltheof executed.
- 1079.** The Welsh forced to pay compensation for their incursions.—England tranquil.
- 1085.** Attempted invasion of the Danes under Canute, the son of Sweyn.—Danegelt re-imposed by William.
- 1086.** William receives at Salisbury the oath of fealty from all the freeholders in England.—**Introduction of the FEUDAL SYSTEM.**—Preparation of **Domesday Book.**
- 1087.** Quarrel with Philip king of France.—**Death of William,** in the 61st year of his age and 21st of his reign.

TABLE SHOWING THE DESCENT OF WILLIAM  
THE CONQUEROR FROM ROLLO, FIRST  
DUKE OF NORMANDY.



## READING LESSON VII.

### DOMESDAY BOOK.

The Saxon Chronicle records that, after the failure of the projected Danish invasion of 1085, King William assembled a great council of the nation at Gloucester, and "had much grave talk concerning the land, how it was held, and by what men." A survey was then ordered to be made of the whole country. This survey was conducted by committees appointed by royal commissioners in every county; and its results, showing the extent, nature, and divisions of the landed property in each county, together with the products of various kinds,—as woods, fisheries, mines, etc.,—were collected in a register which has since been known under the name of "Domesday Book." The derivation of this title is somewhat uncertain. According to Ingulphus, a contemporary historian, the compilation was so named from its resembling the last

judgment in its universality and completeness ; others have, however, considered its name to be a corruption of *Domus Dei*, from the chapel of Winchester Cathedral, in which the register was preserved. It consists of two volumes, one a large folio, the other a quarto, written upon vellum. From it we learn that the population was then divided into four great classes : (1) the freemen, *liberi homines*, who included both Norman barons and Saxon thanes, some of whom were known as tenants *in capite*—that is, they held their possessions direct from the Crown ; (2) the *socmanni* or *socmen*, a class of inferior landowners, corresponding to the freeholders or yeomanry of later times, who held their lands from a lord and owed suit and service in the lord's court, but whose tenure of their lands was permanent ; next to these were (3) the *villeins*, who corresponded in a great measure to the Saxon *ceorls*, and occupied a position between the *thanes* and the *serfs*. The *villeins* held their lands at the will of the lord, upon the condition of performing services, uncertain in their amount, and oftentimes of the meanest nature ; they could acquire no property, either in lands or goods, and were subject to many exactions and oppressions. Lowest in the scale were (4) the *servi*, or slaves—a class corresponding with the Saxon "*theow*."

The survey of the country and the compilation of Domesday Book being completed, William—according to the narrative of the Saxon chronicler—caused all the landowners of any account to assemble to him from all parts of England at Salisbury ; and there "they all bowed to him, and became his men, and swore to him an oath of fealty, that they would be faithful to him against all other men."

Domesday Book furnishes us with the most complete evidence of the extent to which the lands of the Saxons had passed into Norman hands. All the



possessions of the great Saxon earls, Godwin, Harold, Edwin, Morcar, etc., had been confiscated; and, in addition to these, the ancient demesnes of the Crown consisted of 1422 manors. The register also enumerates ten Norman tenants *in capite*, as holding under the king not less than 2820 manors. From it much of interest may likewise be gleaned regarding the condition of the inhabitants of the towns and burghs, who, in most instances, seem to have preserved their ancient customs and privileges.

The counties of Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham were not included in the survey. The three northern counties were, in all probability, purposely omitted, on account of their having been so devastated; while all the country between the Tyne and the Tees was held by the Bishop of Durham, who was regarded as a count palatine with a separate jurisdiction.

## § 2. *William II., surnamed Rufus.*

*Born* A.D. 1060; *Reigned* 13 years (1087-1100).

### MEMORY EXERCISE VII.

A.D.

1087. Rufus secures the fortresses of Dover, Pevensey, and Hastings.—Crowned by Lanfranc (September 26)—Conspiracy of Norman barons in favour of Robert, the Conqueror's eldest son.—Rufus, with the assistance of the native English, crushes the rebellion.
1089. **Death of Lanfranc.**—Arbitrary and illegal administration of William.
1090. **William invades Normandy.**—A contract entered into between William and Robert, that if either died without issue, the survivor should inherit all his dominions.—Revolt of Henry, the Conqueror's youngest son.
1091. **War with Scotland.**—Malcolm obliged to do homage to William.—Cumberland annexed to England.—Carlisle fortified.

- A.D.
- 1093.** Malcolm lays claim to Northumberland and Cumberland, and invades England, but is defeated and slain at Alnwick, by Roger de Mowbray, a powerful Norman baron.—Illness of the king.—Anselm appointed Archbishop of Canterbury.
- 1095.** Peter the Hermit preaches a Crusade against the Turks.
- 1096.** The first Crusade.—Robert pledges his dukedom to William.
- 1097.** Quarrel between the King and the Archbishop.—Anselm retires from England.
- 1099.** Jerusalem taken by the Crusaders.—William takes possession of his brother's dominion.
- 1100.** William killed in the New Forest.—An inundation of the sea sweeps away 4000 acres on the coast of Kent, thus forming the present Goodwin Sands.

## READING LESSON VIII.

## THE FIRST CRUSADE.

In 1095, a zealous missionary, known as Peter of Amiens, or, more commonly, as Peter the Hermit, went throughout Europe, proclaiming that the Holy Sepulchre had been closed to Christian pilgrims by the Turks, who had conquered Syria; and that the servants of the Cross were being massacred, plundered, and sold into slavery by that fierce Mohammedan people; and calling upon all Christian princes and peoples to unite in an attempt to rescue Jerusalem and the holy places from the hands of their infidel invaders. The Pope, lending his countenance to the design, in November of the same year, summoned a great council of prelates, princes, and nobles at Clermont, in Auvergne, to consult upon the undertaking. At this conference both the Pope and Peter renewed their exhortations; and the whole assembly, as if suddenly inspired, exclaimed with one voice: *Deus lo volt, Deus lo volt*—"It is the will of God,

it is the will of God ;” which words were employed as the signal for battle and for rendezvous in all the subsequent exploits of the Crusaders. The year following was appointed for the setting out of the expedition against the Turks. Men of all ranks flew to arms with the utmost ardour ; and the emblem of the cross being chosen as the badge of union, was affixed to their right shoulder by all who enlisted themselves in this sacred warfare. An old historian says : “There was no nation so remote, no people so retired, as did not contribute its portion. The Welshman left his hunting, the Scot his hills, the Dane his drinking party, the Norwegian his raw fish ; lands were deserted of their husbandmen, houses of their inhabitants—even whole cities migrated : the roads were too narrow for the passengers, so thickly were they thronged with endless multitudes.” The impatience of the people would not allow them to wait either for arms or leaders. A vast and undisciplined host set forth under the leadership of Peter the Hermit and a soldier named Walter the Penniless, intending to reach Palestine overland by way of Constantinople and Asia Minor ; but their numbers were so wasted by hunger and fatigue, and by the attacks of the inhabitants of the uncivilized countries through which they had to pass, that when at last—a mere remnant of the mighty host with which they started—they reached the shores of Asia, they were easily routed and cut to pieces by the Turks.

The regular army of the Crusaders approached Palestine under their different leaders by various routes ; and, after a long and arduous struggle with Soliman, the Soldan of the Turks, in which the Christian army was reduced to the number of only 20,000 foot and 1,500 horse, Jerusalem was taken, A.D. 1099, and Godfrey de Bouillon proclaimed king.

Among the princes who joined in this Crusade, was

Robert of Normandy, the eldest son of William the Conqueror, who, in order to obtain the means of equipping his followers for the expedition, mortgaged his dukedom to his brother William for the sum of 10,000 marks. While absent upon this Crusade William died, and Robert thus lost the opportunity of prosecuting his claim to the English crown, which was seized by his younger brother Henry, A.D. 1100.

§ 3. *Henry I., surnamed Beauclerc.*

*Born* A.D. 1070; *Reigned* 35 years (1100-1135).

MEMORY EXERCISE VIII.

A. D.

1100. **Henry crowned in London** within three days of his brother's death (August 5).—Grants a charter to the people.—Invites Anselm to return.—Marries Matilda, daughter of Malcolm and niece of Edgar Atheling.—Robert returns and takes possession of Normandy.
1101. Robert lands with his followers at Portsmouth (July 19).—Anselm mediates between the two brothers.
1105. **Henry invades Normandy.**
1106. **Battle of Tenchebray.**—Robert a prisoner.—Normandy reduced.—Henry returns to England.—Robert confined in Cardiff Castle (28 years).—Controversy with the Pope in regard to investiture.
1114. Matilda the king's daughter married to the Emperor of Germany.
1118. Death of Henry's queen, Matilda (good Queen Maud).
1119. **War with France.**—Louis defeated at Noyon, between Rouen and Paris.
1120. **Prince William drowned** in crossing from Normandy.
1121. Henry marries Adeliza, daughter of the Duke of Louvain.
1127. **Matilda given in marriage to Geoffrey, earl of Anjou.**—Henry causes all the barons to swear fealty to her.
1128. William, son of Robert, killed in a skirmish at Alost.
1133. Birth of Henry, afterwards Henry II.
1134. Death of Duke Robert at Cardiff.
1135. **Death of Henry I.**



§ 4. *Stephen of Blois.*

*Born* A.D. 1105; *Reigned* 18 years (1135-1154).

## MEMORY EXERCISE IX.

- A.D.
1135. Stephen, son of Adela the daughter of William I., usurps the throne of England.—Crowned king (December 26).—Grants charters.—Hires mercenaries.
1138. Robert, Earl of Gloucester, a natural son of Henry I., plans an insurrection.—**David King of Scotland invades England**, but is defeated at Northallerton (**Battle of the Standard**).
1139. The Empress Matilda lands in England with a small retinue.—Establishes herself at Arundel Castle.—Anarchy in the land.
1141. **Stephen taken Prisoner.**—Matilda for a time in power.—Revolt of the city of London.—Matilda besieged in Winchester.—Robert Earl of Gloucester captured, and afterwards exchanged for Stephen.—**Civil War for some years.**
1146. The Empress retires into Normandy.—Death of her brother Robert.
1148. Prince Henry, Matilda's son, proceeds to Scotland, and makes incursions into England.
1150. Prince Henry returns to Normandy and is invested with the dukedom.
1151. Death of Geoffrey.—Prince Henry succeeds his father in the sovereignty of Anjou and Maine.
1152. Henry marries Eleanor, the divorced Queen of Louis VII. of France, and acquires possession of Guienne, Poitou, and other provinces in the south of France.
1153. Henry again invades England.—Gains some advantage over Stephen at Malmesbury.—**A truce concluded.**—Henry to inherit the crown upon the death of Stephen.
1154. **Death of Stephen.**

## READING LESSON IX.

## THE EMPRESS MATILDA.

Matilda, the only legitimate daughter of Henry I., was betrothed at the early age of eight years to the Emperor Henry V., and sent over to be educated in



Germany (A.D. 1100). Her husband, the Emperor, died without issue in 1124; and in 1127 her father—who had in the meanwhile lost his only son William—gave her in marriage to Geoffrey, Earl of Anjou, and endeavoured to insure her succession to the throne of England, by causing all the barons—both of England and Normandy—to acknowledge her as his heir, and take an oath of fealty to her. Upon the birth of her son Henry, in 1133, the king obliged his nobles to renew the oath of allegiance to Matilda which they had already sworn. King Henry died in 1135; and Stephen, supported by the very men who had taken an oath of fealty to Matilda, took possession of the crown of England. For a time Stephen remained secure in his usurped authority, to strengthen which he passed a charter, in which he made liberal promises to all orders of men—to clergy, nobility, and people; while, with the treasure which had been amassed by Henry, he engaged mercenary soldiers to defend his ill-gotten throne.

In 1138, Robert, Earl of Gloucester, a natural brother of Matilda, renounced his allegiance to Stephen, and retired beyond sea; and, in the same year, King David of Scotland took up the cause of his niece Matilda and made an incursion into England, but was defeated in the famous “Battle of the Standard,” at Northallerton, in Yorkshire. And now, for a period of more than fifteen years, England became one continued scene of bloodshed and horror. The desolation of the country is thus pictured in the Saxon Chronicle:—“The nobles and bishops built castles and filled them with devilish and wicked men, and oppressed the people cruelly, torturing men for their money. They imposed taxes upon towns, and when they had exhausted them of everything, set them on fire. You might travel a day and not find one man living in a town, nor any land in cultivation. Never did the

country suffer greater evils. If two or three men were seen riding up to a town, all the inhabitants left it, taking them for plunderers; and this lasted, growing worse and worse, throughout Stephen's reign. "Men said openly that Christ and His saints were asleep."

Having been invited to England by her friends, Matilda crossed over from Normandy in September, 1139, and established herself at Arundel Castle, on the coast of Sussex. From thence she proceeded to Bristol, which was held by the Earl of Gloucester. The greater part of the nobles of the north and west made a solemn renunciation of their homage and allegiance to Stephen of Blois, and renewed the oath they had taken to the daughter of Henry. The whole Norman race seemed to have been at once divided into two hostile factions; and the claims of the contending parties were urged with varying success, but always with increasing desolation to the population of England, throughout the remainder of this most unhappy reign. For a time the cause of Matilda triumphed. Stephen was captured and imprisoned, first at Gloucester, and afterwards in a dungeon of Bristol Castle; and the claims of Matilda were solemnly recognised in an ecclesiastical synod held at Winchester by the brother of Stephen himself.

But Queen Matilda's good fortune soon made her disdainful and arrogant. She ceased to take the advice of her old friends, and treated those of her adversaries, who made overtures of submission to her, with great harshness. By such conduct she chilled the zeal of her most devoted adherents, and many withdrew themselves from her cause.

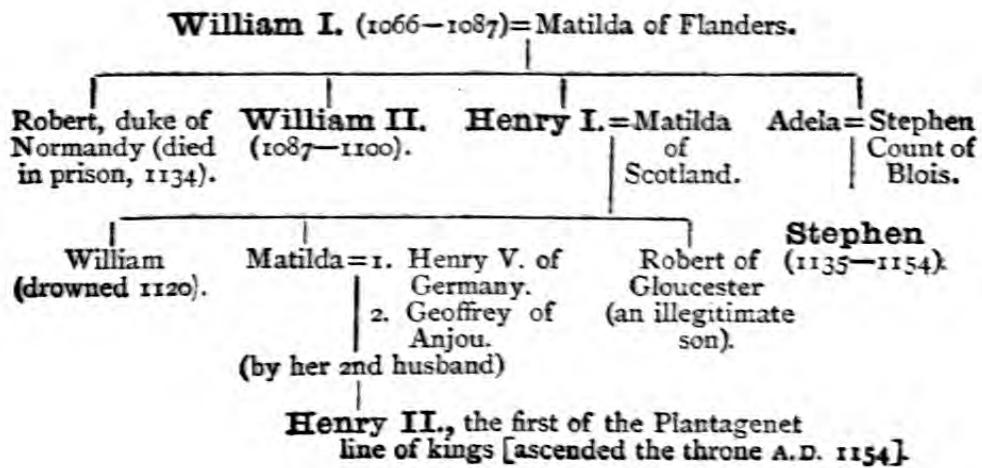
From Winchester the queen proceeded to London, where she rendered herself odious to the citizens by the exaction of an enormous poll-tax, as well as by her refusal of their petition for the restoration of the laws of her ancestor, the "good King Edward."

The Londoners thereupon took up arms, and, being joined by the adherents of Stephen, obliged Matilda to seek for safety in flight. Her brother Robert was shortly afterwards taken prisoner; and Matilda, sensible of how important he was to the success of her cause, consented to an exchange of prisoners, by which both Stephen and the Earl of Gloucester were released upon equal terms (1141). The civil war was then renewed with greater fury, and continued several years.

In 1142, Matilda was besieged in the city of Oxford. The defence was maintained for three months against the forces of King Stephen, who surrounded the fortress on all sides. Famine was approaching the helpless garrison. It was the depth of winter, the ground was covered deeply with snow, and the Thames and its tributary streams were frozen over. With a small escort, the queen succeeded in escaping undiscovered through the royal posts, she and her knights being clad in white, in order that they might pass unseen over the snow-covered ground. On another occasion Matilda is said to have escaped from her enemies by being carried in a coffin upon the shoulders of her attendants. At length, upon the death of her brother the Earl of Gloucester, in 1146, Matilda retired into Normandy, and from henceforth the prosecution of her claim to the throne of England devolved upon her son Henry, who was now grown up to man's estate, and who, in 1150, with the consent of his mother, was invested with the Duchy of Normandy.



**GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE NORMAN LINE  
OF SOVEREIGNS.**



V.

England under the Plantagenets.

(A.D. 1154-1485.)





V. ENGLAND UNDER THE  
PLANTAGENETS.

§ I. *Henry II.*

*Born* A.D. 1133 ; *Reigned* 35 years (1154-1189).

MEMORY EXERCISE X.

A.D.

- 1154.** Henry Plantagenet returns to England, and is crowned king (Dec. 19).—He dismisses the mercenaries of Stephen.—Demolishes the newly-erected castles of the barons.—Corrects the debased coinage.
- 1157.** Henry makes an unsuccessful attempt upon Wales.
- 1158.** Alliance with Louis the French king.—Brittany invaded by Henry.
- 1162.** Becket made Archbishop of Canterbury.—Henry's struggle with the papal authority commences.
- 1164.** General council of nobles and prelates summoned at Clarendon (Jan. 25).—The Constitutions of Clarendon voted.—Assize of Clarendon also passed, but not ratified till 1176.—Becket assents to the Constitutions, but afterwards retracts.  
Becket condemned by a great council held at Nottingham (Oct. 12).—He escapes to Gravelines.
- 1170.** Conference between the king and Becket at Touraine.—Differences adjusted, and Becket permitted to return to England (Dec. 1), after an exile of six years.—Becket suspends the bishops who had proceeded (June 15) to the coronation of Prince Henry without his consent.—Quarrel with the king renewed.—Becket murdered in his Cathedral of Canterbury (Dec. 29).
- 1171.** Conquest of Ireland.
- 1172.** Meeting between the king and the papal legates in Normandy.—Henry absolved of having been concerned in the murder of Becket, and confirmed by the Pope in the possession of Ireland.
- 1173.** Rebellion of the king's sons.—Disaffection among the English and Norman nobility.—Invasion of England by William king of Scotland.
- 1174.** Henry makes a pilgrimage to the shrine of Becket.—The Scotch king defeated and taken prisoner at Alnwick.—The English rebels submit.—The king's sons return to their obedience.
- 1175.** The king of Scotland, with all his barons and prelates, com-

A.D.

- elled to do homage to Henry at York.—**Berwick ceded to the English.**—Appointment of itinerant justices.
- 1183.** Death of Prince Henry, the king's eldest son.—War between Richard and Geoffrey.—The latter wages war also upon his father.
- 1186.** Geoffrey killed in a tournament at Paris.
- 1187.** **Saladin retakes Jerusalem.**—**A second crusade resolved upon.**—Henry takes the cross and prepares to set out for Palestine.
- 1188.** Richard, assisted by Philip of France, again makes war upon his father.
- 1189.** **Henry dies at Chinon,** worn out with grief and vexation at the undutiful conduct of his sons (July 16).

---

## READING LESSON X.

### THOMAS BECKET.

Thomas Becket,—the most remarkable man of his country, or of the times in which he lived, and the first of English descent who, after the Conquest, rose to any considerable eminence in the State,—was a native of the city of London, and the son of Gilbert Becket, a London merchant. He was born in or about the year 1119, in the reign of Henry I. As a boy, he was gifted with an extraordinary intelligence, a handsome person, and prepossessing manners; and his father, being in prosperous circumstances, was able to give him all the advantages of a good education. He studied successively at Merton Abbey, Oxford, and Paris; and in the French capital—in addition to an acquaintance with civil law—he acquired as perfect a mastery and as pure a pronunciation of the French language as the most cultivated of the Norman nobles and officers. Upon his return to England his abilities soon commanded attention, and he attracted the notice of Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, who advised him to enter holy orders, and to continue the

study of law—all lawyers and judges being at that time chosen out of the priesthood. With the means furnished by Theobald, Becket was enabled to travel for his further improvement to Italy, where he studied the civil and canon law in the university of Bologna. He was afterwards advanced by Theobald to the archdeaconry of Canterbury, and employed by him in conducting two difficult negotiations at Rome, one of which had regard to the obtaining a bull from the Pope to prevent any bishop officiating at the coronation of Eustace, the son of Stephen. Upon the accession of Henry II. this service, and the recommendation of Theobald, brought Becket into favour with the king, who promoted him to the high office of Chancellor of the kingdom (A.D. 1156). At the same time king Henry, who was charmed with Becket's wit, and who already preferred his services and society to those of any other man—whether of English or Norman lineage,—appointed him preceptor to his heir, Prince Henry, and conferred upon him the wardenship of the Tower of London and the Castle of Berkhamstead in Hertfordshire, and the possession of several large baronies, which had escheated to the Crown.

Becket, like the Wolsey of a later period of English history, who held the same office, now lived in almost regal splendour; the pomp of his retinue, the sumptuousness of his furniture, the luxury of his table, and the munificence of his presents exceeded anything which England had ever seen before in a subject. A great number of knights were retained in his service; the greatest barons were proud of being received at his table; while his house was a place of education for the sons of the chief nobility. At the same time it is universally admitted that Becket was an able and honest minister, and that his administration was upon the whole advantageous to his master, and extremely beneficial to the nation at large; for, during the time

that he was in office, internal tranquillity was restored to a country which had not known the blessing of peace for upwards of twenty years, the power of the barons was curbed, better judges were appointed, the currency was reformed, and trade with foreign nations was encouraged and protected.

At this time a violent struggle was going on between the clergy and the king, in consequence of the efforts of the latter to make priests amenable to civil jurisdiction; and upon the death of Theobald, in 1162, Becket was elevated by the king to the Primacy, in the hope that, with his assistance, the Church might be brought more under the influence and authority of the civil power. In this, however, Henry was greatly disappointed; for no sooner was Becket raised to his new dignity, than he changed his whole course of life—becoming as ascetic as he had before been luxurious and extravagant, and exhibiting himself as the avowed defender of the Church against what he professed to consider the encroachments of the civil authority. After his election and consecration to the archbishopric of Canterbury, Becket resigned his office of Chancellor, pretending that he must thenceforth detach himself from secular affairs, and be solely employed in the exercise of his spiritual functions. This step gave Henry great offence, as it was a proof that Becket wished to break off all friendly connexion with his sovereign, and to apprise the latter, that, as Primate of England, he was identified with the interests of the Church. Occasion for a quarrel between the king and the new archbishop was soon supplied. In the year 1164, the royal justiciaries summoned before their assizes a priest of Worcestershire, who had been guilty of murder. Hearing of these proceedings, Becket, as ecclesiastical superior of all England, declared the king's summons to be null, and sent his own agents to arrest, examine, and punish the offender. The king



thereupon summoned a council of nobles and prelates at Westminster, and after declaring to them the numerous offences of which priests were daily guilty, asked them, according to the usual form, "whether they were willing to submit to the ancient laws and customs of the kingdom." The nobles replied that such was their desire; but the bishops, with Becket at their head, answered "as far as is consistent with the honour of God and of the Holy Church." The king was indignant and immediately deprived the archbishop of all those temporal appointments which he had held at the pleasure of the Crown. A great council of all the Anglo-Normans, archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, earls, barons, and knights was then summoned at Clarendon, near Salisbury, in Wilts, in the month of March, 1164. A series of articles was here drawn up, since known as "The Constitutions of Clarendon," to which Becket was obliged, though with great reluctance, to subscribe. Upon the Pope's refusal to ratify the Constitutions, Becket expressed the deepest sorrow for his compliance, and, upon his return to his diocese, he boldly set about acting in defiance of the statute he had consented to pass.

A council was next summoned by Henry at Northampton (Oct. 12, 1164), at which Becket was arraigned as a traitor to his sovereign, and all his possessions were declared to be at the king's mercy. After a vain attempt to brave the king's authority, Becket was compelled to leave Northampton secretly, and to make his escape to the Continent. Here he was favourably received by Louis, the king of France. A war with France ensued which lasted three years, when peace was concluded. After much negotiation, all difficulties between Henry and his archbishop were apparently adjusted, and Becket was permitted to return to England (A.D. 1170). His first act upon his arrival in England was to pronounce a sentence of

suspension against the bishops who had assisted, without his sanction, at the consecration of Prince Henry, the king's eldest son. The aggrieved prelates, making their way with their complaint against Becket to the king at Bayeux, so enraged Henry, that he burst forth with an exclamation against his servants, whose want of zeal, he said, had so long left him exposed to the insults of that imperious and ungrateful prelate. Upon this, four knights of the king's household, taking these passionate utterances to be a hint for Becket's death, crossed over to England, and, reaching Canterbury on the fifth day of the Nativity, murdered the archbishop upon the steps of the shrine of St. Benedict in his own cathedral (Dec. 29, 1170). Between two and three years after his death Becket was canonized by Pope Alexander; his body was removed to a magnificent shrine, erected by Henry himself, and enriched by presents from all parts of Christendom; and the place of his martyrdom was thenceforward annually visited by tens of thousands of pilgrims.

## § 2. *Richard I., surnamed Cœur de Lion.*

*Born A.D. 1157; Reigned 10 years (1189-1199).*

### MEMORY EXERCISE XI.

- A. D.
- 1189. Coronation of Richard** (Sept. 3).—Massacre of the Jews.—The king sells the fortresses of Berwick and Roxburgh for 10,000 marks.
- 1190.** Richard, and Philip, king of France, join their forces and set out for Palestine.—The English fleet compelled to winter at Messina.—Richard here joined by Berengaria, daughter of the King of Navarre.
- 1191. Conquest of Cyprus.**—Marriage of Richard and Berengaria.—Siege and capture of Acre.—Philip returns to France.—Richard leads his forces along the coast of Palestine to Jaffa.—Eleven days of constant fighting with Saladin.

- A.D.  
**1192.** Richard concludes a truce with Saladin.—The intrigues of Philip and Prince John oblige Richard to return to England.—**The king arrested at Vienna, by Leopold, the Archduke** (Dec. 20).—He is afterwards delivered a prisoner to the Emperor Henry VI.  
**1193.** Richard defends himself before the diet of the empire, and is admitted to ransom (May 20).  
**1194.** Richard lands in England (March 12), after a captivity of more than a year and a half.—Reduces the fortresses occupied by the adherents of his brother John.—He then passes over to Normandy and wages war against Philip.  
**1199.** Death of Richard I. while besieging the castle of one of his Norman nobles (April 8).

§ 3. *John, surnamed Lackland.*

*Born A.D. 1166; Reigned 17 years (1199–1216).*

MEMORY EXERCISE XII.

- A.D.  
**1199.** John crowned at Westminster (May 25).—The claims of Prince Arthur, son of Geoffrey, third son of Henry II., supported by Philip of France and the barons of Anjou, Maine, and Touraine.—**War with France.**  
**1200.** Treaty concluded between France and England.—Philip abandons the cause of Arthur, who does homage to his uncle for Brittany.—John divorces his first wife, Hadvisa, the daughter of William, Earl of Gloucester, and marries Isabella, the daughter of the Count of Angoulême.—Coronation of the new queen (Oct.).  
**1201.** Constance, mother of Prince Arthur, dies.  
**1202.** War with France renewed.—Arthur sent by Philip into Poitou to head the insurrection against King John.—The insurgents surprised while besieging **Mirabeau**.—**Arthur taken prisoner**, and confined, first at Falaise, and afterwards in the castle of Rouen.  
**1203.** Murder (supposed) of Arthur, at the command of his uncle.—General insurrection in Brittany.—Loss of all the English possessions in France, with the exception of Aquitaine.  
**1205.** Death of Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury.—The king quarrels with the monks of Canterbury regarding the nomination of a successor.—The Pope commands the election of **STEPHEN LANGTON**.

A. D.

1208. The kingdom laid under an interdict (March 23).
1209. John excommunicated by the Pope.
1212. John deposed by the Pope.—His subjects absolved from their allegiance, and Philip called upon to carry out the sentence of deposition.
1213. John submits to the Pope.—Becomes his feudatory.—Does homage to Pandulf, the papal legate, at Dover.—Acknowledges Langton as archbishop.
1214. John crosses over to Poitou to wage war with Philip.—Peace concluded at Chinon (Sept. 18).—The English barons, under Langton and the Earl of Pembroke, meet in solemn council at St. Edmund's.—They withdraw from their allegiance to King John,—They march towards London and levy war upon the king.—John obliged to submit.
1215. Conference between the king and his barons at Runnymede.—MAGNA CHARTA signed (June 15).—John assembles mercenaries.—The Pope issues a bull of excommunication against the barons.—Langton refuses to publish the bull, and is suspended.—The king overruns the country.—The barons seek the aid of Philip, and offer the crown of England to his son Louis.
1216. Louis lands with an army at Sandwich (May 30).—Rochester reduced.—John loses his baggage, treasure and regalia by an inundation, on passing from Lynn to Wisbeach.—Seized with fever, he dies at Newark (Oct. 17).

---

 READING LESSON XI.

## MAGNA CHARTA.

King John, after his abject submission to the papal power, was destined to pass through a series of still more humiliating circumstances. His government had become odious to all classes of men in the country. He had offended the barons by his insolence and licentiousness, and excited general discontent by his tyranny and exactions; so that it is not a matter of surprise when we learn, that a confederacy was at length formed for the purpose of extorting from the king a restoration of the ancient



privileges of the nation. Nothing forwarded this confederacy so much as the concurrence and support of Stephen Langton—a man whose memory, though he was obtruded on the English nation by a direct encroachment of the see of Rome, ought always to be respected by the English. To the patriotic efforts of this man, and of William, Earl of Pembroke, who so nobly seconded him, Englishmen are indebted for the foundation of their liberties.

A solemn meeting of the barons was convened at St. Edmund's, on the 20th November, 1214; and there, upon the altar, they all swore to withdraw from their allegiance to King John, if he should resist their claims to just government. The king, in order to break or subdue the power of the confederate barons, endeavoured to avail himself of the influence of the Church; and to this end he sent to Rome to implore the aid of the Pope in his quarrel, and granted to the clergy a charter, by which he relinquished for ever that important prerogative for which his father and all his ancestors had so zealously contended, viz., the right of appointment to all high ecclesiastical dignities. The result of the king's appeal to Rome was a letter from the Pope to Archbishop Langton, commanding him to exercise his authority in bringing back the vassals of the crown to their allegiance. The barons had however gone too far to recede now from their pretensions. Choosing Robert Fitz-Walter for their leader, under the title of *Marshal of the Army of God, and of Holy Church*, they proceeded to levy war upon the king. Upon the approach of the festival of Easter, they assembled with a large force at Stamford, and then marched upon London, which was entered without opposition. Proclamations were now issued commanding the other barons to join them; and the king being left at Odiham in Hampshire, with a poor



retinue of a few knights only, was soon compelled to submit to the demands of his subjects.

A conference between the king and his barons was appointed at Runnymede, between Windsor and Staines, a place which has ever since been celebrated in the annals of our country. Here, upon June 19th, 1215, was signed *MAGNA CHARTA*, or the Great Charter of Liberties, which either granted or secured very important privileges to every order of men in the kingdom, and which must always be regarded as the keystone of English liberty.

The design of the great charter seems to have been twofold: first, to impose such limitations on the feudal claims of the sovereign as would prevent their abuse; and, secondly, to specify what were the general rights of all freemen, as derived from ancient law and usage. With this view, and under the first head, clauses were inserted by which "reliefs" were limited to a certain sum, in accordance with the rank of the heir or tenant-in-chief succeeding to the inheritance; "aids" or "scutages" were not to be levied by the king without the consent of the great council of the nation, excepting upon the occasion of the knighting of the king's eldest son, the marriage of the king's eldest daughter, or for the ransom of his own person; and the property and persons of wards were likewise protected. All the privileges and immunities granted under the charter to the tenants-in-chief were to be by them extended to the inferior vassals. But the essential clauses of *Magna Charta*—to quote the authority of Mr. Hallam—are those which were designed to "protect the personal liberty and property of all freemen, by giving security from arbitrary spoliation." **NO FREEMAN SHALL BE TAKEN OR IMPRISONED, DISSEISED OF HIS FREEHOLD, OR LIBERTIES OR FREE CUSTOMS, OR BE OUTLAWED OR EXILED OR ANY OTHERWISE DESTROYED; NOR WILL**

WE PASS UPON HIM BUT BY LAWFUL JUDGMENT OF HIS PEERS, OR BY THE LAW OF THE LAND. WE WILL SELL TO NO MAN, WE WILL NOT DENY OR DELAY TO ANY MAN JUSTICE OR RIGHT. Other clauses of the charter secured to London and the other great towns the possession of their ancient franchises; established one weight and one measure for the whole kingdom; and freed the commerce of the country from many restrictions, permitting alien merchants to trade freely throughout the land. Freemen and even *villeins* were protected from excessive fines; and the latter were not to be deprived of their carts, ploughs, and other implements of husbandry.

It thus appears that, while the former articles of Magna Charta contain such mitigations and explanations of the feudal law as are reasonable and just, the latter involve all the chief outlines of a legal government, and provide for the equal distribution of justice and free enjoyment of property. From them also we are enabled to form a tolerably exact estimate of what those laws of "good King Edward" were, which the people of those times so persistently desired should be restored to them.

---

§ 4. *Henry III., of Winchester.*

*Born* A.D. 1207; *Reigned* 56 years (1216-1272).

MEMORY EXERCISE XIII.

A.D.

1216. The Earl of Pembroke, Marshal of England, causes the young Prince Henry to be crowned at Gloucester (Oct. 28).—Pembroke chosen Protector at a council of the barons at Bristol.—Magna Charta confirmed.
1217. The French defeated at Lincoln.—Their fleet destroyed by Hubert de Burgh.

A.D.

1218. **Death of the Earl of Pembroke.**—Hubert de Burgh and Peter des Roches, Bishop of Winchester, are appointed regents.—**Internal commotions.**—**War with France continued.**
1223. A bull from the Pope declares the king competent to perform all royal acts.
1224. Louis invades Poitou and captures Rochelle.—Des Roches retires from office, and goes on a pilgrimage to Palestine.
1225. A great council assembled.—**The Charter again confirmed.**—An “aid” granted.
1227. The king declares himself of age, and sets up his prerogative above the charters.—Expedition into Wales.
1230. Henry collects an army for the invasion of France.—Quarrels with De Burgh and dismisses his troops.
1231. The king dismisses De Burgh.—**Peter de Roches, Bishop of Winchester, becomes chief minister.**
1234. De Roches dismissed from office.
1236. Henry marries Eleanor, daughter of the Count of Provence.
1239. **Prince Edward born.**
1242. **War with France renewed.**—Parliament refuses to vote a supply.—**Poitou lost to the English.**
1244. The Pope extorts money from England.
1248. Parliament again refuses the king a subsidy.
1253. **Expedition to Guienne** to repel an invasion of the King of Castile.—Queen Eleanor appointed Lady Keeper of the Great Seal during her husband’s absence.
1256. Richard, Earl of Cornwall, and brother of the king, chosen King of the Romans.—**Constant disputes between the king and the barons.**
1258. **Parliament assembled.**—The barons, with **SIMON DE MONTFORT**, Earl of Leicester, at their head, appear in armour (May 2).—**The “mad parliament”** summoned at Oxford (June 11).—Henry submits to the barons.—**Montfort at the head of a supreme council of state.**—**“Provisions of Oxford.”**—Arrangements made for the regular election and session of parliament.—Rivalship of the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester.—De Montfort retires to France.
1259. **Treaty with France**, by which Henry renounces his claim to all the English possessions in that country lost during the reign of King John.
1261. Henry obtains possession of the Tower.—Dismisses the council of state.—Sets aside the “Provisions of Oxford.”
1263. The Earl of Leicester returns to England.

A. D.

- 1264.** The quarrel between Henry and his barons referred to the King of France for arbitration.—The barons refuse to accept the decision.—**Battle of Lewes** (May 13).—King Henry and Prince Edward taken prisoners.
- 1265.** **Parliament summoned by Leicester** (Jan. 20).—**THE FIRST REPRESENTATIVE ASSEMBLY.**—Escape of Prince Edward.—**Battle of Evesham** (Aug. 4).—Leicester defeated and slain.—Henry's authority re-established.
- 1266.** **Kenilworth taken** (Nov.).—A parliament meets here to settle the affairs of the kingdom.—“**The Award of Kenilworth.**”
- 1270.** **Prince Edward joins Louis IX. in a crusade.**—Death of Louis at Tunis.
- 1271.** **Edward lands at Acre.**—Takes Nazareth.—Touching story of his life being saved by his wife Eleanor.
- 1272.** **Death of Henry III.** (Nov. 16).—Edward still absent from England.

## READING LESSON XII.

## SIMON DE MONTFORT.

King Henry III. was perpetually engaged in disputes with the barons, who, disgusted with his partiality for the foreign relatives of his Queen Eleanor, and irritated at his arbitrary exactions and constant breaches of the great charter of their freedom, were frequently obliged to address him with the severest remonstrances. He was several times compelled to confirm the Great Charter, and this in the most solemn manner possible—and yet as often did he return to the same arbitrary and irregular mode of administration. The spirit of resistance which was thus roused grew stronger and stronger, till at length it broke out into an open revolt against the supremacy of the crown. A confederacy of the nobles was formed for the purpose of redressing grievances and demanding from the king the just observance of the charter he had so often violated.



The leader of the confederated barons was Simon de Montfort, a son of that Simon de Montfort who had conducted a crusade against the Albigenses. He was a Frenchman by the father's side, but in every other respect he was the truest of Englishmen. He had married the king's sister, Eleanor, widow of the Earl of Pembroke; and had governed Gascony for many years with vigour and success. For some time he had enjoyed the friendship and favour of King Henry; but the fickleness and arbitrary conduct of that prince had driven him to side with the popular party in their attempts to reform the administration. The king having summoned a parliament (May 2nd, 1258), for the purpose of obtaining supplies, the barons appeared in the assembly clad in complete armour, with their swords by their sides. A stormy meeting ensued, and the king was constrained to promise to summon another parliament at Oxford for the purpose of arranging a new plan of government. This parliament, which is called by most of the old chroniclers the "mad parliament," met on the day appointed (June 11th, 1258), and Henry was compelled to submit to all the terms which its members thought fit to impose upon him. A supreme council of state was appointed, with Montfort at its head, and to this council all legislative power was in reality transferred. By one of the PROVISIONS OF OXFORD—as the decrees of the council were styled—it was enacted that four knights should be chosen for each county to attend the next assembly of parliament, for the purpose of giving information concerning the grievances of which their neighbourhood had reason to complain, and the condition of their particular counties. To Simon de Montfort and his confederates therefore may be ascribed the first introduction into England of that system of parliamentary representation which obtains in our present House of



**Commons.** De Montfort was undoubtedly a man of eminent ability, and of many excellent as well as popular moral qualities; and he appears throughout to have had the national heart and voice with him, which is in itself a proof that the cause for which he laboured was the cause of popular freedom. His supremacy in the state was, however, soon afterwards disputed by another of the great barons, Richard de Clare, Earl of Gloucester; and the quarrel of the adverse factions enabled Henry, in the beginning of the year 1261, to throw off the authority of the council of the barons, and to resume the reins of government—De Montfort withdrawing himself for a time from the country. In 1263 Leicester returned to England, and being joined by Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, the son of his late rival, proceeded to prosecute his quarrel with the crown by force of arms. A civil war ensued, which was conducted with varying success to the parties engaged, till the total overthrow of the royal forces and the capture of the king and his son Prince Edward, at Lewes (May 13th, 1264), once more placed all the power of the kingdom at the feet of the great baronial leader. In order still further to strengthen his position, De Montfort summoned a new parliament in London (January 20th, 1265), the assembling of which forms a new epoch in the constitutional history of England. In addition to the knights of shires who, under the Provisions of Oxford, were to attend the sessions of parliament, writs were now for the first time issued for the election of two representatives of each borough in the kingdom—an order of men who in former ages had always been regarded as too mean to enjoy a place in the national councils. This assembly may therefore be rightly regarded as the first meeting of the English HOUSE OF COMMONS.

Leicester was not left long in peaceable possession

of the supremacy to which he had thus attained. His arrogance and assumption of superiority soon alienated many of his most powerful adherents, and these, joining themselves to Prince Edward, who had succeeded in effecting his escape, renewed the struggle for the restoration of the royal authority. On the 4th of August, 1265, the two parties encountered at Evesham, and the result was the total defeat of the baronial forces with immense slaughter—De Montfort and his son Henry being both among the number of the slain.

“It was a striking evidence of the indestructibility of the principles for which De Montfort fought and perished, that even in the hour of full success the king did not dare to revoke the Great Charter; and when he and a parliament, held at Winchester, passed severe sentences against the family and adherents of De Montfort, he provoked a new resistance which occupied Prince Edward two years to put down. And thus ended the last armed struggle in England for Magna Charta.” \*

---

§ 5. *Edward I., surnamed Longshanks.*

*Born A.D. 1239; Reigned 35 years (1272-1307).*

MEMORY EXERCISE XIV.

A.D.

1272. Edward receives in Sicily the news of his father's death, but spends some time in Italy and France before his return to England.
1274. Edward I. crowned at Westminster (Aug. 19), by Robert, Archbishop of Canterbury.
1276. Llewellyn, Prince of Wales, summoned to do homage to Edward.—An army levied to reduce him to submission.

---

\* From “Old England.”

- A.D.
1277. **Edward invades Wales.**—Llewellyn, being defeated near Snowdon, returns with Edward and does homage to him at Westminster.
1278. **The Statute of Gloucester** enacted for the stricter administration of justice, etc.
1279. **The Statute of Mortmain** passed to restrict the granting or bequeathment of landed property to ecclesiastical corporations.
1282. National outbreak of the Welsh under their princes Llewellyn and David.—**Llewellyn defeated and slain.**—David succeeds to his brother's principality.
1283. David taken prisoner and afterwards executed at Shrewsbury.—**THE CONQUEST OF WALES COMPLETED.**
1284. Wales formally annexed to England by the **Statute of Wales.**—Birth of Edward, first Prince of Wales, at Caernarvon Castle (April 25).
1286. The king visits Gascony and arbitrates in a quarrel between Alphonso, king of Aragon, and Philip the Fair, king of France. Death of Alexander III., king of Scotland. **The Maid of Norway** acknowledged queen of Scotland.
1289. Edward returns to England—reforms abuses—brings the corrupt judges to trial and deposes them.
1290. The Jews banished from England.
1291. Death of the Norwegian princess while on her passage to Scotland.—**Numerous competitors for the Scottish crown: Baliol, Bruce and Hastings, the chief of these.**—Scotland threatened with civilwar. The Scottish parliament refer the question of the succession to Edward I.—**Conference at Norham in Northumberland** (June 13).—Baliol's claim admitted; he is required to do homage to Edward as his "liege man for Scotland."
1293. Baliol summoned to London, and treated with indignity by Edward.
1294. Edward cited to appear at the court of the king of France.—Upon his refusal to do so, Guienne is declared to be forfeited to the crown of France.—**War with France** follows.—A rising in Wales subdued.—Alliance between the French king and Baliol.
1295. **Writs issued by Edward to the sheriffs for the election of knights of the shires and deputies from the boroughs.**
1296. **EDWARD INVADES SCOTLAND.**—Victory over the Scots at Dunbar.—Baliol submits to Edward.—The whole of Scotland subdued.—**Edward removes the**

A.D.

- coronation stone from Scone.—The Scotch nobles do homage to Edward at Berwick. Baliol carried a prisoner to London.—Earl Warrenne left regent in Scotland.
1297. The nobles and commons of England resist the arbitrary exactions of the king.—Edward obliged to confirm **MAGNA CHARTA** (*Confirmatio Chartarum*).—A general revolt in Scotland, headed by Wallace.—Warrenne defeated at **Cambuskenneth**.—Wallace invades the north of England and ravages Durham.
1298. **Peace concluded between France and England**.—Edward returns from Guienne—Raises an army for the invasion of Scotland—Gains a great victory at **Falkirk**.
1301. **A parliament at Lincoln** (Jan. 20) declares the entire independence of England from papal control.
1303. **The Scots again in arms**.—Edward leads a great army into Scotland.
1304. Comyn and the other rebel leaders obliged to come to terms with the king.—Surrender of Stirling Castle.—Wallace continues the struggle.
1305. **Wallace betrayed** and sent in chains to London, where he is tried and executed.
1306. **Robert Bruce** chosen leader by the Scotch nobility at Dumfries (Feb.).—Murder of Comyn, the son of Baliol's sister.—**Bruce crowned at Scone** (March 27).
1307. Death of Edward (July) at Carlisle, while on his march to Scotland.

---

### READING LESSON XIII.

#### THE CONQUEST OF WALES.

During the first years of his reign, Edward I. applied himself to the re-establishment of order and to the correction of those abuses which the civil commotions and loose administration of the late reign had introduced into every part of the government. To this end he devoted his energies to the extirpation of the bands of marauders which infested the country, to the checking of the lawlessness of the barons, and to the introduction of important reforms in the administration of justice throughout the land.

These objects being accomplished, the active spirit



and ambition of Edward soon led him to attempt the reduction of the neighbouring countries of Wales and Scotland. An excuse for the invasion of the former country was not long wanting. Llewellyn, its prince, had been actively concerned in the wars of the barons during the reign of Henry III.; and, although at the general pacification which followed the battle of Evesham, he had obtained pardon for having sided with the English rebels and had sworn fealty to the English monarch, he yet had reason to dread the future resentment and jealousy of Edward; and therefore, with the object of providing for his security, he kept up a secret correspondence with his former associates, and still further identified himself with their cause by endeavouring to effect a marriage with Eleanora, the daughter of Simon de Montfort, the late Earl of Leicester. The marriage took place by proxy in 1275, but Eleanora, when proceeding from the continent to join her affianced husband in Wales, was intercepted and taken prisoner to the court of Edward. This incident increased the jealousy existing between Edward and Llewellyn; and, when the latter refused to obey the repeated summonses of Edward to do homage to him as his vassal, the English king levied an army, and resolved upon the conquest of Wales (A.D. 1277). Edward's designs upon the principality were also favoured by the treachery of Llewellyn's brothers, David and Roderic, who, in revenge for having been dispossessed of their inheritance, seconded with all their interest the attempt of the king to enslave their country.

Upon the approach of Edward, the Welsh prince took refuge among those inaccessible mountain fastnesses of Snowdon, from which, in former times, the Welsh had so successfully defied all the attempts of both the Saxon and Norman conquerors. But Edward, by carefully exploring every road before



him, and securing all the mountain passes in his rear, succeeded in completely surrounding the forces of Llewellyn, which, cooped up in a narrow corner of the country, and exposed to all the horrors of famine, were obliged to submit to the invaders without being able to strike a single blow for the independence of their country. Llewellyn returned with Edward to England, and did homage to him for his territories at Westminster. After this he received back his bride, and, upon the promise of a large tribute, was allowed to return to Wales (1277).

The treaty so concluded was, however, of very short duration. The oppressions and insults of the English, and in particular the exactions and injustice of the lords of the marches, soon excited a general revolt of the Welsh; and Llewellyn, being joined by his brother David, resolved to throw off the English yoke. Success at first attended the arms of the Welsh. A body of their forces under Prince David ravaged the plain country, took the castle of Hawarden, and made Sir Roger Clifford, the justiciary of the marches, prisoner. A detachment of Edward's army under Lord Latimer was also defeated in an attempt to cross the Menai strait. Hearing of these successes, Llewellyn left his brother David to defend the passes of Snowdon, and, descending into the low country, resolved to hazard a general engagement with the English army. Upon crossing the Wye, his troops were, however, surprised by the English under Mortimer, and he was himself slain (1282).

On the death of Llewellyn, the Welsh chieftains, except David, submitted to Edward, who was too politic to treat them with severity. For six months longer, the last of the unfortunate princely family continued an ineffectual struggle against the English invaders. He could never collect an army sufficient to face the forces of Edward, and, being hunted from hill to hill,

and from one hiding-place to another, he was at length betrayed to the enemy, sent in chains to Shrewsbury, and, after undergoing the mockery of a trial before the assembled peers of England, was condemned and executed as a traitor (A.D. 1283).

Edward remained more than a year in Wales, completing the pacification of the country. The laws of England, and all the machinery for the administration of justice, were introduced into the principality; and though it was long before national prejudices and antipathies were extinguished and a thorough union between the two nations cemented, yet this important conquest, which had been vainly attempted for 800 years, was at last, through the abilities of Edward, successfully achieved.

The queen was with the king during his abode in Wales; and there, at Caernarvon, on the 25th April, 1284, her son Edward was born and invested with the dignity of Prince of Wales: a title which has ever since been inherited by the eldest son of the sovereigns of England.

---

### § 6. *Edward II., of Caernarvon.*

*Born* A.D. 1284; *Reigned* 20 years (1307-1327).

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XV.

A. D.

- 1307.** Edward II. receives the homage of his nobles at Carlisle—Leads the English army northwards—Returns to England and disbands his army—Recalls his favourite, **Piers Gaveston**, who had been banished from the country by a parliament held in Feb., 1307.—Gaveston made Earl of Cornwall.
- 1308.** Edward marries Isabella of France, at Boulogne.—Gaveston left guardian of the realm.—**Confederacy of the nobles against Gaveston.**—The king, being compelled to banish him, invests him with the governorship of Ireland.—**Coronation of Edward** (Feb. 24).

A. D.

- 1309. Gaveston recalled.**—Bruce recognised as king by the clergy of Scotland.—**A truce between England and Scotland**, which lasts till Aug., 1310.
- 1311.** The barons again obtain the banishment of Gaveston.
- 1312.** Edward removes to York—Invites Gaveston to return from Flanders, and reinstates him in all his offices and dignities.—**Confederacy of the barons.**—**Gaveston surrenders, and is executed on Blacklow Hill, near Warwick.**
- 1313.** All Scotland, with the exception of a few fortresses, in the hands of Bruce.—Edward assembles an army, and marches northwards.
- 1314.** Stirling besieged by Bruce.—**Battle of Bannockburn**, and total overthrow of the English forces (June 25). Loss of Stirling Castle.
- 1315.** Edward Bruce invades Ireland, and,
- 1316** is crowned king in Ulster.—The Welsh form an alliance with Edward Bruce.—**Famine, pestilence, and anarchy in England.**
- 1318.** Robert Bruce makes two invasions of England.—Edward Bruce slain in battle at Dundalk.
- 1321.** **The Despensers**, father and son, banished the kingdom (Aug.).—They return to England again (Oct.).—The Earls of Hereford and Lancaster at the head of the baronial party.—They make an alliance with Bruce.
- 1322.** **Battle of Boroughbridge.**—Hereford slain.—Lancaster taken prisoner, and executed for treason.
- 1323.** Unsuccessful attempt against Scotland.—**A truce for thirteen years** agreed upon (May 30).
- 1324.** The revenues of the Templars conferred upon the Knights of St. John.
- 1325.** Queen Isabella visits Paris to settle some difference between Edward and her brother Charles the Fair.—Prince Edward joins his mother in order to assume the government of Guienne.—**Isabella enters into a conspiracy with Roger Mortimer** and other refugee barons in France.—She and the Prince of Wales land at Orwell, in Suffolk (Sept. 24).—The malcontent barons join them.—**The Despensers are taken prisoners and executed.**
- 1327.** A parliament (Jan. 7) votes the deposition of the king.—Prince Edward placed on the throne.—The king is imprisoned, first at Kenilworth, and afterwards at Berkeley Castle, where he is murdered (Sept. 21).
-

## READING LESSON XIV.

## PIERS GAVESTON.

The history of Piers Gaveston furnishes an appropriate illustration of those fierce and troublous times of English history, when the crown and the nobility were too often involved in a struggle for ascendancy ; when might was right ; and when the sacred principles of law and justice were as yet but little understood. The civil contests between the sovereign and his barons, which had distracted the country throughout the whole of the reign of Henry III., but which had been temporarily allayed during that of Edward I., were again stirred up by the vices and frivolity of Edward II.

Prince Edward had exhibited marks of a vicious and dissolute disposition, and had given great offence to the king by his irregularities. In these he is said to have been encouraged by a young Gascon, named Piers Gaveston, who is represented by historians as possessed of singular personal attractions and mental endowments, and as being far superior in address, wit, and accomplishments, to the rough and unpolished barons of the English court. But at the same time he was notoriously unprincipled and profligate ; while his pride and ambition knew no bounds.

Gaveston was the son of a Gascon knight, who had done good service to King Edward I., and who, in return for such service, had obtained for his son an establishment in the household of the Prince of Wales. Here he soon insinuated himself into the affections of his master by his agreeable behaviour and by ministering to the young prince's dissolute tastes. The irregularities and crimes of Prince Edward being ascribed to the evil influence and suggestions of his companion, Gaveston was, by order of the king, banished from the kingdom. Upon the death, however,



of Edward I. in 1307, Gaveston was recalled by the new king, who now loaded his former favourite and companion with fortune and honour; conferred upon him the whole estate belonging to the earldom of Cornwall; gave him in marriage his own niece, the sister of the Earl of Gloucester; and seemed to find no satisfaction in his own royal position, except in proportion as it enabled him to exalt to the highest dignity and splendour this object of his affections.

Gaveston soon obtained an unbounded influence over so weak a monarch. He procured for himself the office of grand chamberlain of the kingdom; filled all the chief offices in the court with his own dependants; and, during a temporary absence of the king in France, was left, with almost regal powers, sole guardian of the realm.

However discreet Gaveston might have been, the lavishing of such honours upon him would have excited the jealousy and suspicion of the English nobles; but, vain and presumptuous as he was, he soon incurred the fierce and unrelenting enmity of those haughty barons. A confederacy of the nobility against the favourite was formed under the leadership of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, cousin-german to the king. Being joined by the clergy, they demanded his banishment from the kingdom in a solemn assembly of parliament. The king yielded to their demand, but contrived to convert even this circumstance into a mark of favour by appointing his minion to the governorship of Ireland (A.D. 1308), assigning him the whole revenues of that kingdom for his subsistence, and attending him to the place of his embarkation.

Gaveston did not long remain absent from England, for Edward, unhappy while separated from his favourite, made use of every expedient to soften the anger of the offended barons, and at length succeeded in persuading the parliament to consent to his recall.



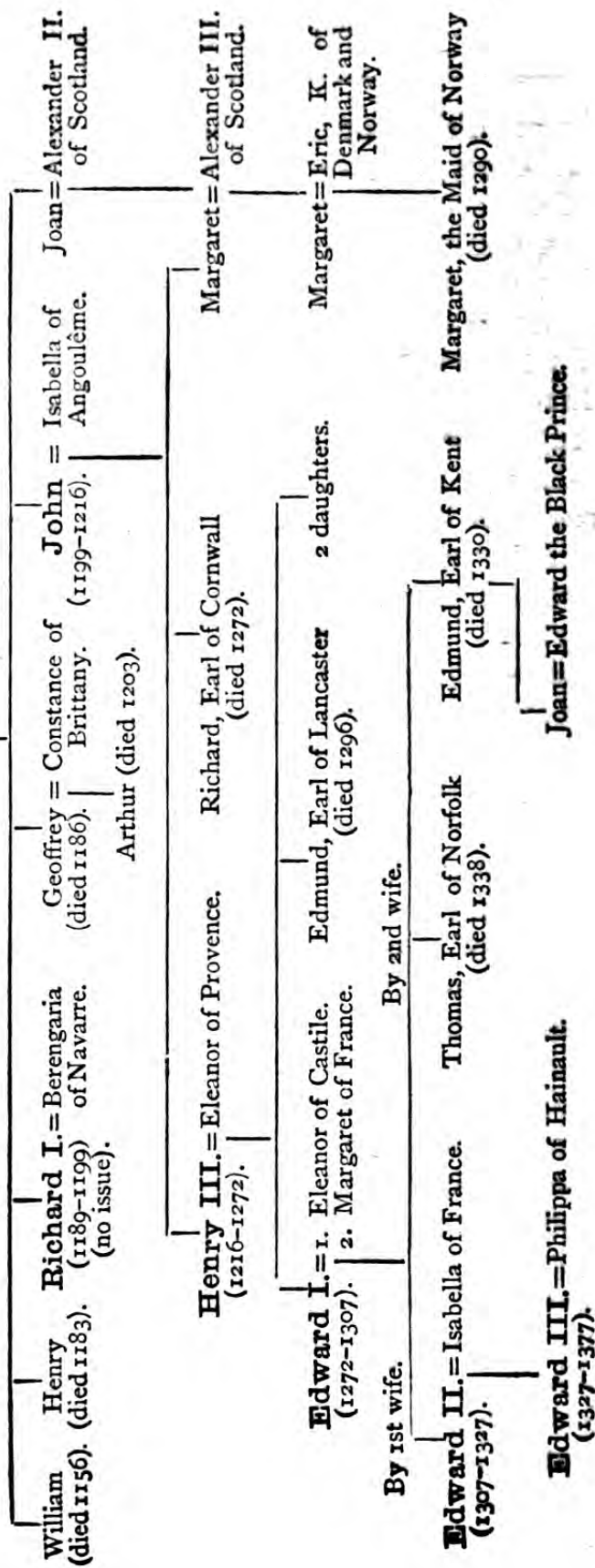
Upon his return, Gaveston, who had not learned prudence, behaved with even more arrogance than before, and so provoked the resentment of the nobles that, coming armed to parliament, they compelled the king to authorize a commission for regulating the affairs of the kingdom, and to pronounce a sentence of perpetual banishment against his favourite (1311). Gaveston left the realm, and for some time lived at Bruges with all the splendour of a sovereign prince.

In the year following, Edward, being at York, and freed, as he thought, from the control of his barons, invited his favourite to England, and openly reinstated him in all his former credit and authority (1312). The nobles, justly incensed at this breach of faith on the part of their sovereign, and apprehensive of serious consequences to themselves from the return to power of one who possessed such influence over Edward, took up arms, and, uniting their forces, proceeded to attack the king at Newcastle. Both Edward and Gaveston were compelled to flee with precipitancy, and the latter found shelter for a time in the castle of Scarborough. Here, after withstanding several assaults with great bravery, he was at length compelled to capitulate to the Earl of Pembroke, under a promise of safe conduct. He remained for a while in the custody of the earl; but, being left by him on one occasion for a night at Deddington Castle, near Banbury, with only a feeble guard for his protection, he was seized by Guy, Earl of Warwick, his most bitter enemy, and by him conveyed to the castle of Warwick. After a short consultation, his fate was speedily decided. Without any regard either to the laws, or to the military capitulation, he was dragged to Blacklow Hill, about two miles from Warwick Castle, and there beheaded, amidst the scorn and reproach of his implacable enemies (July 7, 1312).

**GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF PLANTAGENET.**  
**No. 1.—HENRY II. TO EDWARD III. (A.D. 1154—1377).**

Matilda, daughter of Henry I. = Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou.

**Henry II.** = Eleanor, Countess of Poitou and Aquitaine, and divorced queen of Louis VII. of France.



§ 7. *Edward III., of Windsor.*

*Born* A.D. 1312; *Reigned* 50 years (1327-1377).

MEMORY EXERCISE XVI.

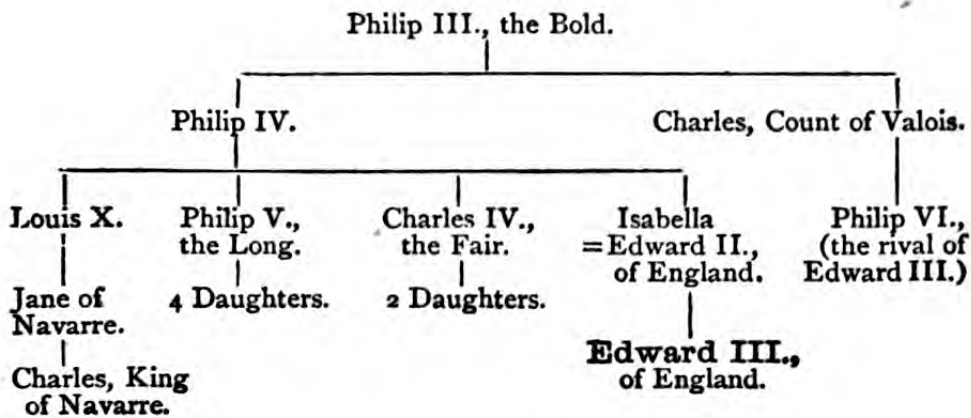
A.D.

1327. The Earl of Lancaster appointed protector and guardian of the young king's person.—The real power in the hands of Isabella and Mortimer.—Invasion of the Scots.
1328. A treaty concluded with Scotland.—Robert acknowledged as an independent sovereign.—Edward marries Philippa of Hainault.—Death of Robert Bruce, and accession of his son David II.
1330. The Earl of Kent betrayed by Mortimer, and executed.—**Birth of Edward the Black Prince.**—Mortimer surprised by Edward at Nottingham, condemned by the parliament, and executed (Nov. 29).—Isabella confined at her manor of Risings for the rest of her life.
1332. **Edward, son of John Baliol, crowned at Scone** (Sept. 27).—He is defeated at Annan, and compelled to take refuge in England.
1333. The party of King David II. invade England.—**Battle of Halidon Hill** (July 19).—The regent Douglas slain.—Berwick surrenders.—Baliol restored.
1334. Baliol again expelled from Scotland.
1335. Baliol, assisted by the English forces, ravages Scotland.—Civil war continues in Scotland for several years.
1337. **Edward assumes the title of King of France.**
1338. Edward passes over into Flanders, and is joined by Van Artevelde, "The Brewer of Ghent."
1339. The English king invades France, but is compelled to retire.
1340. Edward in England.—A large French fleet collected at Sluys.—The English and Flemings gain a complete victory over the French.—**A Treaty concluded between England and France.**—Exactions of Edward and disaffection of the people (more especially of the clergy) in consequence.
1342. Dispute concerning the succession of Brittany.—**War with France re-commenced.**—The war continues with little advantage to either side.
1344. **Statute of Provisors** passed, rendering it penal to procure presentation to benefices from the court of Rome.
1346. Edward lands at Cape La Hogue with a large army (July).—**Battle of Crécy** (Aug 26).—**The siege of Calais commenced** (Aug. 31).—David II. of Scotland invades England.—**Battle of Neville's Cross, near**

A.D.

- Durham (Oct. 12).—David taken prisoner and detained a captive till 1357.
1347. Queen Philippa joins her husband before Calais.—**Calais surrenders** (Aug. 4).—A truce agreed upon between the two rival kings.
1349. **Institution of the Order of the Garter**.—England visited with a pestilence, called the **Black Death**.—**Statute of Labourers** passed, in consequence, forbidding emigration, and confining the labourer to one locality.
1350. Death of Philip of Valois, king of France.
1352. Passing of a statute defining the crime of **High Treason**.
1355. The truce with France expires.—Edward opens the campaign in France.—The Scots take Berwick.—Edward returns to England—Advances to the north—Retakes Berwick, and ravages the south of Scotland.
1356. The Black Prince commences a campaign in the south of France.—**Victory of Poitiers**.—The French king, John II., taken prisoner.
1357. The prince enters London with his royal captive (May 24).—Anarchy in France.—Insurrection of the peasants, called "*The Jacquerie*."—The Dauphin and the states of France refuse to ratify the terms of peace agreed upon by King John.
1359. A new invasion of France by the English.—Charles the dauphin forced to submit.
1360. **Treaty of Bretigni** (May 8).—Edward renounces his claim to the crown of France.
1363. King John, unable to observe the terms of his release, returns to England.
1364. Death of the French king in the Savoy.
1367. The Black Prince leads an army to the assistance of Peter the Cruel, king of Castile.—Gascony taxed to defray the charges of this campaign.—The Gascon nobles appeal to Charles V., king of France.—Prince Edward cited to appear at the French court.
1369. **War with France re-commenced**—Edward resumes the title of **King of France**.—Death of Queen Philippa.
1370. Limoges captured, and its inhabitants butchered by the English.—The Black Prince returns in ill health to England.
1374. A three years' truce concluded.—Bordeaux, Bayonne, and Calais, the only possessions in France retained by the English.
1376. Death of Edward the Black Prince (June 8).
1377. Death of Edward III. (June 21).

A GENEALOGICAL TABLE SHOWING THE  
DESCENT OF EDWARD III. FROM  
PHILIP III. OF FRANCE.



READING LESSON XV.

ENGLAND UNDER EDWARD III.

There is, perhaps, no portion of early English history so deserving of study as the reign of King Edward III. ; for, as it was one of the longest, so also was it one of the most glorious in the annals of our country. Although the ascendancy which the English, under Edward III., gained over the French nation may in a great measure account for the interest which this reign excites in the minds of most Englishmen, our admiration for this prince is not the less due to the character of his domestic government, and to the fact that, under his vigorous and prudent administration, England enjoyed a longer interval of internal peace and tranquillity than she had experienced in any former period, or was blest with for many ages afterwards. By his affability and munificence Edward gained the affections of the nobles, and made them submit without murmuring to what would have



otherwise been esteemed a harsh and arbitrary rule ; while, by directing their energies into the channel of foreign conquest, he left them no leisure to breed those disturbances in the kingdom to which they were so naturally inclined, and which the form of government of the time appeared so greatly to encourage. In this latter respect only can the foreign wars of Edward be deemed to have been beneficial to England, seeing that, as a general rule, they were neither founded in justice nor directed to any salutary purpose.

During this reign the English parliament rose into greater consideration and acquired a more regular authority than in any former time ; for Edward, being in constant need of supplies for the conduct of his wars, whether with Scotland or France, was obliged to have recourse to his parliament for assistance, which could only be obtained by the concession by the sovereign of equitable laws and popular privileges. Even the House of Commons, which during the preceding period of turbulence had been depressed by the greater power of the crown and the barons, began to have some weight in the constitution.

One of the most popular of the laws enacted by Edward was the statute passed in the 25th year of his reign, by which the crime of high treason was limited to three principal heads, viz., conspiring the death of the king, levying war against him, and aiding his enemies within the realm. Before this time the definition of what constituted a case of high treason had been extremely vague and uncertain.

In the course of his long reign more than twenty parliamentary confirmations of *Magna Charta* were granted by Edward ; and although these repeated confirmations would seem to imply as frequent breaches of the national charter, there is little doubt that, at this time, three great constitutional principles were

pretty firmly established, viz., (1) the illegality of raising money without the consent of parliament; (2) the necessity of the concurrence of Lords and Commons in all matters of legislation; and (3) the right of the Commons to discuss the public policy and to impeach the ministers of the Crown.

Another important enactment in this reign was the *Statute of Provisors*, by which it was rendered penal to procure from Rome presentations to English benefices. A sentence of outlawry was subsequently pronounced against any who should carry an appeal from the king's courts to the papal court at Rome.

Commerce and industry, though certainly at a low ebb during this reign as compared with later times, yet made considerable progress. The principal export was that of wool; but a large trade was also carried on in the export of hides, leather, butter, tin, and lead. Edward endeavoured to introduce and promote the manufacture of wool by giving protection and encouragement to foreign weavers, and by passing laws to prevent any one wearing cloth except that of English make. An extensive trade was carried on at this time with the Baltic; but it was not till the middle of the next century that the English extended their navigation to the Mediterranean.

It will thus be seen that the arts of peace were not entirely neglected during this stirring period. While France was being devastated by war, the English, in the enjoyment of domestic tranquillity, gathered in their harvests, adorned their cities with such noble buildings as the cathedrals of Winchester, York, Salisbury, and Lincoln, pleaded, traded, and studied in security. So great was the desire for learning that as many as 30,000 students are said to have been in attendance at this time at the University of Oxford alone. Now it was that the use of the French language in all pleadings and court documents was

abolished—a sure sign that the amalgamation of the two opposing races in England was well-nigh complete. Now it was that English prose and English poetry alike sprang into being—Chaucer, the father of English verse, and Wycliffe, who may as justly be styled the father of English prose, both flourished in this reign.

In spite, however, of all these outward appearances of national prosperity, the condition of the lower orders was but little in advance of their serfdom under the earlier Norman sovereigns. They were still subjected to heavy exactions at the will of both king and barons ; and even the handicraftsmen of towns, who were in a measure under the protection of the charters of their respective boroughs, were frequently compelled to render forced services to the king whenever he wished to embellish his palace, or to signalize himself by decorating a church.

Some notion of the value of money in these days may be obtained from the wages assigned to ordinary labourers : thus, haymakers received a penny a day ; labourers, three-halfpence ; carpenters, twopence ; and masons, threepence.

Learning was confined almost entirely to the clergy, who were the lawyers, teachers, and physicians of the day. Each monastery had its *scriptorium* or writing-room, where manuscripts were diligently copied by the patient monks—every page of the books so copied being bordered with some beautiful design in gold and bright colours. The books so produced were of course very costly, as much as £40 being paid for a copy of the Bible.

---

§ 8. *Richard II., of Bordeaux.*

*Born A.D. 1366 ; Reigned 22 years (1377-1399).*

MEMORY EXERCISE XVII.

A. D.

1377. Accession of Richard II., son of Edward the Black Prince.—The House of Lords, upon a petition of the Commons, elect a Council of State.—Coronation of Richard (July 16).—Unsuccessful expeditions against France.
1379. Heavy duties levied on wool and leather.—A capitation tax, on the principle of an *income* tax, is also exacted.
1380. A general and uniform poll-tax of one shilling is levied to defray the expenses of the war with France.
1381. Insurrection in Essex, Kent, Suffolk, and Norfolk, headed by Jack Straw.—The rebels, under Wat Tyler and Straw, encamp upon Blackheath (June 11).—Wat Tyler slain at Smithfield (June 14).—The rebellion suppressed and a general pardon granted.
1382. The king marries Anne of Bohemia.
1384. John of Gaunt, the king's uncle, concludes a truce with the French.—The Scots continue the war.—Death of Wycliffe at Lutterworth
1385. Richard marches against Scotland.—Nothing decisive effected.—The French prepare to invade England.
1386. The king's favourites, Michael de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk, and Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, impeached by the parliament, and dismissed.—The French invasion postponed.
1387. The French and Flemish fleets destroyed from Brest to Sluys.
1388. Battle of Otterburn ("*Chevy Chase*") (Aug. 10).—Douglas slain.—Percy taken prisoner.
1389. Richard assumes the reins of government.—His uncle Gloucester removed from the council.
1392. Passing of the Statute of *Praemunire*, rendering it penal to procure bulls, etc., from Rome.
1394. Death of Queen Anne.
1396. Richard, at Calais, marries Isabella, the daughter of Charles VI.
1397. The Duke of Gloucester arrested and sent to Calais, where he dies shortly afterwards.—Other malcontent nobles seized at the same time.—Banishment of Hereford, the son of John of Gaunt,



## 82 *INSURRECTION OF THE PEASANTS.*

---

A.D.

1399. Death of John of Gaunt.—The king seizes his estates.—**Henry Bolingbroke, Duke of Hereford, son of John of Gaunt, lands at Ravenspur with a small force and is joined by the disaffected barons.—Richard hastens over from Ireland ; is taken prisoner and forced to resign his crown (Sep. 29).—Parliament decrees the deposition and perpetual imprisonment of the king.—Henry Bolingbroke crowned in Westminster Abbey (Oct. 13).**

---

### READING LESSON XVI.

#### THE INSURRECTION OF THE PEASANTS.

In the preceding lesson it was shown that, while England under Edward III. had, upon the whole, made material progress in civilization, the lower classes were still but little removed from the serfdom which had been their portion under the earlier Norman sovereigns. The masses of the people were still in a very painful and degrading position ; and, if personal slavery was not so common as of yore, yet the obligation to remain attached to the soil and to labour without further remuneration than the barest subsistence, was the lot of the greater part of the population. It is not to be wondered at, therefore, that the popular mind began at length to revolt against so unhappy a state of affairs. According to Froissart, the services required of the common people by their lords were most oppressive in the south-eastern counties of England ; and here it was that the population, stirred up by seditious teachers, rose in open rebellion against their oppressors.

The immediate cause of the insurrection of 1381 was the imposition of a tax of three groats a head upon every male or female above the age of fifteen years, for the purpose of defraying the expenses of the war with France. This tax was farmed out to tax-



gatherers in each county, who levied the money upon the people with great rigour. To a populace still smarting under the exactions of the late reign, this new and iniquitous imposition was little short of maddening. In a few days all the commons were in insurrection throughout Essex, and the people of Kent and the adjacent counties were not slow in following their example. A collector, having demanded the tax of the daughter of a tiler at Dartford, was refused payment on the ground of her being under the age required by the statute. The collector disputed this, and was proceeding to maintain his claim with much insolence and brutality, when he was struck dead by a blow from a hammer by the enraged father of the girl.

This deed was the signal for a general rising. Choosing its perpetrator, Wat Tyler, for their leader, thousands flocked together from all parts and committed the greatest outrages on such of the gentry and nobility as fell into their hands. Advancing upon London, the rebels, 100,000 strong, encamped upon Blackheath, June 12th, 1381. In a few days this rude army, ravaging and destroying in its progress like a mighty tempest, drew near to London, necessarily creating universal consternation. On entering Southwark, the insurgents destroyed the king's prisons of Marshalsea and the King's Bench, and set free their inmates to join in the work of demolition. Passing over London Bridge into the city, they demolished Newgate, burnt the palace of the Duke of Lancaster, and pillaged the warehouses of the rich merchants. They cut off the heads of all gentlemen whom they met with; and of the Flemings remaining in London, not one was left alive.

The king, Richard II., appears at this juncture to have behaved with singular courage and presence of

mind. Acceding to the demand of the rebels for an interview, he met a large concourse of them at Mile End, and received a petition which they had drawn up. In this were demanded a general pardon, the abolition of slavery, freedom of commerce in market towns without tolls or imposts, and a fixed and moderate rent on land in commutation of the services due in villeinage. These requests were complied with, charters to that effect were granted, and this body of the rebels immediately dispersed and returned to their homes.

A large section of the insurgents, however, still remained in arms under Tyler's leadership. These broke into the Tower, murdered Sudbury, the primate and chancellor, and continued their ravages in the city. On the 17th of June the king met Wat Tyler in Smithfield. Tyler refused to accept the charters which were offered by Richard, and, behaving with much insolence to the king, was struck down by a blow from Sir William Walworth, the lord mayor, and despatched by others of Richard's attendants. The rebels bent their bows to avenge the death of their leader; but the youthful Richard, riding boldly towards them, exclaimed, "What mean ye, my good people? Tyler was a traitor. Follow me, and I will be your leader." The populace, overawed by his presence, followed him into the fields outside the city, and, after receiving a promise that their grievances should be redressed, they returned to their homes.

In a few days after the suppression of this insurrection, the king revoked all the charters which he had granted, and issued commissions for the trial of those who had taken any active share in the late disorders. These commissions were conducted with great severity—more than 1,500 persons being condemned and executed as traitors.

VI.

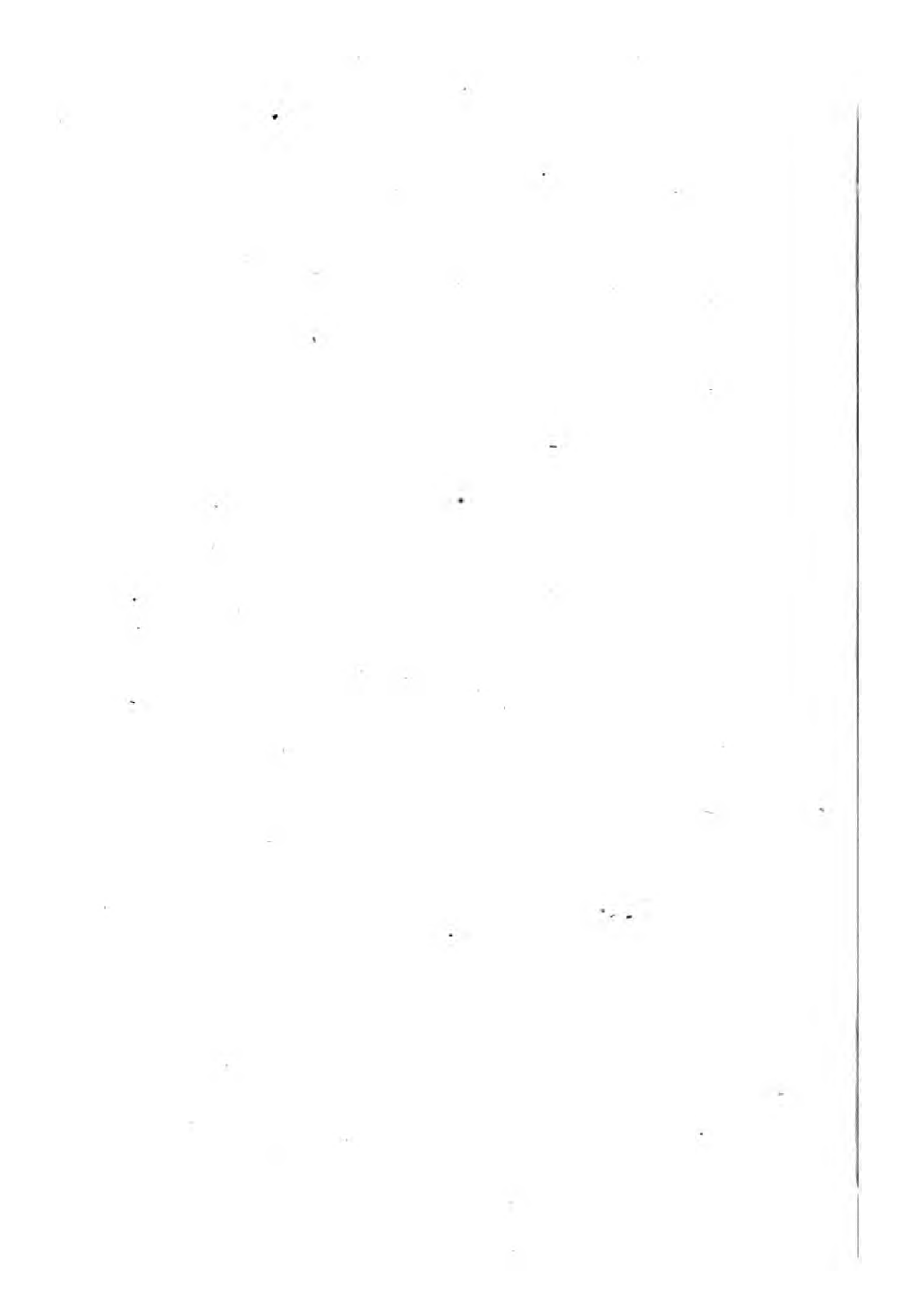
The Plantagenets.

*(Continued.)*

---

THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

A.D. 1399-1461.



## VI. THE PLANTAGENETS.

(Continued.)

### THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

---

#### § I. *Henry IV., of Bolingbroke.*

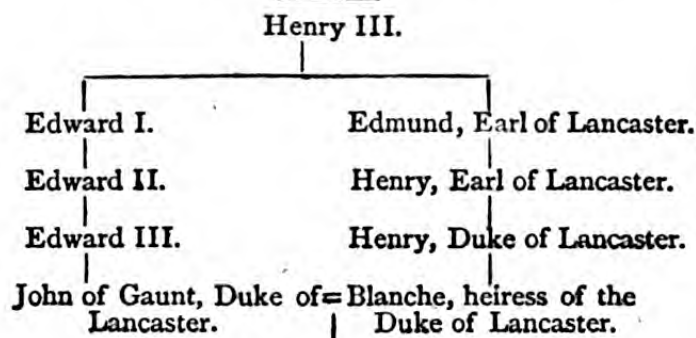
*Born* A.D. 1366; *Reigned* 14 years (1399-1413).

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XVIII.

- A. D.
- 1399. Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, the rightful heir to the throne, detained in custody at Windsor.
  - 1400. Conspiracy of the nobles in favour of Richard II.—Richard murdered at Pontefract Castle.
  - 1401. Penal laws against the Lollards enacted.—William Sautré, a London clergyman, burnt.
  - 1402. War with Scotland.—The Scots defeated at Homildon Hill.
  - 1403. Insurrection in Wales under Owen Glendower.—The Percies in league with the rebels.—Battle of Shrewsbury (July 23).—Hotspur Percy slain, Douglas taken prisoner.
  - 1405. The Earl of Northumberland again rebels against Henry.—His confederates, the Earl of Nottingham and the Archbishop of York, taken and executed.—Northumberland escapes into Scotland.
  - 1407. Northumberland defeated and slain at Bramham, near Tadcaster.—James, the son of Robert III., king of Scotland, captured by an English vessel while on his way to France, and detained a prisoner in the English court.—England visited by a pestilence—30,000 carried off in London alone.
  - 1413. Death of Henry IV. at Westminster (Mar. 20).



TABLE EXHIBITING THE DESCENT OF HENRY IV.  
THROUGH BOTH FATHER AND MOTHER  
FROM HENRY III.



**Henry IV.**  
[The rightful heir to the crown on the deposition of Richard II. was Edmund, the young Earl of March, great-grandson of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, the third son of Edward III. See Genealogical Table of the House of Plantagenet, No. II., page 108.]

## § 2. *Henry V., of Monmouth.*

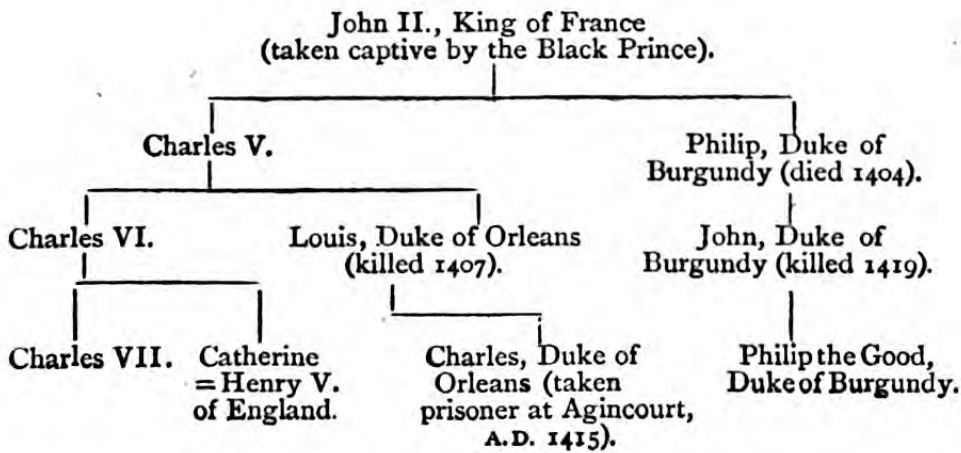
*Born A.D. 1388 ; Reigned 9 years (1413-1422).*

### MEMORY EXERCISE XIX.

- A.D.
- 1413.** Accession of Henry V. (Mar. 21).—Sir John Oldcastle, Lord Cobham, indicted by the primate, Arundel, for heresy.—Cobham escapes from the Tower and heads an insurrection.
- 1414.** The insurrection quelled and many Lollards executed.
- 1415.** Henry declares war against France.—His expedition detained through a conspiracy to place Edmund, Earl of March, upon the throne.—Harfleur taken (Sept. 22).—Battle of Agincourt (Oct. 25).—Henry continues his march to Calais with his prisoners, concludes a truce with the French and returns to England (Nov. 23).
- 1416.** Harfleur besieged by the French.—Alliance between Henry and the Duke of Burgundy.
- 1417.** Henry lands in Normandy with a large army (Aug. 1).—Caen, Evreux, and other fortresses captured.—Henry completes the conquest of Lower Normandy, and lays siege to Rouen.—Lord Cobham captured and executed.

- A.D.
1419. Rouen taken (Jan. 19).—Assassination of the Duke of Burgundy.—His son renews the alliance with Henry.
1420. Treaty of Troyes.—Henry to administer the government of France, and to succeed to the throne upon the death of Charles.—Henry marries Catherine, the daughter of Charles VI. of France, and takes possession of Paris.
1421. Henry returns to England for supplies of men and money.—His uncle, the Duke of Exeter, left governor of Paris.—Catherine crowned queen at Westminster.
1422. Henry and Catherine hold court at the palace of the Louvre (June).—Death of Henry at Vincennes (Aug. 31).—The Duke of Gloucester appointed Protector in England, and the Duke of Bedford, Regent in France.

TABLE ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE FRENCH WARS OF HENRY V., AND SHOWING THE RELATIONSHIP OF THE TWO RIVALS FOR THE REGENCY OF FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF CHARLES VI.



READING LESSON XVII.  
THE BATTLE OF AGINCOURT.

Henry V. had been seated scarcely a year upon the throne of England, when, prompted by his own love of war and of stirring adventure, as well as by the spirit of the English people, he began to revive the pretensions formerly advanced by Edward III. to the crown of France. Ill founded as these pretensions were, Henry was encouraged in them by the ecclesiastics of the time and by both houses of parliament; for, when the king, in a council assembled at Westminster on the 16th April, 1415, announced his firm intention of conducting in his own person an invasion of France, both bishops and lay lords were unanimous in their approval of his resolution and in the promise of their hearty co-operation in the undertaking. The wretched condition of France itself was also favourable to the enterprise of the English monarch. The king, Charles VI., was an imbecile, and the country was distracted with the struggles of the rival houses of Orleans and Burgundy for the regency.

Some unavailing attempts were made by France to avert, by negotiation, the coming storm. While on his way to embark at Southampton, Henry was met by an embassy under the Archbishop of Bourges, who made the most liberal offers from his sovereign king Charles; but nothing short of the absolute cession of the crown of France would satisfy the English monarch, who told the archbishop that the throne of France was his own of right, and that he would win it by the sword.

The expedition was detained for a while at Southampton, through the discovery of a conspiracy among some of his nobility to place the Earl of March upon

the throne.\* The chief conspirators being arrested, condemned, and executed, Henry put to sea and landed at Harfleur with an army of 6,000 men at arms and 24,000 foot, mostly archers, August 13th, 1415. During the siege of this place, which followed, the English army was greatly reduced by fatigue and sickness; so that, upon the capitulation of the fortress at the end of thirty-six days, Henry, finding himself at the head of barely 9,000 effective fighting men, after shipping his sick and wounded soldiers to England, resolved upon forcing a passage by land to Calais, through the hostile provinces of Normandy, Picardy, and Artois.

The march commenced on the 6th October, and was unmolested until the English reached the banks of the river Somme. Here they found all the bridges broken down, and the fords rendered impassable by the driving in of strong palisades into the bed of the river. For seven days, from the 12th to the 19th, the progress of the English was thus checked, but a passage was forced at last, and Henry and his army recommenced their march towards Calais. In the meanwhile large forces had been collecting under the dauphin and the grand constable of France for the purpose of cutting off the retreat of the English. On the 24th, Henry crossed the small river of Ternois at Blangi, and came within sight of the French army drawn up on the plains of Agincourt, and so posted as to render it impossible for him

---

\* This was Edmund, the young Earl of March, who had been detained in custody at Windsor Castle upon the accession of Henry IV. He was the grandson of Philippa, the daughter of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, the third son of Edward III. His claim to the throne of England was therefore superior to that of the sovereigns of the house of Lancaster, who claimed descent through John of Gaunt, the *fourth* son of Edward III. The Earl of March died without issue in 1424. (*See Genealogical Table, p. 108*).



to continue his march towards Calais without coming to a general engagement. The French were more than four times as numerous as the English, and were abundantly supplied with provisions ; while the latter, in addition to being wasted with sickness and the privations of a long and wearisome march, were almost destitute of supplies of food. They did not however lose courage, but awaited with confidence, as at the Crécy and Poitiers of an earlier period, the attack of the French. The king rode from rank to rank of his brave little band, saying a few inspiring words to each. Hearing some one express a wish that some of the gallant knights and stout archers, who were living in idleness in England, could be present in the field, he cried " No ! I would not have a single man more. If God gives us the victory, the greater will be our honour : if we lose, the less will be England's loss."

The battle of the 25th commenced with the attack of the English archers, who, defended from the charges of the French horsemen by a palisading of sharp stakes, which they had driven into the ground before them, carried death and confusion into the ranks of the enemy. The French cavalry, being repulsed, fell back in the greatest disorder upon their supports, and the horses being unmanageable from the wounds inflicted by the arrows of the famous English bowmen, the whole of the French army soon became one scene of terror, confusion, and dismay. Henry, perceiving his advantage, ordered his archers to advance and seize the moment of victory. These now fell with their battle-axes upon the foe, who in their present posture were alike incapable of either flight or resistance, and the field of battle was soon covered with the killed, wounded, dismounted, and overthrown Frenchmen. The battle lasted about three hours, but the slaughter during that short period of time was immense. The total loss of the French appears to



have been upwards of ten thousand slain, among whom were numbers of the chief nobility and chivalry of France: the total loss of the English in killed and wounded was comparatively trifling in amount.

After the victory the English conquerors marched slowly on with their prisoners and spoil to Calais, whence they set sail for England, where Henry was received with the acclamations of the whole nation.

---

§ 3. *Henry VI., of Windsor.*

*Born* A.D. 1421; *Reigned* 39 years (1422-1461);  
*Died* A.D. 1471.

MEMORY EXERCISE XX.

A. D.

1422. Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, appointed guardian to the young king.—Death of Charles VI. of France.—Bedford proclaims Henry king of France.—The dauphin crowned at Poitiers as Charles VII.
1423. Bedford concludes alliances with Burgundy and Brittany.—James, king of Scotland, released from his captivity in England.\*—Battle of Crevant.—The forces of Charles defeated.
1424. Charles again defeated at Vernueil.—The Duke of Gloucester marries Jacqueline of Hainault, and lays claim to her possessions.
1425. Quarrels between Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, and his nephew the Protector (Gloucester).
1426. Bedford returns to England to allay these disturbances.—The English cause in France suffers during his absence.—Warwick supersedes Beaufort in the guardianship of the king's person.
1427. The English obliged to raise the siege of Montargis.—Bedford's return revives the reputation of the English arms.
1428. The siege of Orleans commenced (Oct. 12).
1429. JOAN OF ARC introduced to Charles VII. at Chinon.—Orleans relieved.—The English defeated at Patay.—Charles VII. crowned at Rheims.
1430. Charles advances upon Paris.—The Maid of Orleans captured in an attempt to relieve Compeigne.
- 

\* Refer to Memory Exercise xviii., page 87.

A.D.

1431. Joan sent to Rouen; tried and burnt for heresy (June 14).—Henry is crowned at Notre Dame (Dec. 17.)
1435. The Duke of Bedford dies.—Decline of the English power in France.—Congress at Arras.—Burgundy deserts the English alliance and concludes a treaty with France.
1436. Paris retaken by Charles.—The war continues to be feebly conducted for some years.—The Duke of York and the Earl of Warwick successively regents in France.—The strife between Gloucester and the Bishop of Winchester renewed.

## MEMORY EXERCISE XXI.

1445. Henry's marriage with Margaret of Anjou. Anjou and Maine ceded to Charles of Anjou, minister of the French king and uncle to Margaret.—Margaret crowned queen.—She joins the faction of Cardinal Beaufort.
1447. A parliament assembled at Bury St. Edmund's.—Gloucester accused of treason.—He dies in prison (Feb. 11).—Death of Beaufort, his great rival (April).
1449. Normandy and Guienne overrun by French armies. Rouen taken by Count Dunois.—Richard, Duke of York, sent, as lieutenant of Ireland, to quell a rebellion there.—By his firmness and moderation he wins the favour of the Irish people.
1450. The Duke of Suffolk impeached by the Commons, banished, and beheaded on board ship. Jack Cade's insurrection.
1451. The English deprived of all their possessions in France, except Calais.—The Duke of York returns from his government of Ireland, and,
- 1452, takes up arms against the Duke of Somerset, who had succeeded Suffolk in the administration.—York makes his submission and retires to Wigmore.
1453. Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury slain at Chatillon, in an unsuccessful attempt to recover Guienne.—Birth of Edward, Prince of Wales.—Henry VI. becomes imbecile.—The queen and council unable to resist the Yorkist faction.—Somerset sent to the Tower, and York appointed lieutenant of the kingdom.
1454. The Duke of York opens parliament and is elected Protector.

A. D.

1455. The king recovers.—The protectorate of the Duke of York suspended.—Somerset released.—**CIVIL WAR.**—**Commencement of the WARS OF THE ROSES.**—**Battle of St. Alban's** (May 22).—The Lancastrians defeated.—The king a prisoner.—Somerset slain.—**York again Protector.**
1456. The king restored to sovereign authority.—The Yorkists and Lancastrians apparently reconciled.
1457. The coasts of the English Channel ravaged by French and Breton cruisers.
1459. **Civil War again breaks out.**—The Yorkists gain a victory at **Bloreheath** (Sept. 23).—Henry advances with large forces.—York disbands his army and retires to Ireland.
1460. **The Earl of Warwick lands in Kent** from his government of Calais with an armed force.—Enters London at the head of 40,000 men.—Henry defeated and taken prisoner at **Northampton** (July 10).—The queen and her son flee.—**THE DUKE OF YORK RETURNS TO LONDON AND LAYS FORMAL CLAIM TO THE CROWN.**—The queen raises forces in the north.—**Battle of Wakefield** (Dec. 31).—**York slain.**
1461. Many Yorkist nobles executed (Jan. 1).—**Edward, Earl of March, succeeds his father as Duke of York.**—Yorkist victory at **Mortimer's Cross** (Feb. 2).—Queen Margaret defeats the Earl of Warwick at the **Second battle of St. Alban's** (Feb. 17).—Henry re-captured.—Edward advances upon London.—The queen retires northward.—**Edward proclaimed king in London, as Edward IV.** (March 3).

## READING LESSON XVIII.

## THE KING-MAKER.

One of the most influential of the adherents of the Yorkist cause was the famous Earl of Warwick, generally known in English history as the King-maker, from the important part which he played in the political agitations of the time. He was distinguished alike for his gallantry in the field, for the hospitality of his table, and the munificence of his gifts, and for a frankness of demeanour, which won for him the affection and regard of all with whom he came into

contact. Not less than 30,000 retainers are said to have worn his badge, and to have dined daily at his expense at the manors and castles which he owned in various parts of the country.

Upon the breaking out of civil war in 1455, the Earl of Warwick joined the party of Richard, Duke of York, and was present at the battle of St. Alban's (May 22nd), the first conflict of that series of struggles, which desolated the country for a period of nearly thirty years, "almost entirely annihilated the old nobility, and cost the lives of two kings, one prince, ten dukes, two marquesses, twenty-one earls, twenty-seven lords, two viscounts, one lord-prior, one judge, one hundred and thirty-three knights, four hundred and fifty-one esquires, and eighty-four thousand nine hundred and ninety-eight private soldiers."\* At this battle of St. Alban's, King Henry was taken prisoner. The whole authority of the state thereupon fell into the hands of the Yorkists, and the Duke of York was appointed by parliament Protector of the kingdom.

Two years afterwards the king recovered his sovereign power, and the Earl of Warwick, fearing for his own safety, was obliged to retire for a time to Calais, of which place he had been appointed governor after the battle of St. Alban's. Here he was shortly afterwards joined by his father, the Earl of Salisbury, and by Edward, Earl of March, the eldest son of the Duke of York (afterwards Edward IV.).

In the midsummer of the year 1460, Warwick, accompanied by Salisbury and Edward, passed over from Calais with an armed force and landed in Kent.

---

\* "Kings of England," p. 73.

*Note.*—It is said that not more than eighty of the old barons of the kingdom survived the Wars of the Roses; and that, of the twenty-five barons who signed *Magna Charta*, there is not now a single direct representative in the House of Lords.



Here they were met by the primate and many persons of distinction, and, being joined also by multitudes in their march towards the capital, Warwick entered London at the head of an army of 40,000 men. It was now that Richard, Duke of York, formally advanced his claim to the crown of England, and was acknowledged by parliament as the rightful heir. It was however arranged that Henry should remain king for the rest of his life, and that Richard should be his successor.

The struggle for the sovereignty was continued by Margaret, the queen of Henry VI., who, collecting the adherents of the Lancastrian cause in the north of England, overcame the Yorkists at Wakefield, the Duke of York and his second son being slain in the battle. The Lancastrians then continued their march towards London, which had been left to the protection of Warwick, and succeeded in defeating the army of the earl in the second battle of St. Alban's, Feb. 19, 1461. After this defeat Warwick collected his scattered forces, and, uniting them with those of Edward, the young duke of York, obliged the army of Queen Margaret to retire northwards again. The Yorkists then entered London, and Edward, mainly through Warwick's assistance, was proclaimed king by the title of Edward IV. (March 3, 1461.)

On the 29th of the same month, the Yorkists, under the Earl of Warwick, defeated the forces of Margaret in the bloody battle of Towton, in which it was computed that more than 28,000 Lancastrians were slain. The queen and her husband retired to Scotland, while Edward returned to London, and was crowned at Westminster, June 29th, 1461.

Warwick was now the most important person in the country. He held the combined offices of warden of the Scottish marches, lord chamberlain, and lord



steward, and was besides governor of Calais and Dover. His personal character, his immense wealth, and his near connection with the house of York, made him, in some respects, more powerful than the king himself.

The marriage of Edward with the Lady Elizabeth Woodville, and his foolish partiality for the new queen's relatives, soon caused an estrangement between the king and his too powerful subject. Insurrections broke out in different parts of the country, which were said to have been fomented by Warwick, and to have had for their object the placing of George, Duke of Clarence, brother of the king, and Warwick's son-in-law, upon the throne. Upon the failure of these plans Warwick was compelled to retire to France, where, through the influence of King Louis XI., he joined himself to Queen Margaret and the exiled Lancastrians. An agreement was entered into by which it was stipulated that Margaret's son, Prince Edward, should marry Lady Ann Neville, the second daughter of Warwick, and that the earl should espouse the cause of the dethroned Henry VI.

On the 13th of September, 1470, Warwick landed at Dartmouth with a small force; but the popularity of the great earl drew such multitudes to his standard, that in a few days he was at the head of an army of 60,000 men. Edward hastened southwards to encounter him; but, being deserted by his supporters, he was obliged to take refuge in flight. Hastening to Lynn, he embarked on board a vessel he found there, and sailed for Holland. Thus, in the short space of eleven days, Warwick was left entire master of the kingdom. Reaching London, Henry was released from his captivity in the Tower, and once more proclaimed king with great solemnity. The regency, however, was entrusted to Warwick and Clarence until the majority of Prince Edward.

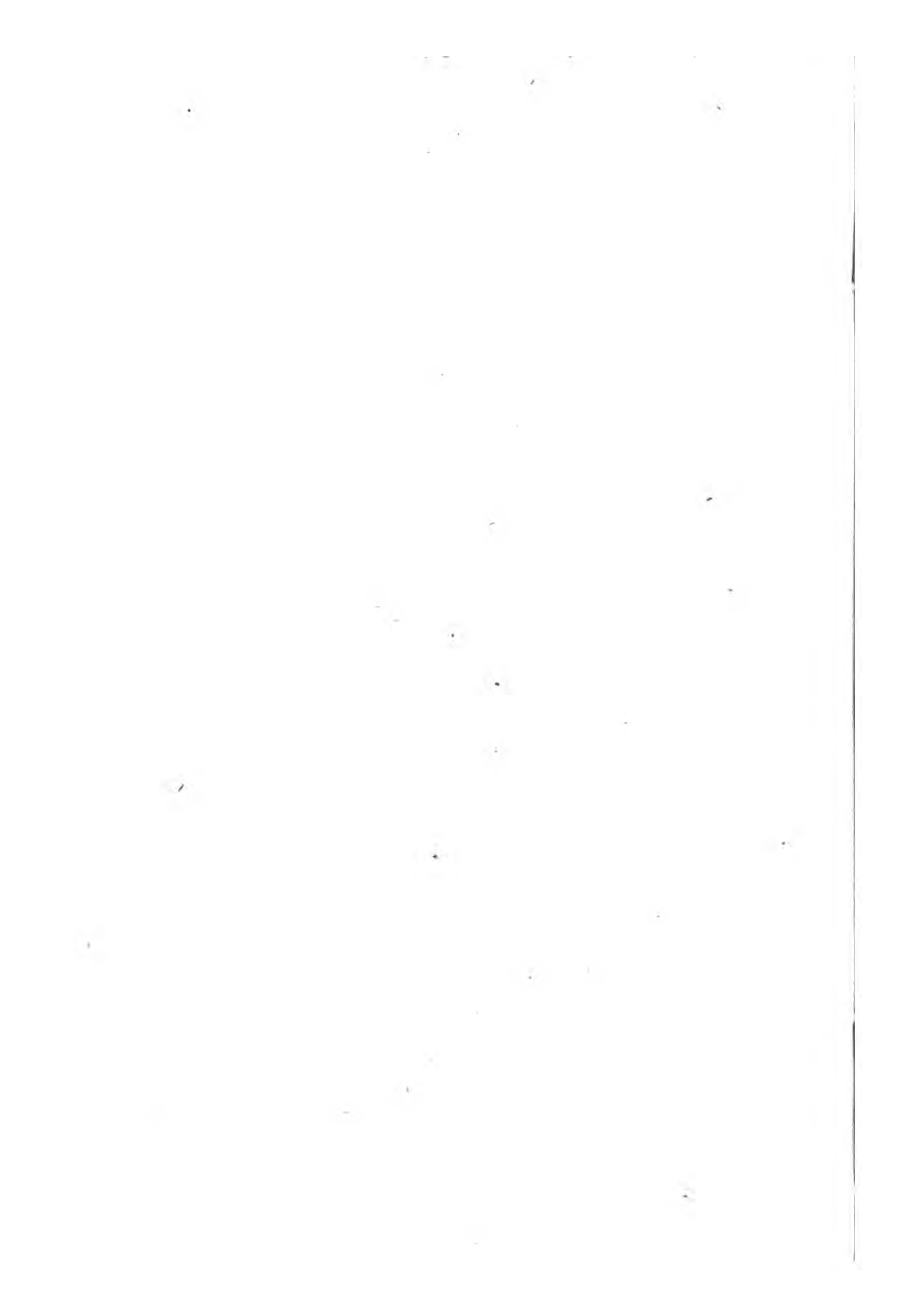
---

The success of the Lancastrian cause was but short-lived. With a small band of only 2,000 mercenaries, which had been hired for him by the Duke of Burgundy, Edward landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire, in the spring of 1471. Being joined by his brother Clarence, he advanced upon London, which readily opened its gates to him, and Henry became once more a prisoner in his own dominions. Warwick, having assembled forces at Leicester, followed in the wake of Edward towards the capital. An engagement took place at Barnet (April 14th), in which the Lancastrians were routed, and Warwick and his brother slain. Thus perished one who was "the greatest as well as the last of those mighty barons who formerly overawed the crown, and rendered the people incapable of any regular system of government."\*

---

\* Hume.





VII.

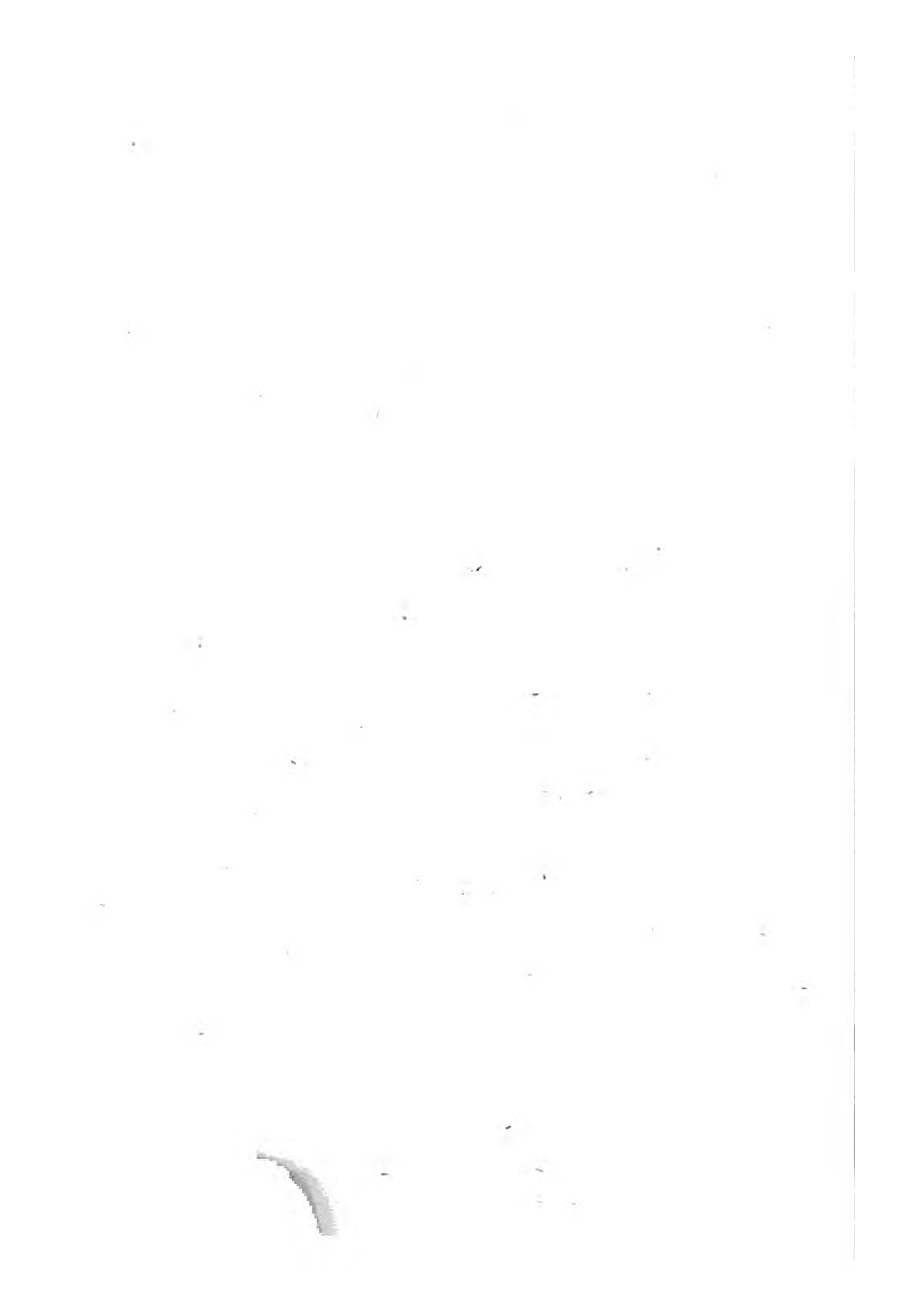
The Plantagenets.

*(Continued.)*

---

THE HOUSE OF YORK.

A.D. 1461-1485.





## VII. THE PLANTAGENETS.

(Continued.)

### THE HOUSE OF YORK.

---

#### § I. *Edward IV.*

*Born A.D. 1441 ; Reigned 22 years (1461-1483).*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXII.

A. D.

1461. **Battle of Towton** (Mar. 29).—Henry and Queen Margaret flee to Scotland.—**Edward IV. crowned at Westminster** (June 29).
1462. Margaret lands in the north from France.—Retires again to the Continent.
1464. Margaret again invades England ; is defeated in two engagements at **Hedgeley Moor** (April 25), and **Hexham** (May 15).—Edward marries Elizabeth Woodville, widow of Sir John Grey.
1465. Coronation of Queen Elizabeth (May 26).
1469. The Duke of Clarence, brother of Edward IV., marries Isabel, the daughter of Warwick. Insurrection in Yorkshire.—Defeat of the royal forces at Edgecote, near Banbury.—Earl Rivers and Sir John Woodville taken and executed.
1470. **Insurrection in Lincolnshire**.—Warwick and Clarence escape to Calais and are proclaimed traitors.—**A treaty formed between Warwick and Queen Margaret**.—Warwick lands at Dartmouth (Sept. 13).—Edward IV. driven from the kingdom, and **Henry VI. restored to the throne** (Oct. 6).
1471. Edward IV. lands at Ravenspur. Defeat of Warwick and the Lancastrians at **Barnet** (April 14).—Henry VI. again a captive.—Queen Margaret and her son land at Weymouth ; they are defeated and taken prisoners at **Tewkesbury** (May 4).—**The young Prince Edward murdered**.—**Death of Henry VI. in the Tower** (May 22).

A.D.

1475. Edward invades France (June 20).—**The treaty of Pecquigny**, near Amiens, concluded (Aug. 22).—Queen Margaret released from captivity. (She lived afterwards in retirement, and died in 1482).
1478. The Duke of Clarence accused of witchcraft, tried, condemned, and executed (Jan. 16).
1483. Death of Edward IV. (April 9).

---

### § 2. *Edward V.*

*Born* A.D. 1471 ; *Reigned* 2 months, 15 days (*April 9th to June 25th*, 1483).

### *Richard III.*

*Born* A.D. 1452 ; *Reigned* 2 years (1483-1485).

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXIII.

A.D.

1483. The Duke of Gloucester causes the arrest and execution of Lord Rivers, the maternal uncle of the young King Edward V.—The queen takes sanctuary at Westminster with her second son.—**Gloucester appointed Protector** (May 22).—Lord Hastings arrested and beheaded (June 13).—The young Duke of York removed from his mother's protection.—**Gloucester claims the crown** (June 25).—**The young king and his brother murdered in the Tower.**—**Richard crowned king** (July 6).—Buckingham heads an insurrection in favour of the Earl of Richmond.—He is captured and beheaded.
1484. Richard's title confirmed by act of parliament (Jan. 23). Death of Richard's infant son.—John de la Pole, Earl of Lincoln, declared heir to the crown.
1485. Death of Queen Anne.—Richard projects a marriage with his niece Elizabeth, the daughter of Edward IV., and heiress of the house of York.—Henry Richmond sails from Harfleur (Aug. 1), lands at Milford Haven (Aug. 7).—**Battle of Bosworth** (Aug. 22).—Richard defeated and slain.—**Richmond proclaimed king as Henry VII.**

READING LESSON XIX.

ENGLAND UNDER THE PLANTAGENETS.

The death of Richard III. on the field of Bosworth brought to a close the long line of Plantagenet sovereigns, whose rule in England had extended through more than three centuries, viz., from the accession of Henry Plantagenet in 1135, till that of Henry Tudor in 1485. During this period, which forms one of the most important and interesting eras in our history, all those institutions were established by which the liberties of the English nation were secured. "From this era," says Mr. Hallam, "a new soul was infused into the people of England. Her liberties, at the best long in abeyance, became a tangible possession: and those indefinite aspirations for the laws of Edward the Confessor were changed into a steady regard for the Great Charter."\*

The great social feature of the period was the abolition of serfdom. It is not easy to trace the different steps by which villeinage in England was gradually extinguished under the Plantagenets; but, on the whole, it is tolerably certain that upon the accession of the Tudor dynasty it had almost, if not entirely, disappeared. This result was accomplished in a variety of ways. Villeins bound to personal service would escape to distant parts of the country and enter into free and voluntary service under a new master. Others would hide themselves in towns, where a residence of twelvemonths made them free by law. Many too were manumitted through the influence of the Church, which uniformly sympathised with this degraded class. The movement was likewise aided by the civil war, which, by weakening the

---

\* Middle Ages, vol. 2, p. 329.

power of the ruling race, gave opportunity to the serfs to effect their freedom.

During this period the royal prerogative was defined and limited by law. These limitations of the king's authority have already been pointed out in our account of "England under Edward III.," as well as in the lesson upon "Magna Charta," and need not therefore be repeated here. The same too may be said of what, from a constitutional point of view, formed the chief glory of the Plantagenet era, viz., the establishment of the English parliament upon its present foundation—this subject having been under review in the short essay upon Simon de Montfort.

The period of the Plantagenets is remarkable, not only for the gradual development of national and individual freedom in our land, but also for the consequent material increase in the wealth and intelligence of its people. The Wars of the Roses may have done much to check the flow of national prosperity; but their evil effects were mainly felt by the baronial class—the great bulk of the nation really increasing in wealth in spite of the distractions of civil strife. Commerce and manufactures had become so extended and improved, that, at the close of the fifteenth century, the merchants of the kingdom—by that time a most important class—rivalled in wealth and hospitality the nobility themselves, and, in many instances, were admitted into their ranks. Trade was carried on principally at fairs, which were held annually at all the chief towns in the kingdom, and were attended by merchants from all parts of England, and even from the Continent.

The chief exports of the time were cloth, wool, sheepskins, and leather. The manufacture of cloth had been so much improved through the settlement of colonies of Flemings in England, that English woollen stuffs began to be in great demand. The manufacture



of iron flourished in the oak forests of Sussex and other counties in the south of England. The principal articles of import were wines, silks, spices, and the precious metals.

To this period belongs the invention of the art of printing, which was first introduced into England by Caxton, in the reign of Edward IV. (A.D. 1474). The statutes of Richard III. were the first that were enacted in the English tongue; and they were also the first laws of the land which were ever *printed*. The commercial acts of the period were based generally upon the principle of protection; but there was an enactment of Richard's, which was notably an exception to this rule—books were to come into the land as freely as the light of heaven.

Considerable progress was made during this period in architecture and the arts. The old baronial castle of the Norman period began now to give way to the more modern manor-house, built of wood and decorated with carving and painting; and it was now that the style of church architecture, termed Gothic, attained its highest state of perfection: the dwellings of the poorer classes were, however, mere hovels of clay, and utterly destitute of convenience or comfort.

There was no standing army in England at this period. In any emergency forces were raised by the sovereign by letters, under his seal, commanding the attendance of certain persons with armed men according to their degree; but for a foreign expedition an army could only be collected when the king was in the possession of money to pay for the services of mercenaries.

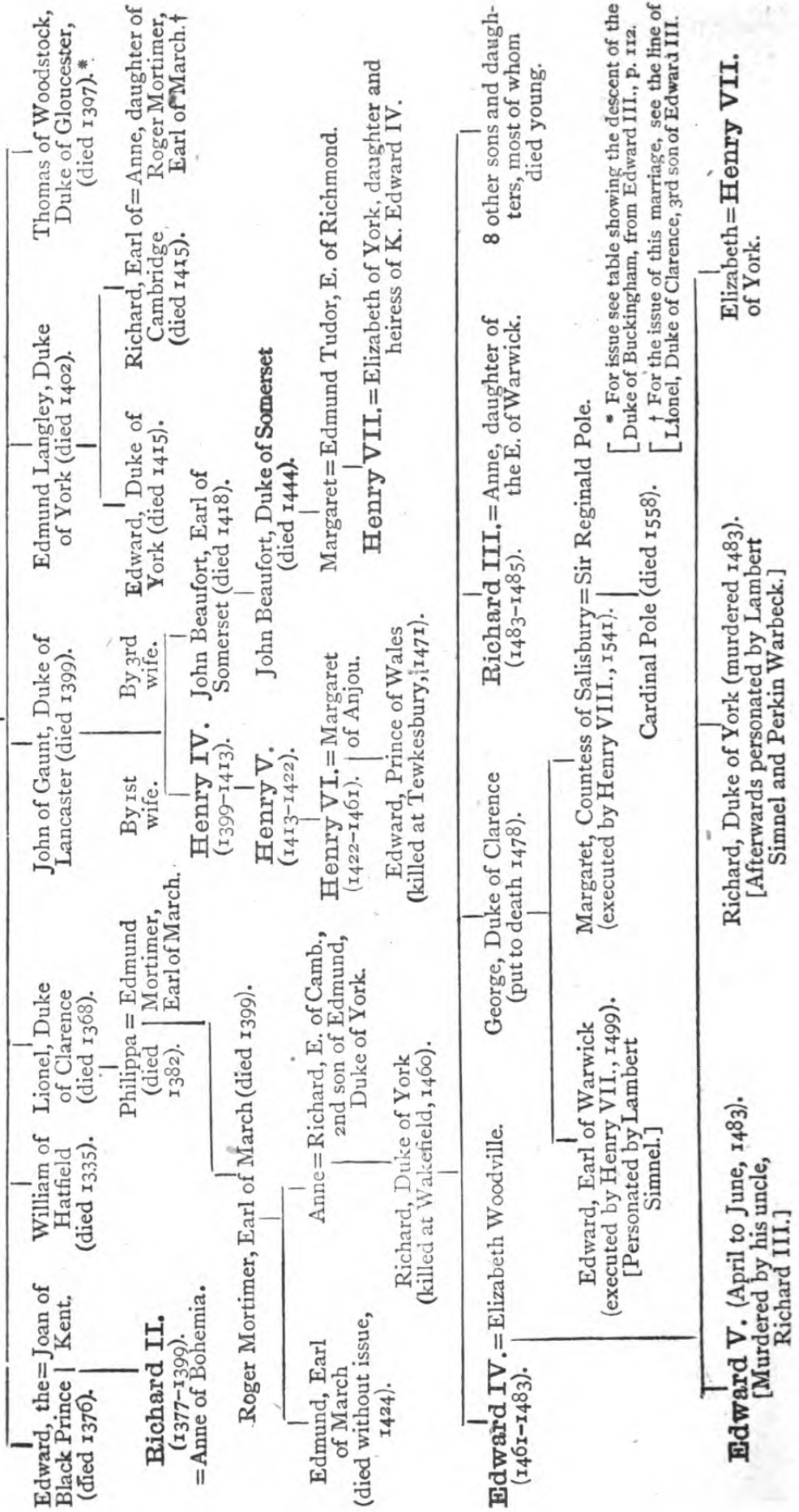
The total population of England at the end of the reign of the Plantagenets amounted to probably not more than three millions.



## GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF PLANTAGENET.

### No. II.—ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ROSES. EDWARD III. TO RICHARD III. (A.D. 1327-1485).

Edward III. (1327-1377.) = Philippa of Hainault.

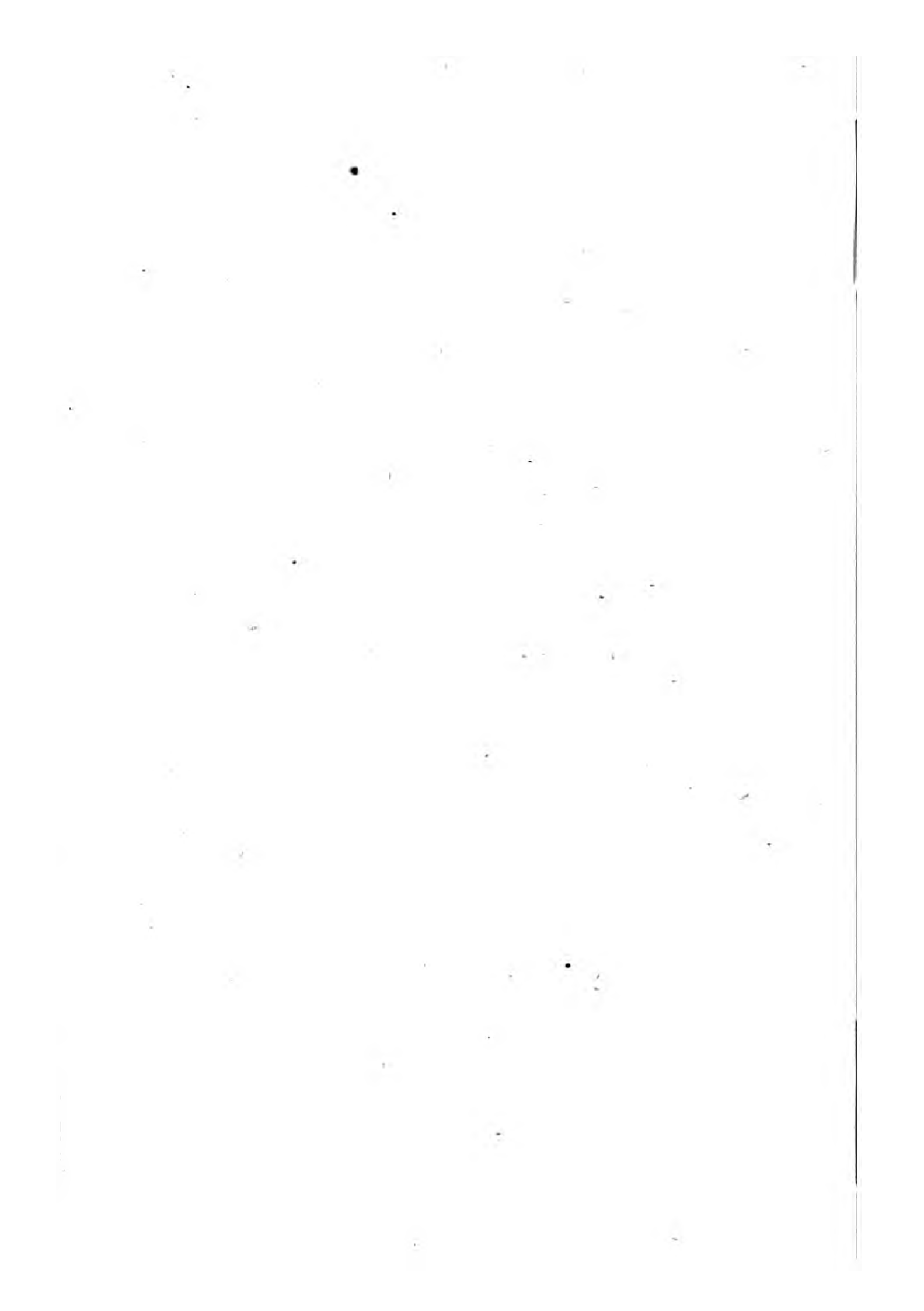


\* For issue see table showing the descent of the Duke of Buckingham, from Edward III., p. 112.

† For the issue of this marriage, see the line of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, 3rd son of Edward III.

**viii.**

**The Tudor Period.**



## VIII. THE TUDOR PERIOD.

### § I. *Henry VII.*

*Born* A.D. 1456 ; *Reigned* 24 years (1485-1509).

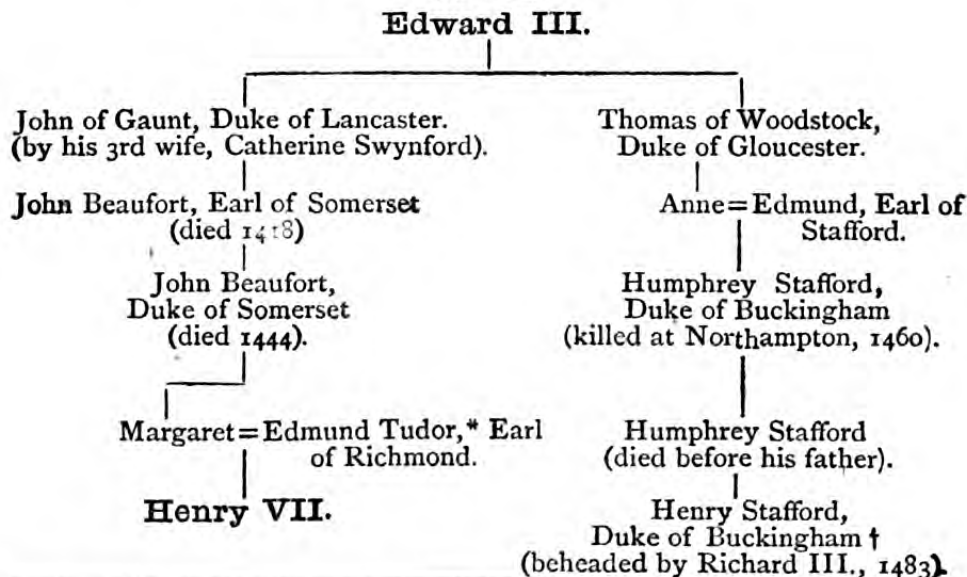
#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXIV.

- A.D.
1485. Henry enters London (Aug. 27).—The young Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence, is confined in the Tower.—Henry crowned at Westminster (Oct. 30).
1486. **The king's marriage with Elizabeth of York** (Jan. 18).—**Lovel's insurrection.**—The rebels dispersed.—**Lambert Simnel** personates the Earl of Warwick.
1487. Simnel proclaimed in Dublin as Edward VI. (May 2).—**Battle of Stoke**, near Newark (June 16).—**Lincoln slain.**—**Simnel taken prisoner.**—Coronation of Queen Elizabeth (Nov. 25).
1488. Brittany invaded by Charles VIII.—Henry in league with the Emperor Maximilian.
1489. An English army sent to resist the French.—The expedition is unsuccessful.
1491. Brittany annexed to France by the marriage of the Duchess Anne to Charles VIII.—Henry levies a *benevolence* on pretence of a war with France.—Boulogne invested by an English army.
1492. **Treaty of Estaples.**—Henry withdraws his forces upon receiving a bribe from the French king.—**Perkin Warbeck lands at Cork**, and declares himself the Duke of York, son of Edward IV.—He is invited to Paris and received with distinction, but is obliged to retire into Flanders upon the conclusion of the treaty of Estaples.—Columbus discovers America.
1493. Warbeck assisted by the Duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV.
1495. Conspiracy discovered in England in favour of the impostor.—Execution of Sir William Stanley and others.—Warbeck attempts a landing at Deal, but is repulsed and returns to Flanders.
1496. **A commercial treaty concluded between England and the Flemish provinces.**—Warbeck, compelled to leave Flanders, visits Scotland, and is well received by James IV.—Invasion of the Scots repelled.
1497. **Insurrection of the Cornish men.**—The insurgents are

A.D.

- defeated at Blackheath.—Warbeck, obliged to leave Scotland, goes for a time to Ireland.—He next lands in Cornwall (Sept.), and assumes the title of Richard IV. His forces are dispersed, and he himself captured and imprisoned in the Tower.
- Sebastian Cabot discovers Newfoundland.
1498. Warbeck persuades the Earl of Warwick to join him in an attempt to escape from the Tower.
1499. Warbeck executed at Tyburn, and Warwick upon Tower Hill.
1501. Henry's eldest son (Prince Arthur) married to Catherine of Aragon (Nov. 6th).
1502. Death of Prince Arthur (April 2nd).—Catherine betrothed to the king's second son, Henry.—Margaret, Henry's eldest daughter, married to James IV. of Scotland.
1503. Death of the Queen Elizabeth.
1504. Dudley chosen speaker of the House of Commons.—Exactions of the king.
1506. The Archduke Philip driven by a tempest into Weymouth, and detained a prisoner by Henry.
1509. Henry dies at Richmond (April 25).

TABLE SHOWING THE DESCENT OF HENRY VII.  
AND OF THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM  
FROM EDWARD III.



\* Son of Owen Tudor, who married Catherine of France, the widow of Henry V.

† The son of this Duke was beheaded by Henry VIII., A.D. 1521.



## READING LESSON XX.

## LAMBERT SIMNEL.

Henry VII., by his marriage with Elizabeth, the daughter of Edward IV., united the two rival houses of York and Lancaster, and thus brought to a close the civil wars which had so long desolated the land. The harshness, however, with which the new king treated the adherents of the Yorkist party, and the favours which he heaped upon the Lancastrians, still kept alive the spirit of faction, and caused the early part of his reign to be much troubled by conspiracies and insurrections. One of the earliest of these was connected with what is commonly known as Simnel's imposture.

There was living at Oxford at this time a priest, named Richard Simon, who had for a pupil a baker's son named Lambert Simnel, a youth of about fifteen years of age, handsome in person, and possessed of intelligence beyond his years. Taking advantage of a report which had been noised abroad, that Richard, Duke of York, the second son of Edward IV., had escaped when his brother was murdered in the Tower, Simon first instructed his pupil to assume the name of that prince, whose memory was still so fondly cherished by the people at large. But hearing soon afterwards a rumour of the escape from the Tower of the young Earl of Warwick, whom Henry, upon his accession, had imprisoned, Simon changed his tactics, and made his pupil pass over into Ireland, where the cause of the house of York had always been most popular, and there to personate that unfortunate prince.\* Simnel was well received by the Earl of Kildare, the deputy of the island, lodged in regal

---

\* The House of York had Irish blood in its veins, through Elizabeth de Burgh, heiress of Ulster, the wife of Lionel of Antwerp, Duke of Clarence, third son of Edward III.

state in the castle of Dublin, and, in a few days, proclaimed king in Ireland under the title of Edward VI.

The cause of the pretender had in the meanwhile been taken up by John de la Pole, Earl of Lincoln, a nobleman of great courage and capacity, and who was himself of royal lineage, being the son of Elizabeth, the eldest sister of Edward IV. Assistance was also rendered by Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy, another sister of Edward IV., who hired 2,000 mercenary soldiers, and sent them to the support of Simnel in Ireland, under the command of one Martin Schwartz.

An invasion of England was resolved upon. With an army composed of his Irish adherents and the German mercenaries under Schwartz, Simnel landed at Foudray, in Lancashire, and advanced as far as Stoke, near Newark, in Nottinghamshire. Here an obstinate battle with the king's forces took place (June 16, 1487), in which Lincoln and Schwartz were slain, and Simnel and his tutor taken prisoners. Simon, being a priest, was not tried by law, but was kept in close custody for the remainder of his life; Simnel, being considered beneath the king's resentment, was pardoned and made a scullion in the royal kitchen, though he was afterwards advanced to the rank of falconer.

“That such a palpable imposture should for a moment have been countenanced seems too absurd for belief; yet such was the strange infatuation attending it, notwithstanding the true Earl of Warwick was brought from his prison in the Tower, and publicly shown in procession through the streets and at St. Paul's, there were still many dupes, whom the intriguing and reckless York faction enlisted in their ranks, and persuaded that, in spite of ocular demonstration to the contrary, the baker's son was the veritable prince.”\*

---

\* “Kings of England,” p. 83.

§ 2. *Henry VIII.*

*Born* A.D. 1491; *Reigned* 38 years (1509-1547).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XXV.

A.D.

- 1509.** Accession of **Henry VIII.**—The young king marries Catherine (June 7).—Coronation of the king and queen (June 16).—The late king's ministers, Empson and Dudley, arrested.
- 1510.** A bill of attainder passed against Empson and Dudley; they are executed on Tower Hill (Aug.).
- 1511.** Henry joins the league of **Cambray**, and declares war with **France**.
- 1512.** The Marquis of Dorset sent with an English force to conquer **Guienne**.—Failure of the expedition.—Naval engagement off **Brest**.—The **Scots** form an alliance with **France**.
- 1513.** Henry lands at **Calais** (June 30), and is joined by the Emperor **Maximilian I.**—**Battle of Spurs** (Guinegate), Aug. 16.—Capture of **Terouenne** and **Tournay**.—**Wolsey** invested with the bishopric of **Tournay**.—**James IV.** invades **England** during the absence of Henry in **France**.—**Battle of Flodden** (Sept. 9), **James IV.** slain.—Henry returns to **England** (Oct. 21).
- 1514.** The emperor and the King of **Spain** in league with **Louis**.—Peace concluded.—**Louis XII.** marries Henry's sister **Mary** (Nov. 5).
- 1515.** Death of **Louis XII.** of **France** (Jan. 1).—**Wolsey** created cardinal, and made chancellor and legate.
- 1518.** Henry forms a league with **Francis I.**—**Tournay** ceded to **France**.
- 1519.** Death of **Maximilian I.**—The kings of **France**, **Spain**, and **England** candidates for the vacant throne of **Germany**.—**Charles V.** elected.—**Charles** and **Francis** rivals for the friendship of **Henry**.—Visit of the emperor to **Henry** at **Hythe**.
- 1520.** Henry goes to **France**.—Meeting between the English and French monarchs at **Guisnes**.—**The Field of the Cloth of Gold**.—**Luther** excommunicated by the Pope.
- 1521.** **The Duke of Buckingham** executed on a charge of high treason.—Hostilities between the emperor and the king of **France** recommence.—Henry mediates through **Wolsey**.—**Wolsey** concludes an alliance with **Charles V.**—Henry writes against **Luther**, and receives from the Pope the title of *Defender of the Faith*.

A.D.

1522. The emperor again visits England.—Wolsey receives a promise of the papacy.—Henry raises money for the French war by means of a *Benevolence*.
1523. Death of Pope Adrian VI.—Election of Clement VII.—Wolsey disappointed.—Francis defeated and taken prisoner at Pavia.
1525. The arbitrary exactions of Henry occasion disturbances in England.—A league with France completed through the influence of Wolsey.
1526. Francis recovers his liberty.
1527. Rome captured by the imperialists.—The Pope a prisoner in the emperor's hands.

---

### READING LESSON XXI.

#### THOMAS WOLSEY.

Thomas Wolsey was born at Ipswich, in 1471. According to certain of his biographers, he was the son of a butcher and grazier; but, be this as it may, there is no doubt that he received a liberal education,—being sent at an early age to Oxford, where he so distinguished himself as to gain the title of the “Boy Bachelor.” On leaving Oxford, Wolsey entered the family of the Marquis of Dorset, as tutor to that nobleman's children; and, in the year 1500, he was presented by his patron to the rectory of Lymington, in Somersetshire. Shortly afterwards, upon the recommendation of Sir John Naport, he was appointed chaplain to King Henry VII.

In this situation, Wolsey attracted the favourable notice of his sovereign, who entrusted to him a secret negotiation in connection with his projected marriage with Margaret of Savoy, the daughter of the Emperor Maximilian I. As a reward for the diligence and ability he displayed in the conduct of this delicate affair, he was appointed Dean of Lincoln and almoner to the king (1508).



On the accession of Henry VIII., Wolsey so fascinated the youthful monarch by his engaging manners, genial conversation, and politic adaptation of his counsels to the royal will and pleasure, that his influence at court became paramount, and, for a period of nearly twenty-one years, he may justly be regarded as having been almost the equal of his sovereign, and the virtual ruler of the country.

From being, at first, merely the companion of the young king's pleasures, Wolsey was soon advanced to be a member of his council. Dignities and honours were conferred upon him in rapid succession; and within the short space of four years (1511—1515), he was raised to the offices of Canon of Windsor, Prebendary of York, and Lord Treasurer, Dean of York, Bishop of Tournay, Bishop of Lincoln, Archbishop of York, and Lord High Chancellor of the kingdom. In 1516 he was created a Cardinal by the Pope; and, in 1517, he was invested with legatine powers.

The revenues derived from his numerous offices were immense; and they were further enlarged by subsidies from foreign potentates, eager to conciliate his favour. His pride and ostentation were excessive, and, in his ordinary habits of life, he affected a sumptuous magnificence, and a state of almost regal splendour. His train consisted of upwards of eight hundred servants, many of whom were knights and gentlemen. Even the nobility sought admission for their sons into his household, as a place of education; and, in order to procure the favour of the cardinal, permitted them to bear offices, as his servants.

But, besides dazzling the eyes of the populace by the splendour of his furniture and equipages and the magnificence of his apparel and liveries, Wolsey also secured the approbation of the wise by his munificent encouragement of literature and the arts; while his



liberality to the poor added to his popularity among the lower orders. Christ Church College at Oxford, with other important educational foundations, still bear testimony to his fostering care for learning. As Chancellor of England, his decisions were distinguished as much for their strict impartiality, as for the penetration of judgment, and extensive knowledge of the principles of law which they displayed.

It has been already noticed, that from the year 1515, in which he became Archbishop of York and Chancellor of the kingdom, until his fall in 1529, Wolsey was wholly responsible for the government of the country. The history of the cardinal during this period is, in point of fact, nothing less than the history of England itself; and it must be confessed that, under his able administration, the nation was both prosperous at home and respected abroad.

Wolsey's capacity for diplomacy and intrigue found a wide field in the foreign politics of the time; and his ability in this respect was more fully manifested after the death of the Emperor Maximilian I. (1519). Two candidates for the vacant imperial throne appeared in the persons of Charles I., of Spain, and Francis I., of France; and Henry VIII. was also encouraged at one time to advance his pretensions. He was too late, however, to secure any of the votes of the electoral princes of Germany, which, in the end, were given unanimously in favour of the Spanish prince, who became emperor under the title of Charles V.

The French king, disgusted with his ill success, proceeded to cultivate the friendship of Henry VIII., whose position enabled him to hold the balance between the two great continental sovereigns. With the aid of Wolsey, an interview was arranged between Henry and Francis. The meeting took

place in 1520, at a spot between the towns of Guisnes and Ardres, since known as the "Field of the Cloth of Gold," from the magnificence and profuse expenditure there displayed by the assembled nobility of the two countries. The meeting lasted over three weeks, and the monarchs then separated with mutual expressions of esteem; but there is little doubt, that at the very time that Henry and Wolsey were arranging a treaty with Francis, and the two kings were exchanging courtesies, the cardinal, with the full sanction of his royal master, was in secret correspondence with Charles V.

The emperor had visited Henry at Hythe, when the latter was on his way to meet Francis, and had there gained Wolsey to his interests by holding out to him the hope of attaining the papacy. As soon as the interview with the French king was over, Henry went to Gravelines to visit the emperor, who took advantage of the opportunity to secure the cardinal still further in his interests by bestowing upon him the revenues of the sees of Badajoz and Valencia, and by renewing the promise of his assistance in obtaining the papal chair.

Hostilities broke out, in 1521, between the emperor and the French king. Both, however, made professions of the strongest desire for peace; and both appealed to Henry to act as umpire in their quarrel. Wolsey was appointed mediator, and a conference was held at Calais; but the demands of the emperor proving too unreasonable for the acceptance of the French king, the congress broke up, and the cardinal, proceeding to Bruges, concluded there, in the name of his master, a treaty of alliance with Charles V. and the Pope against France.

The alliance with the emperor continued for some time, but with little advantage to Henry; and Wolsey, having been twice disappointed in his ambitious hope

of succeeding to the papacy, at length persuaded Henry to desert the cause of Charles, and, in 1525, to conclude a treaty of alliance with the French king. In order to strengthen this bond of union with France, Wolsey was sent as ambassador, in 1527, to negotiate a marriage between Henry's daughter, the Princess Mary, and the Duke of Orleans. During the progress of these negotiations, it appears that doubts were expressed by the French representative as to the legitimacy of the princess. Doubts as to the lawfulness of his marriage with Catherine of Aragon had, for some time indeed, troubled the mind of Henry himself; and, these scruples of conscience being strengthened both by motives of public interest and private passion, the king at length resolved upon making application to the Pope for a divorce.

Wolsey, who wished to bring about a union between Henry and a French princess, was at first favourable to the projected divorce; but, when he discovered that the king's affections were already engaged in another direction, he used his utmost endeavours, though without effect, to dissuade his sovereign from prosecuting the suit. The Pope Clement VII., being placed in an extremely difficult position with reference to the parties concerned, pursued a temporizing policy, and delayed giving his decision. To have granted Henry's request would have involved him in a quarrel with Charles V., the nephew of Queen Catherine; and to have refused it would have alienated the affections of the English monarch at the most critical period in the history of the Roman Church, and have given offence to Francis, at that time in alliance with England. To gain time, therefore, he issued a commission to Cardinals Wolsey and Campeggio to try the cause.

The legatine court was opened, May 31st, 1529, and continued its sittings till July 23rd, Henry, in

the meanwhile, daily expecting a sentence to be pronounced in his favour. To his great surprise, however, Campeggio suddenly prorogued the court till the 1st of October; and, a few days afterwards, the king and queen were cited by the Pope to appear, either in person or by proxy, at Rome.

The anger and disappointment of the king were vented upon Wolsey, whose enemies accused him of having purposely delayed the divorce. The favourite's fall was now as rapid and complete as had been his rise. He was deprived of the Great Seal, obliged to surrender his palace at York Place, and to retire from court to his country house at Esher, where he remained for some time.

In the following year (1530), some symptoms of relenting showed themselves in the mind of the king, and it is probable that, had it not been for the violent animosity of the jealous nobles, Henry's forgiving disposition would have favoured Wolsey's recall to power. This prospect, as it proved, was a delusive one. Through the influence of his enemies the cardinal was ordered to retire to his diocese of York. Here he was arrested on a charge of high treason by the Earl of Northumberland, who had received instructions to convey his prisoner to London. Being attacked with dysentery while on this journey, the unhappy cardinal was only able, with difficulty, to reach Leicester Abbey, where he died, November 29th, 1530.

The character of Wolsey has been thus summed up by an eminent historian: "Haughty beyond comparison, negligent of the duties and decorum of his station, profuse as well as rapacious, obnoxious alike to his own order and to the laity, his fall had long been secretly desired by the nation and contrived by his adversaries. His generosity and magnificence seem rather to have dazzled succeeding ages than



his own. But in fact, his best apology is the disposition of his master. The latter years of Henry's reign were far more tyrannical than those during which he listened to the counsels of Wolsey; and though this was principally owing to the peculiar circumstances of the latter period, it is but equitable to allow some praise to a minister for the mischief which he may be presumed to have averted."\*

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXVI.

A.D.

1527. Henry begins to entertain scruples as to the legality of his marriage with Catherine.—He applies to Clement VII. for a divorce.—Wolsey encourages the king's scruples, with the view of bringing about a marriage with a French princess.—He conducts negotiations with France to this end.
1528. A commission issued by the Pope to Wolsey and Campeggio to try the validity of the marriage.
1529. The king and queen cited to appear before the legatine court in London (May 31).—Sentence delayed.—Henry and Catherine cited to appear at Rome.—Wolsey deprived of the Great Seal (Oct. 18), and ordered to retire from his palace in York Place.—Wolsey declared by Parliament liable to the penalty of *præmunire* (Nov.)—He is allowed to retire to his diocese of York.—General peace established by the Treaty of Cambray (Aug. 5).
1530. Wolsey arrested by the Earl of Northumberland on a charge of high treason.—Death of Wolsey at Leicester Abbey (Nov. 25), while on his way to London.
1531. The payment to the Pope of *annates*, or first fruits, abolished.—The clergy fined for having submitted to legatine authority.—Henry, by Cromwell's advice, declares himself Supreme Head of the Church of England.
1532. Sir Thomas More resigns the chancellorship.—Death of Warham, Archbishop of Canterbury.—Cranmer nominated to the primacy.
1533. Henry privately marries Anne Boleyn (Jan. 25).—Cranmer appointed Archbishop of Canterbury by Papal

\* Hallam's "Constitutional History," p. 31.



A. D.

- bull (Feb.).—He holds a court at Dunstable, and there pronounces the sentence annulling Henry's marriage with Catherine (May 23).—**Birth of the Princess Elizabeth** (Sept. 7).—The king excommunicated by the Pope.
- 1534.** The epoch of separation of the **English Church** from that of **Rome**.—Parliament confirms the sentence of Cranmer.—Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, and Sir Thomas More, committed to the Tower.
- 1535.** Fisher, More, and others executed for denying the king's supremacy.—Cromwell appointed Vicar-general.
- 1536.** Queen Catherine dies at Kimbolton, in Huntingdonshire.—The lesser monasteries suppressed by Act of Parliament, and their revenues granted to the king.—The union between **England and Wales** completed.—Anne Boleyn arrested for treason, and sent to the Tower (May 2).—Anne Boleyn executed (May 17).—Henry marries the **Lady Jane Seymour** (May 20).—The Bible in English first published by authority.
- 1537.** The **Pilgrimage of Grace**.—Birth of Prince Edward (Oct 12).—Death of the queen (Oct. 24).—Suppression of the larger monasteries.—Six new bishoprics created.—The greater part of the confiscated revenues, however, are bestowed upon Henry's favourites.
- 1538.** The Pope pronounces sentence of deposition against Henry.
- 1539.** The **Statute of the Six Articles** passed.
- 1540.** Marriage of the king with **Anne of Cleves** (Jan. 6).—Cromwell created **Earl of Essex**.—His unpopularity.—Accused of treason.—Committed to the Tower, and executed (July 28).—Henry divorced from Anne (July 9).—Henry marries **Catherine Howard**.—She is publicly acknowledged queen (Aug. 8).
- 1541.** Execution of the aged Countess of Salisbury, the mother of Cardinal Pole.
- 1542.** Queen Catherine executed (Feb. 12), with Lady Rochfort, her accomplice.—War with Scotland.—The Scots defeated near Solway (Nov. 25).—Death of **James V. of Scotland** (Dec. 14).
- 1543.** Scheme for uniting Scotland to England by the marriage of Henry's son Edward to the young queen Mary.—Henry allies himself with the emperor, and commences war with **France**.—Henry's marriage with **Catherine Parr** (July 12).
- 1544.** The war with Scotland continues.—Henry invades France, and lays siege to Boulogne and Montreuil.—

A. D.

Henry retires to England after the capture of Boulogne.—The war continues for two years.—An Act of Parliament restores to the princesses, Mary and Elizabeth, their right of succession.

1545. A French fleet appears off the Isle of Wight.

1546. Peace concluded with France and Scotland.—Parts of the liturgy ordered to be read in English.

1547. The Duke of Norfolk and his son, the Earl of Surrey, arrested on a charge of treason.—Surrey is beheaded (Jan. 19).—Death of the king (Jan. 28).

---

## READING LESSON XXII.

### THOMAS CROMWELL.

Cromwell, the *malleus monachorum*, or “hammer of the monks,” as he has been aptly termed, was the son of an iron-founder at Putney. His life was a very chequered one. Leaving home at an early age, he spent several years in wandering from one country to another, meeting with many strange adventures. Now we find him fulfilling the duties of a factory clerk at Antwerp; next he is engaged as a common soldier in the sack of Rome by the imperialists under the Duke of Bourbon, in 1527; and again he is discovered as a clerk in Venice. Returning at length to England, he practised for a time as a lawyer, and succeeded in attracting the favourable notice of Cardinal Wolsey, who, with that readiness to assist and encourage men of talent which he at all times manifested, received him into his service and made him his secretary.

Upon the disgrace of Wolsey soon afterwards, Cromwell defended his master in the House of Commons with such zeal, courage, and ability, as acquired him great honour, and laid the foundation of that favour which was eventually shown to him by king Henry. After the death of Wolsey, Cromwell entered the service of the king; and now it was that he be-

came so intimately connected with that movement which resulted in the severance of the English Church from that of Rome, and which is generally known as the Reformation of the Church of England.

By the advice of Cromwell, and with the assent of Parliament, Henry assumed the title of Supreme Head of the Church and Clergy of England. By an Act of the same Parliament all appeals to Rome were henceforth forbidden, as well as the payment to the Pope of *annates* or first fruits, Peter's pence, and other exactions; and by the year 1534 the separation between the two Churches may be regarded as complete.

During these years of momentous change, Thomas Cromwell had been successively promoted to the offices of master of the jewels, chancellor of the exchequer, and secretary of state; till at length, as the king's vicegerent—an office which had been called into being by the assumption of the supremacy—he wielded the highest authority in ecclesiastical affairs. It has been truly observed that “Cromwell, after the fall of his master Wolsey, gained in the affections of Henry VIII. till he acquired as great an ascendancy, and nearly as much power, as the cardinal had possessed during the preceding part of the reign; and, whatever office he happened to hold, he was looked up to as the mover of the entire machine of state.”

Acting as vicar-general, or vicegerent, Cromwell, in 1535, appointed a commission of inquiry into the condition of monastic establishments in England. The results of this *visitation* were laid before the House of Commons in a report, commonly known as the *Black Book*; and an Act was passed in 1536 for the suppression of all monasteries possessing an income of less than £200 a year. By this Act 376 monasteries were suppressed, and their revenues, amounting to £32,000 per annum, were granted to the king. The destruction of the minor conventual

establishments was soon followed by the abolition of the larger ones and the sequestration of their funds.

Immediately after the death of Henry's third wife, the Lady Jane Seymour (Oct. 24, 1537), Cromwell, who was anxious to strengthen the Protestant cause in England, proposed to the king a matrimonial alliance with Anne of Cleves, whose father, the Duke of Cleves, had great interest among the Lutherans, and whose sister was married to the Elector of Saxony, at that time head of the Protestant league on the Continent. Negotiations were entered into, and Anne was invited to England. The king met her at Greenwich, but was so much disappointed with her personal appearance, that it was with difficulty he could be persuaded into completing the marriage agreement. The marriage, however, took place (Jan. 6, 1540), but Henry never forgave Cromwell his part in bringing it about. For a time the king appeared to treat him with the same favour as before, and on April 17th, 1540, created him Earl of Essex; but his anger against him was ready to burst out on the first opportunity.

Other causes too were hastening the downfall of Cromwell. He was hated by the nobility for the same reason that Wolsey was hated, viz., that, being a man of such mean extraction, he should have risen over their heads and monopolized so many offices under the crown. He was unpopular with the lower orders, being regarded by them as the author of the destruction of the monastic establishments, which they still loved and revered, and to which they had been accustomed to look for help in time of sickness and want. By the Roman Catholics he was regarded with mistrust as the avowed enemy of their religion; by the Protestants he was reproached for the timidity, if not treachery, of his conduct, in outwardly concurring in the persecutions exercised against them.



On the 29th of June, 1540, Cromwell was attainted by Act of Parliament of treason and heresy, and, though "worthy of a better master and a better fate," was committed to the Tower, and beheaded July 28th, 1540.

The divorce of Anne of Cleves had been pronounced four days previously; and, on the day of Cromwell's execution, Henry married his fifth wife, Catherine Howard.

### § 3. *Edward VI.*

*Born A.D. 1537; Reigned 6 years (1547-1553).*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXVII.

- A. D.
- 1547. Accession of Edward VI.**—England governed by a council of regency of 16 executors and 12 councillors.—These appoint the **Earl of Hertford**, the young king's uncle, **Protector**.—Hertford created **Duke of Somerset**.—**Invasion of Scotland**.—The Scots defeated at **Pinkie** (Sept. 10).—Machinations of the protector's brother, **Lord Seymour**.—Somerset returns from Scotland.—The young Queen of Scots sent to France, and betrothed to the dauphin.—Laws against heresy repealed.—The king's supremacy confirmed.—An Act passed limiting the crime of treason to the statute of the 25th of Edward III.
- 1548.** Further alterations in the established religion.—Private masses abolished.—Images removed from churches.
- 1549. Lord Seymour committed to the Tower.**—Parliament passes a bill of attainder against him.—He is executed on Tower Hill (March 20).—Acts passed permitting priests to marry, and establishing **Uniformity in Divine service**.—**Insurrections in several parts of England**.—The rebels in Norfolk and Devonshire demand the restoration of the old forms of religion.—Lord Russell, ancestor of the present Duke of Bedford, disperses the insurgents in Devon.—The Earl of Warwick, son of Dudley, the minister of Henry VII., defeats those of Norfolk, with forces intended for an invasion of Scotland.—Lord-lieutenants of counties appointed. **Somerset impeached and sent to the Tower.**



A.D.

1550. Somerset released and restored to his seat in the council.—Bishop Gardiner deprived.—Warwick chief of the council of state.—Peace concluded with France.—Cession of Boulogne.—Revisal of the Book of Common Prayer.—The Forty-two Articles of Religion.—Joan Bocher burnt for heresy.
1551. Warwick created Duke of Northumberland.—Somerset accused of treason and committed to the Tower.
1552. Trial and execution of Somerset.
1553. Northumberland's son, Lord Guildford Dudley, marries Lady Jane Grey.—The crown willed by Edward to the Lady Jane.—Edward dies at Greenwich (July 6).

#### § 4. *Mary.*

*Born* A.D. 1516 ; *Reigned* 5 years (1553-1558).

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXVIII.

A.D.

1553. Lady Jane Grey proclaimed queen in London (July 8).—Mary enters London (Aug. 3).—Northumberland executed for high treason (Aug. 22).—Sentence also pronounced against Lady Jane and her husband.—Gardiner and the other deprived bishops re-instated.—Cranmer sent to the Tower (Sept. 14).—He is declared guilty of treason, but is respited, and detained in prison on a charge of heresy.—All the Statutes of Edward VI., in regard to religion, repealed.
1554. Announcement of the queen's intended marriage with Philip of Spain.—Sir Thomas Wyatt heads a rebellion in Kent against the Spanish match.—Lady Jane and her husband beheaded (Feb. 12).—Lady Jane's father, the Duke of Suffolk, also beheaded.—The Princess Elizabeth committed to the Tower ; but, after examination, released. Execution of Wyatt (April 15).—Philip of Spain arrives at Southampton (July 20).—The marriage takes place at Winchester (July 25).—Cardinal Pole comes to England as legate of the Pope (Nov. 14).
1555. The Marian persecution.—Bishop Hooper burned at Gloucester (Feb 9) ; Ridley and Latimer at Oxford (Oct. 16).
1556. Cranmer burned at Oxford (March 18).—Pole made Archbishop of Canterbury.
1557. Philip revisits England (March).—Mary declares war against France.—Philip's victory over the French at St. Quentin.

A. D.

1558. Loss of Calais (Jan. 7), after having been in the possession of the English for 211 years.—Marriage of Mary, Queen of Scots, to Francis the Dauphin (April 24).—Death of Queen Mary (Nov. 17).—Cardinal Pole dies on the same day as the queen.

## READING LESSON XXIII.

## LADY JANE GREY.

This good and gentle, but unfortunate, lady, who was born in 1537, was of the blood royal of England, being descended from Henry VII., whose daughter Mary, after the death of her first husband Louis XII. of France, married Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolk, by whom she had a daughter, Frances Brandon, who married Henry Grey, Marquis of Dorset, afterwards created Duke of Suffolk. Of this marriage the Lady Jane Grey was the eldest daughter. She was a lady of a most amiable and engaging disposition, and possessed of great mental accomplishments; and, being about the same age as the youthful Prince Edward, she received her education with him, and gained a familiar acquaintance with Latin and Greek, as well as with several modern languages. The account given of her love for study and retirement by Roger Ascham, the tutor of the Princess Elizabeth, is familiar to all. Discovering her one day engaged in reading Plato, while her companions were disporting themselves in the park, he remarked upon the singularity of her choice; upon which she told him that she derived far more pleasure from the study of Plato than the others could from their sports in the fields.

After the execution of Somerset (Jan. 22, 1552), the supreme power in the state devolved upon the Duke of Northumberland, who, taking advantage of the young king's declining state of health, began to entertain the ambitious project of securing the crown

of England for his own family. With this object in view, he persuaded Edward that his sisters, Mary and Elizabeth, were ineligible for the succession by reason of their having been declared illegitimate by an Act of Parliament; that the claim of Mary, Queen of Scots, was also excluded through her betrothal to the Dauphin of France; and that the Lady Jane Grey was therefore the next heir to the throne. Having by these reasonings made a great impression upon the young prince—who was, moreover, influenced by his zealous attachment to the Protestant religion and his apprehensions of the consequences which would attend the succession of so strict a Roman Catholic as his sister Mary—Northumberland persuaded the Duke and Duchess of Suffolk to give their daughter, the Lady Jane, in marriage to his own son, the Lord Guildford Dudley. A deed was then drawn up and signed by Edward, by which his sisters were excluded from the succession, and the crown settled upon Lady Jane Grey and her husband.

The king died July 6, 1553; but it was not until some days after that the Lady Jane was made acquainted with the ambitious projects of her father and father-in-law. When waited upon by them with the offer of the crown, she yielded with the greatest unwillingness to their wishes—pleading the preferable title of the two princesses, and desiring to remain in the same station of life in which she had been born. Overcome at last by their entreaties, and especially by those of her husband, whom she fondly loved, she allowed herself to be proclaimed queen and to be conducted with regal state—as the custom of the time was—to the Tower of London, soon to become her prison. Northumberland found himself without the support of any considerable party in the country; and within ten days of Lady Jane's proclamation as queen, Mary was in undisputed possession of the throne, while her rival resigned her short-lived authority with

much more satisfaction than she had manifested upon her assumption of it.

Northumberland was tried and executed (Aug. 23, 1553); but the Lady Jane and her husband, though sentence was pronounced upon them, were spared for a time—their youth and innocence pleading eloquently in their favour. They were confined in the Tower, but it does not appear that there was, in the first instance, any intention on the part of the newly established government to take away their lives. Their fate was, however, soon to be decided. Mary's projected marriage with Philip of Spain excited such universal discontent that risings took place in different parts of the country with the object of compelling the queen to abandon the proposed alliance. Sir Thomas Wyatt headed the rebellion in Kent; Sir Peter Carew undertook to raise the standard of revolt in Devonshire; and the Duke of Suffolk was engaged, by the futile hope of recovering the crown for his daughter, to rouse the midland counties. The Kentish rebellion alone was successful for a time—Wyatt defeated the queen's troops and advanced upon London; but, being deserted by his followers, he was at last seized near Temple Bar, condemned, and executed.

This rebellion proved fatal to Lady Jane Grey and her husband. The queen was determined to remove every person from whom the least danger was to be apprehended; and, within a week of Wyatt's rebellion, the warrant for their execution upon their former sentence was signed. Both were beheaded on the same day (Feb. 12, 1554).

Fuller, in allusion to Lady Jane Grey, observes—  
“She had the innocency of childhood, the beauty of youth, the solidity of the middle, the gravity of old age, and all at eighteen; the birth of a princess, the learning of a clerk, the life of a saint, yet the death of a malefactor for her parent's offences.”



§ 5. *Elizabeth.*

*Born* A.D. 1533 ; *Reigned* 45 years (1558-1603).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XXIX.

A.D.

1558. **Accession of Elizabeth.**—Sir William Cecil appointed Secretary of State.
1559. **The queen's coronation** (Jan. 13).—Parliament restores all the laws of **Edward VI. relating to religion.**—The Book of Common Prayer re-established.—**Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity enforced.**—Parker appointed Archbishop of Canterbury.—Peace with France concluded by the **Treaty of Cateau-Cambresis.**—Death of Henry II. of France.—Francis II., the husband of Mary, Queen of Scots, succeeds.—**Mary and her husband assume the royal arms of England.**
1560. **Elizabeth in league with the Scotch Reformers.**—The French forces in Scotland obliged to capitulate.—**Treaty of Edinburgh signed** (July 6).—**Protestantism established in Scotland.**—Death of Francis II. (Dec. 5).
1561. **Queen Mary returns to Scotland** (Aug. 19).—Insulting behaviour of John Knox, the leader of the reformers.—**Elizabeth assists the Huguenots.**—Havre for a time in the possession of the English.—**Peace with France.**
1563. Publication of **THE THIRTY-NINE Articles of Religion.**—Sir Robert Dudley created **Earl of Leicester.**
1565. **The Queen of Scots marries Lord Darnley** (July 29).—A rebellion, secretly encouraged by Elizabeth, breaks out in Scotland.—The Earl of Murray and other rebels take refuge in England.
1566. **Murder of Rizzio, secretary to Queen Mary.**—**Birth of James VI.** (June 19).
1567. **Murder of Darnley** (Feb. 9). Bothwell arraigned and acquitted of the deed.—Bothwell marries Mary (May 15).—Mary captured at Carberry Hill and conducted to Edinburgh.—Bothwell escapes to Denmark.—**Mary imprisoned in Lochleven Castle.**—James VI. crowned at Stirling (July 29).—Murray appointed regent.
1568. **Escape of Mary from Lochleven** (May 2).—**Battle of Langside** (May 13); her forces being defeated, Mary escapes to England.—She is detained a prisoner, first at Carlisle, and afterwards at Bolton, in Yorkshire.—A commission appointed to investigate the charges against her.



A.D.

1569. Mary removed to Tutbury, in Staffordshire.—The Duke of Norfolk proposes to marry her.—He is arrested and committed to the Tower.—An insurrection breaks out in the north, headed by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland, for the purpose of releasing Mary and restoring the ancient religion.—The rebellion crushed.—Norfolk released.

---

MEMORY EXERCISE XXX.

A.D.

1570. Assassination of the regent Murray (Jan. 23).—Lenox succeeds in the regency.—Bull of Pius V. excommunicating Elizabeth (April 25).—Rise of the Puritans.
1571. Parliament meets after a suspension of four years (April 2).—A committee of the House of Commons petitions Elizabeth to proceed criminally against Queen Mary.—Norfolk renews his attempt to gain the hand of the Queen of Scots in marriage; he is arrested (Sept. 7).
1572. The duke tried for high treason (Jan. 16).—He is executed (June 2).—Massacre of St. Bartholomew (Aug. 24).
1573. Elizabeth secretly aids the Huguenots.
1574. Death of Charles IX.—The Duke of Anjou succeeds as Henry III. (May 30).
1577. Elizabeth refuses the proffered sovereignty of the Netherlands, but assists the Hollanders with money and forces against Philip of Spain.—Exploits of Francis Drake; he completes a voyage round the world.
1579. Philip sends a body of troops to Ireland to stir up a rebellion there.—Negotiations for the queen's marriage with Alençon, now Duke of Anjou; the duke's visit to the Queen at Greenwich.
1581. Elizabeth refuses to marry.
1584. Act against the Jesuits and seminary priests.
1585. The Netherlands renew their offer of the sovereignty to Elizabeth.—She accepts the protectorate, and sends assistance under the Earl of Leicester.—Expedition under Sir Francis Drake to attack the Spaniards in the West Indies.
1586. Battle of Zutphen.—Death of Sir Philip Sidney (Sept. 22).—Babington's conspiracy discovered.—A commission issued for the trial of Mary at Fotheringay Castle.—Sentence of death pronounced against Mary (Oct. 25). The sentence ratified by both Houses of Parliament.

A. D.

1587. Elizabeth signs the warrant for the execution. — Mary beheaded at Fotheringay (Feb. 8).

---

## READING LESSON XXIV.

## MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS.

Mary Stuart, the beautiful and accomplished, but unfortunate daughter of James V. of Scotland, was born at Linlithgow on the 8th December, 1542. At the time of her birth, her father lay sick at his palace of Falkland; and, before she was a week old, he expired, at the early age of thirty (Dec. 14, 1542), without making any provision, either for the care of the infant queen, or for the administration of the government, and leaving to his daughter the heritage of a kingdom torn by intestine commotion.

On the death of James V., Cardinal Beaton, the Primate of Scotland, who had been for many years the chief adviser of the late king, produced a forged will appointing himself and three others regents of the kingdom during the minority of Queen Mary. The Scottish nobility, however, rejected the fictitious document and elected the Earl of Arran regent.

The Reformation had now made considerable progress in Scotland; and Arran, who at this time professed the Protestant religion, entered into negotiations with Henry VIII. for the betrothal of Mary to the young Prince Edward. This project was, however, distasteful to the majority of the Scottish nobility; and Beaton, who had been imprisoned on a charge of treason, was now restored to liberty, and regained much of his former influence. He became reconciled to the regent, whom he induced to abandon the English interests and publicly to abjure the reformed religion. The archbishop officiated at the coronation of Queen Mary (Sept. 9, 1543), and was thereupon

appointed a member of the Council of State and Lord High Chancellor of the kingdom.

After the desertion of Arran, the Earl of Lenox became the head of the Protestant party in Scotland; and the Scottish reformers now allied themselves with Henry VIII. in an endeavour to force on the English match.

War with England ensued, but was conducted feebly and with varying success till 1545, when a nominal peace between the two countries was concluded. On the accession of Edward VI., the Protector Somerset made preparations for renewing the war with Scotland, being determined to carry out, if possible, the project for a union of the two nations, upon which Henry VIII. had so fixed his heart, and which he had recommended with his dying breath to his executors. A well equipped army and fleet were despatched for the invasion of Scotland; and, on the 10th of September, 1547, the Scots met with a defeat at Pinkie, near Musselburgh, only less disastrous than that of Flodden.

During this troublous period, the young Queen of Scots was living first at Linlithgow, and afterwards at Stirling Castle. After the defeat of Pinkie, which served only to render the aversion of the Scottish nobles to the match the more insurmountable, Mary was removed for safety to Inchmahome, a small sequestered island in the Lake of Monteith.

In the meantime, a treaty of marriage having been concluded between her and the Dauphin Francis, the eldest son of Henry II. of France and Catherine di Medici, it was resolved to send her to the court of France until the nuptials could be solemnized. Accordingly, in her 5th year, she was taken to Dumbarton, where she was put on board a French man-of-war and conveyed to France (July, 1548).

The following ten years of Mary's life were passed

at the French court, where she was carefully educated with the king's family. She made rapid progress in the acquisition of the literature and accomplishments of the age, and became alike remarkable for the elegance and fluency of her language, the grace and liveliness of her carriage, and the natural charms of her person and whole behaviour. Her marriage with the Dauphin, who was about two years younger than herself, was celebrated at the church of Notre Dame with every circumstance of pomp and splendour, on the 24th of April, 1558.

On the accession of Elizabeth, Mary and her husband assumed the royal arms of England; and, on the ground of Elizabeth's alleged illegitimacy and of Mary's descent from Margaret, the eldest daughter of Henry VII., they advanced a formal claim to the English crown. Henry II. of France was killed in a tournament at Paris (July 10, 1559), and the Dauphin succeeded to the French throne with the title of Francis II. The sunshine of Mary's prosperity was now at its height, but it was doomed to be only of short continuance. Francis II. died in December, 1560, and Mary was compelled to leave the land of her adoption and return to her troubled kingdom of Scotland.

Queen Mary's departure from France was delayed for some time, owing to Elizabeth's refusal to grant her a safe passage until she had relinquished all claim upon the English crown. At length, after repeated delays, she sailed from Calais, and landed at Leith on the 19th of August, 1561, after an absence from Scotland of nearly thirteen years,—“a stranger to her subjects, without experience, without allies, and almost without friends.”

During her absence from her native land, great changes had been wrought. At the date of her departure, although the reformed opinions had taken



firm hold upon a considerable section of the people, the Roman Catholic religion was still supreme; on her return, she found the Presbyterian system established on the ruins of the Church of her forefathers. For such a change her life in France had done little to prepare her. Her reign, nevertheless, began auspiciously. Stipulating only for freedom of worship, so far as she and her household were concerned, she allowed the government to continue in the hands of the Protestant party, and selected as her chief adviser, her half-brother, James Stuart, an able and ambitious statesman, whom she shortly afterwards created Earl of Murray.

Meanwhile, the various courts of Europe were busy with schemes for Mary's marriage, and candidates for her hand appeared on all sides. Among these were the kings of Sweden, Denmark, and France, the Archduke Charles of Austria, Don Carlos of Spain, the Dukes of Ferrara, Nemours, and Anjou, the Scottish Earl of Arran and the English Earl of Leicester. For a time Mary's own preference was for Don Carlos, who was heir to what was, at that time, the greatest monarchy in the world; but she at length gave up all thoughts of a foreign alliance, and fixed her affections on her cousin, Henry Stuart, Lord Darnley, the youthful heir of the noble house of Lenox. To him she was united on Sunday, July 29th, 1565, the marriage ceremony being performed in the chapel of Holyrood Palace according to the rites of the Roman Catholic Church.

This marriage was distasteful to the Protestant party in Scotland, who, headed by the Earl of Murray, and secretly encouraged by Elizabeth, the English queen, broke out into open revolt. The Scottish nation were not, however, prepared for insurrection; and the queen, taking the field in person, succeeded in quelling the disturbance and chasing the rebels beyond the Tweed.



The remaining incidents in the eventful life of Mary can only be briefly alluded to. Her marriage with Darnley was most unhappy in its results. Darnley was an unprincipled profligate, and soon alienated the affections of Mary. To revenge what he considered the queen's unjust reserve towards him, he combined with the banished nobles and other malcontents, and, with their coöperation, planned the assassination of Rizzio, the secretary and chief favourite of Mary. Rizzio was murdered in the very presence of the queen herself, on the evening of March 9th, 1566. Shortly afterwards (June 19), Mary gave birth, in the castle of Edinburgh, to a son, who became James VI. of Scotland.

Darnley denied all complicity in the murder of Rizzio and the plot against the queen; but Mary did not believe him, and could never bring herself to treat him with anything but abhorrence and contempt. At this time, too, the Earl of Bothwell, a man of considerable personal and family influence, but needy, reckless, and profligate, obtained the favour and confidence of Mary. The events which followed are well known: the murder of Darnley (Feb. 9, 1567), and the horror excited by the deed both in England and Scotland; the mock trial and acquittal of Bothwell, for his alleged participation in the deed; and Mary's marriage with her late husband's murderer (May 15), within three months of Darnley's death,—all tended to hasten the downfall of the unhappy Queen.

When Mary's marriage with Bothwell was proclaimed, the indignation of the nation could no longer be restrained. The nobles rose in rebellion against Mary and Bothwell, who, for some time, fled from one fortress to another before an armed and angry people. A meeting at length took place at Carberry Hill (June 15) between the rebels and the forces of the queen; and Mary, unable to depend upon the

fidelity of her troops, was obliged to abandon Bothwell, and throw herself upon the mercy of her subjects. She was conducted to Edinburgh and afterwards confined in the castle of Lochleven, where she was compelled to sign an abdication in favour of her infant son, who was solemnly crowned at Stirling, July 29th, 1567.

Mary remained a prisoner at Lochleven for nearly a year, when, by the aid of friends, she effected her escape (May 2nd, 1568), and soon found herself at the head of an army of 6,000 men. The regent Murray hastened to assemble forces, with which he met and completely routed those of the queen at Langside, near Glasgow (May 12). Mary, thereupon, fled across the English border, hoping to secure the favour and protection of Elizabeth. In this, however, she was mistaken. Elizabeth refused her an audience until she should have cleared herself of the charges which her subjects had laid against her, but offered to act as umpire in the case.

From this time till the end of her life Mary was detained a prisoner in England. From Carlisle, her first place of captivity, she was removed, in July, to Bolton; and thence, in February, 1569, to Tutbury. From that place she passed successively to Wingfield, Coventry, Chatsworth, etc., until she reached her final place of imprisonment at Fotheringay Castle, near Peterborough (Sept., 1586), there to be tried on a charge of conspiracy against the life of Elizabeth.

Sentence of death was pronounced against her on the 25th of October; but it was not till the 1st of February, 1587, that Elizabeth could summon up resolution enough to sign the warrant for her execution. This was, at length, carried into effect on the 8th, when Mary laid her head on the block with all the dignity of a queen and the resignation of a martyr.

“Thus died Mary in the 45th year of her age and

the 19th of her captivity—a princess unmatched in beauty and unequalled in misfortunes. In contemplating the intentions of mankind, we almost always find both sides culpable: Mary, who was stained with crimes that deserved punishment, was put to death by a princess who had no right to inflict such a penalty on her equal.” \*

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXI.

A.D.

1587. **Sir Francis Drake's expedition against Cadiz.**—He burns more than 100 ships, and destroys stores collected for an invasion of England.—Preparations for resisting the invasion.
1588. **The Spanish armada** sails from Lisbon (May 29); dispersed by a storm off Finisterre; arrives off the Lizard (July 19).—**Defeat of the INVINCIBLE ARMADA.**
1589. Expedition of Drake and others to Portugal.—Assassination of Henry III. of France (Aug. 9).—The King of Navarre succeeds as Henry IV.
1590. An English force, under Willoughby, sent to the assistance of the French king against Spain.
1591. Further supports sent to France under the Earl of Essex.—Naval expeditions against Spain.
1593. Elizabeth summons a Parliament to obtain supplies.—Henry IV. renounces the Protestant religion.—Elizabeth continues her succours to France, both of men and money.
1595. **Expedition of Sir Walter Raleigh to Guiana.**
1596. Expedition to Spain under Essex and Lord Effingham.—**Cadiz captured.**
1597. A large fleet under Essex is sent to attack the Spanish coast.—Three treasure ships only captured.—Essex returns to England.
1598. Death of Lord Burleigh.—Death of Philip II. of Spain (Sept. 13).—**Rebellion in Ireland.**—Tyrone defeats the English in a battle at Blackwater.

---

\* Goldsmith.

A. D.

1599. Essex appointed to the command in Ireland ; he lands with an army at Dublin (April).—The campaign is unsuccessful.—A cessation of arms agreed upon.—Essex returns without leave to London ; he loses the favour of Elizabeth.
1601. Essex is concerned in an attempted insurrection in London ; he is tried for treason, condemned, and executed (Feb. 25).
1602. Tyrone surrenders to the queen's mercy.
1603. Death of Elizabeth (Mar. 24).
- 

## READING LESSON XXV.

### ENGLAND UNDER THE TUDORS.

The reigns of Henry VII. and his successors of the House of Tudor present a marked contrast to those of the Plantagenet princes. Under the latter, the royal prerogative had been gradually brought within well-defined limits ; but, owing to the almost total extinction of the old nobility during the Wars of the Roses, the crown gained such an accession of strength, that the Tudor sovereigns were enabled to rule with a power almost despotic. The commons having lost the support of the old nobility, and the nobles of the new creation being attached to the king by the ties of self-interest, Parliament lost much of that independence of character it had achieved during the Plantagenet era ; and its members too often became, either by corruption or intimidation, mere creatures of the sovereign, subservient in all things to his wishes. Examples of this subserviency are to be seen in the readiness with which Parliament, in the reign of Henry VIII., acceded to the wishes of that monarch in regard to the impeachment, on several occasions, of his wives and ministers.

Though violated in practice, in theory at least



the constitution remained intact, as is evidenced by legal writings of the period, which describe the English constitution as a monarchy limited by law, and assign to Parliament the two great privileges of legislation and taxation. These privileges, it is true, were often invaded by the sovereign, and notably so by Henry VIII., who levied *benevolences*, and procured the passing of an Act which gave to his proclamations the force of law ; but even in these encroachments upon the nation's privileges may be discovered a tacit acknowledgment of the constitution itself—Henry does not assume such powers as his *by sovereign right*, but has them conferred upon him by special Acts of Parliament.

The income of the crown, during this period, continued to be derived from some of the old feudal rights, as escheats, purveyance, etc. The dissolution of the monasteries and the confiscation of their revenues to the crown largely increased the wealth and influence of the monarch, who was enabled, by gifts of the abbey lands, to gain the interest and support of the nobility in his encroachments upon the privileges of the nation. In addition to this, the later Tudors adopted the plan of rewarding their courtiers with the grant of patents for monopolies, empowering them to carry on the exclusive trade in certain specified commodities. These monopolies put such restraints upon the extension of commerce and industrial pursuits, and, by the removal of competition, occasioned such an enormous advance in the prices of all the necessaries of life, that, towards the close of Elizabeth's reign, an agitation commenced for the redress of what had, by that time, become an intolerable nuisance. Parliament was at length aroused, and, in the session of 1601, several stormy debates upon the subject ensued. Elizabeth, despotic as she was, saw that the time for yielding to the public voice had come, and



therefore consented with good grace to the abolition of the most injurious of the hated monopolies.

Two new courts, which afterwards proved such instruments of oppression, came into existence during this period, viz., the Star Chamber and the Court of High Commission. The former was the king's *consilium ordinarium*, or common council, and derived its name from the *camera stellata*, or Star Chamber, an apartment in the king's palace at Westminster, where it held its sittings. This court was re-modelled by Henry VII., by whom its jurisdiction was considerably extended. It took cognizance chiefly of political offences, and exercised an illegal control over the ordinary courts of justice. In the reigns of James I. and Charles I. it became most oppressive and tyrannical as a means of asserting the royal prerogative, and was, in consequence, abolished by an Act of the Long Parliament in 1641. The Court of High Commission was established in the early part of the reign of Elizabeth, and was armed with powers hitherto unknown to the constitution, for the purpose of trying all offences under the Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity. This court was likewise abolished by the Long Parliament in 1641.

Turning from the constitutional to the social history of the nation, it must be confessed that the period of the Tudors was one of great advancement and improvement. The influence of England on the continent was extended by the arms of Henry VIII., and still more so by the vigorous policy of Elizabeth. In her reign the English first became a great maritime power, some of the naval victories of Elizabeth's seamen being as glorious as any that can be found in our annals. The enterprising voyages of Drake, Raleigh, Cavendish, and others, greatly increased the commercial prosperity of the nation, and laid the foundation of that extensive system of colonization, which, in later

times, has proved one of the chief sources of England's greatness. Commercial intercourse was opened up during this period with Russia, the Mediterranean, and with India. The first charter to what afterwards became the celebrated East India Company, was granted by Elizabeth in the year 1600.

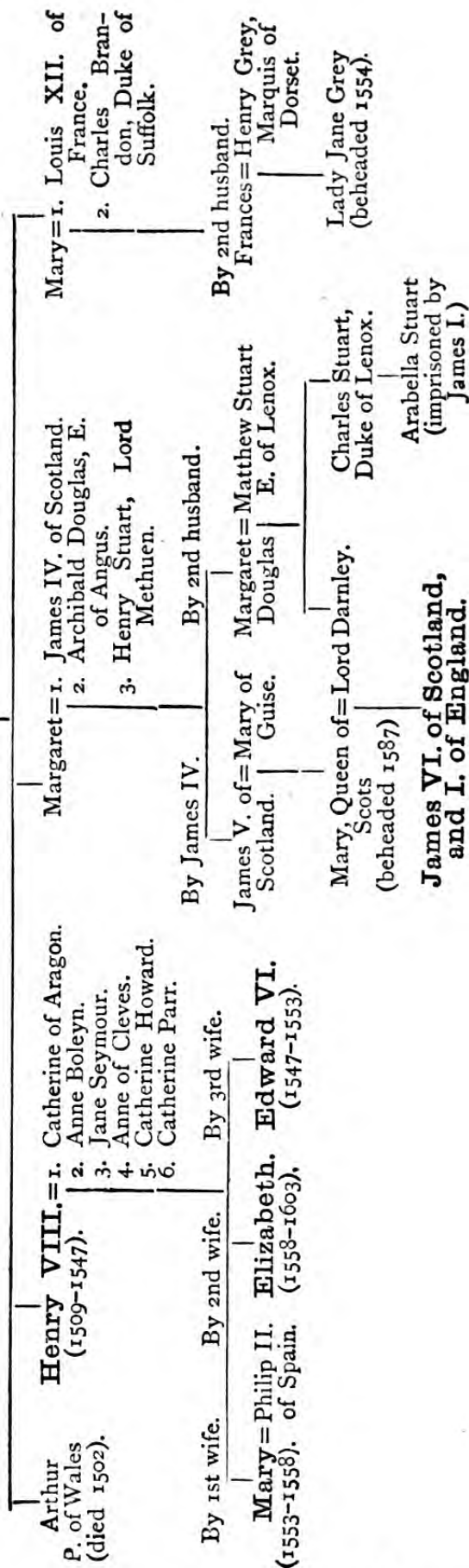
This period is likewise remarkable for the great revival of learning and science. The Tudor sovereigns were distinguished for their great intellectual abilities, and, as a rule, they were liberal patrons of literary men. The reign of Elizabeth is famous for the number of great writers who flourished in it. The most celebrated of these were Shakspeare, the immortal dramatist,—Spenser, the poet,—Hooker, the father of English prose,—and Bacon, the philosopher.

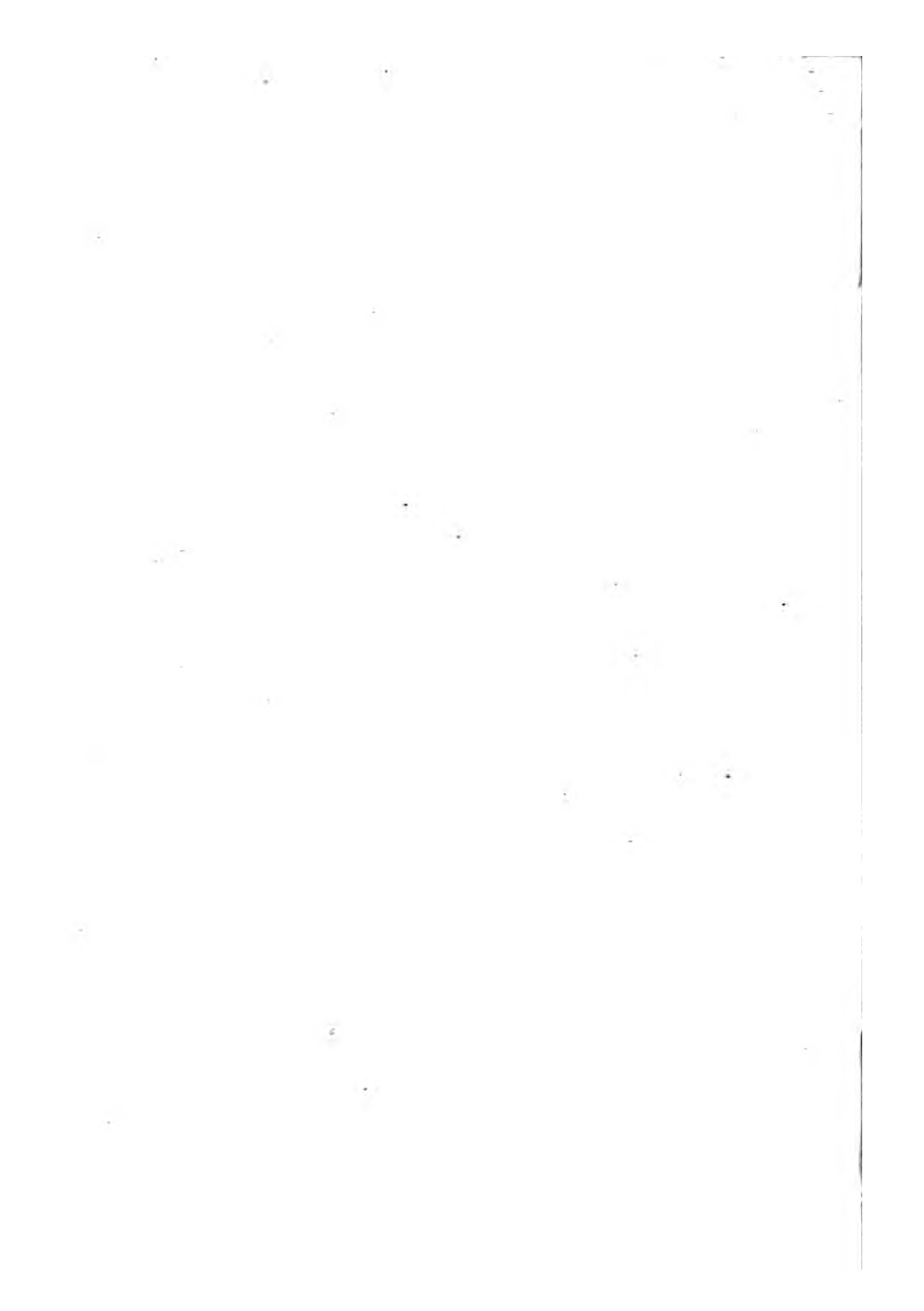


## GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF TUDOR.

Margaret Beaufort (daughter and heiress of John = Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond (son of Beaufort, Duke of Somerset, and great-granddaughter of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster. *Vide* Genealogical Table, page 107).

**Henry VII.** = Elizabeth of York, daughter of Edward IV.  
(1485—1509).



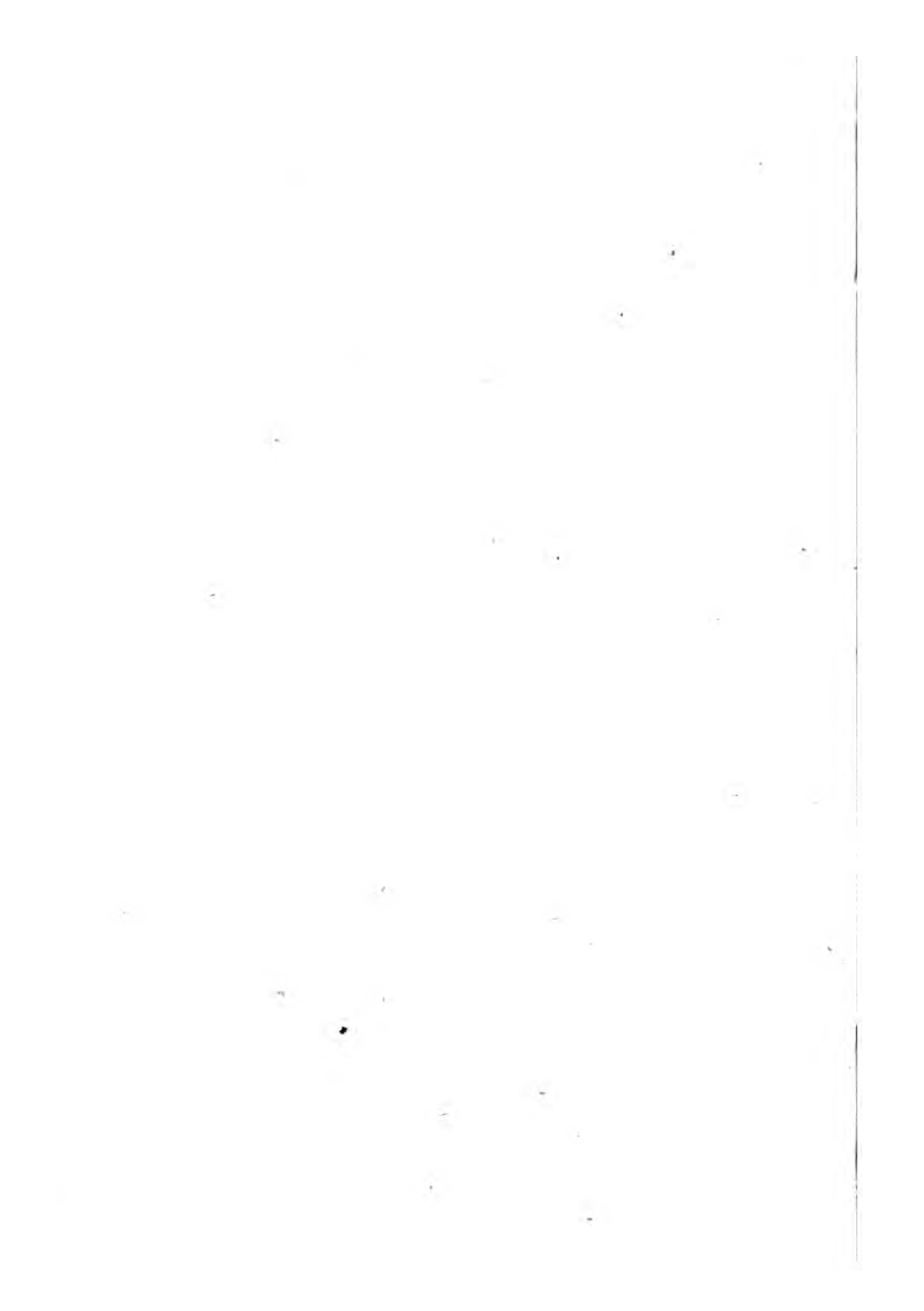


IX.

The Stuart Period.

A.D. 1603—1714.





## IX. THE STUART PERIOD.

§ 1. *James I.*

*Born* A.D. 1566 ; *Reigned* 22 years (1603–1625).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XXXII.

- A.D.
1603. Accession of James VI. of Scotland under the title of James I.—Elizabeth's ministers retained in office.—Cecil, afterwards Earl of Salisbury, prime minister.—The Main and Bye conspiracies discovered.—Raleigh imprisoned.
1604. Conference at Hampton Court (Jan. 14)—Parliament grants *tonnage* and *poundage* to the king.—A *supply* refused.—The quarrel between the Stuarts and the Commons commences.—Disaffection of the Roman Catholics.
1605. Gunpowder Plot.
1606. Charters granted to the London and Plymouth Companies for colonizing North America.
1607. James' Town in Virginia founded.
1609. Elizabeth's charter to the East India Company renewed.
1610. Second Parliament of James.—Remonstrances against the proceedings of the Court of High Commission.—Attempt to abolish wardships and purveyances.—Murder of Henry IV. of France.
1611. Ulster colonized by English and Scotch tenants.—Baronets first created.—Publication of the present authorized translation of the Bible.
1612. Death of Henry, Prince of Wales (Nov. 6).—An English factory established at Surat in India.—Death of Salisbury.—Robert Carr, Viscount Rochester, a favourite of the king, succeeds to office.
1613. Rochester marries the divorced countess of the Earl of Essex.—He is created Earl of Somerset. Marriage of Elizabeth the daughter of James I. to Frederick, the Elector Palatine (Feb. 14).—Murder of Overbury in the Tower (Sept. 15).
1616. The Earl and Countess of Somerset convicted of the murder of Overbury.—Raleigh released from the Tower.
1617. Raleigh conducts an unsuccessful expedition to South America.
1618. Raleigh, upon his return, is beheaded under his former sentence (Oct. 29.)

A. D.

1620. The Elector Frederick is defeated at Prague and driven from his palatinate by the Spaniards.—James refuses help to his son-in-law.—Sailing of the *Mayflower*, with the “Pilgrim Fathers,” for New England.
1621. Parliament assembled (Jan. 30).—Subsidies granted—grievances discussed.—**Lord Bacon impeached** and sent to the Tower.—Parliament prorogued—being re-assembled (Nov. 14), the discussion of grievances is renewed.—Parliament dissolved and some of its members imprisoned.
1623. Prince Charles and Buckingham visit Madrid.—The match with Spain broken off.—Spain prepares for war.
1624. A new Parliament summoned—large supplies voted for the war with Spain.—A bill passed against monopolies.—**A treaty concluded with France**.—Prince Charles engaged in marriage to Henrietta of France.
1625. Death of James I. (Mar. 27).

---

### READING LESSON XXVI.

#### ROBERT CARR, EARL OF SOMERSET.

James I. was essentially a weak prince; and in nothing was the weakness of his character so plainly apparent as in his partiality for unworthy favourites. The first of these was Robert Carr, a young Scotchman of good family, who was introduced to James towards the end of the year 1609, and who, by his good looks and graceful demeanour, so won upon the affections of that monarch, that he was speedily promoted by him to the highest honours. He was at once knighted, and, in 1611, was created Viscount Rochester, invested with the order of the garter, and admitted a member of the king's privy council. Upon the death of the prime minister, Salisbury (Robert Cecil), in the following year, Rochester succeeded to the power, if not to the office, of that able minister.

For some time the favourite seems to have been sensible of his inexperience in affairs of state. He found a judicious counsellor and guide in Sir Thomas

Overbury ; and, so long as he allowed himself to be ruled by his friendly counsels, he was enabled to enjoy the favour of his sovereign without incurring the resentment of the people. It would have been well for Rochester had he continued to be guided by the advice of so prudent a friend and adviser. An event, however, soon happened which involved both the favourite and his friend in ruin. Having entertained an unlawful passion for the wife of the Earl of Essex,\* Rochester formed the project of espousing her by obtaining her divorce from her husband. Overbury was strongly opposed to this scheme, and thereby incurred the resentment of the countess, who incited Rochester to procure his removal. The king was persuaded to send him upon an embassy to Russia. Overbury declined this proposal, and was thereupon committed to the Tower (April 21st, 1613), where he was kept in close confinement for nearly six months. The opposition of Overbury being removed, the arrangements for the divorce proceeded, and, with the assistance of the king, who had lent himself readily to the project, a sentence of separation between the Earl of Essex and his countess was shortly afterwards pronounced. At the same time, Rochester was created Earl of Somerset, in order that the lady should not lose rank by her new marriage.

Notwithstanding this success, the Countess of Somerset could not rest contented until she had completely satisfied her revenge upon Overbury for his opposition to her marriage ; and by her means his death, by poison, in the Tower was procured (Sept. 16, 1613). A strong suspicion was excited in the minds of men at the time, but the full proof of Somerset's

---

\*Son of the Earl of Essex, executed at the close of Elizabeth's reign. He had been restored to the titles and estates of his father, in 1603.

complicity in the crime did not come to light till some years afterwards.

From this time the favourite's downfall commenced. He lost that freshness and gaiety of manner, and that gracefulness of demeanour, which had, at the outset, engaged the affections of King James; and that monarch was easily induced to transfer his favour and attention to a new favourite, who at this time appeared in the person of George Villiers. The court was now divided into two rival factions—some attaching themselves to the rising fortunes of Villiers, others still adhering to the old favourite, Somerset. The fate of the latter was soon to be determined. His guilt in connexion with the murder of Overbury was brought to light through the revelations of an apothecary's apprentice, who had been employed in making up the poisons. All the accomplices in the murder were tried and punished. Somerset and his countess were, however, pardoned by king James. After some years of imprisonment they were restored to liberty. A pension was conferred upon them, upon which they lived in retirement and obscurity—passing many years in the same house, but without holding intercourse with each other.

---

## § 2. *Charles I.*

*Born* A.D. 1600 ; *Reigned* 24 years (1625-1649).

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXIII.

A.D.

**1625.** **Accession of Charles I.**—His marriage with Henrietta of France.—Meeting of Charles's **First Parliament** (June 18)—two subsidies only voted for the war.—Parliament dissolved (Aug. 12).—Failure of an **expedition against Cadiz** under Sir Edward Cecil.



A.D.

1626. **Second Parliament** summoned (Feb. 6).—Articles of impeachment drawn up against Buckingham.—Parliament dissolved.—Charles resorts to arbitrary modes of taxation.
1627. **War with France**.—Buckingham fails in his attempt to relieve Rochelle (Oct.).
1628. Charles's **Third Parliament** assembled (Mar. 17)—five subsidies voted on condition of the king's assent to the **PETITION OF RIGHT**—Parliament prorogued (June 26).—**Assassination of the Duke of Buckingham** (Aug. 23).—The command of the fleet and army conferred on the Earl of Lindesey.—Rochelle surrenders to Richelieu (Oct. 18) within sight of the English Admiral.
1629. **Second session of the third Parliament** (Jan. 20).—A **Remonstrance** framed against the illegal collection of tonnage and poundage.—Parliament dissolved (Mar. 10)—Sir John Eliot and other members committed to prison and fined.—Sir Thomas Wentworth, afterwards **Earl of Strafford** becomes the king's chief adviser.—**Laud**, Bishop of London, acquires the ascendant in ecclesiastical affairs.
1633. **Tyrannical proceedings of the Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission**.—Imprisonment of Prynne.—Charles visits Scotland.—Laud becomes Archbishop of Canterbury.—Strafford appointed deputy of Ireland.
1634. **Imposition of Ship-money**.
1635. Ship-money levied upon inland towns.
1637. **Trial of John Hampden**.—Introduction of the Liturgy into Scotland (July 23).
1638. **Rebellion in Scotland**.—Formation of the **Four Tables** in Edinburgh.—**Institution of the COVENANT**.—Election of a General Assembly (Nov. 21).—Episcopacy, the High Commission, the Canons, and the Liturgy declared to be abolished in Scotland.—**Preparations for war**.
1639. Charles marches against the Scotch.—**A pacification concluded at Berwick** (June 18).



## MEMORY EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. D.

1640. **War with Scotland renewed.**—The king, to obtain supplies, is obliged to summon his **Fourth Parliament** (April 13)—the session commences with the discussion of grievances and an inquiry into the prosecution and imprisonment of Sir John Eliot.—Charles dissolves this Parliament (May 5).—Disturbances in London—Laud's palace attacked.—The king's forces defeated at **Newburn-upon-Tyne.**—**The Scots take possession of Newcastle.**—A great council of the peers summoned at York (Sept. 24).—Meeting of the **LONG PARLIAMENT** (Nov. 3).—Lenthall chosen Speaker.—**Impeachment of Strafford and Laud.**—All persons declared *delinquents*, who had exercised powers not authorised by the statute laws of the realm.
1641. Appointment of the *committee of scandalous ministers.*—A triennial bill passed.—**Trial of Strafford**—he is condemned by bill of attainder (May 7), and executed on Tower Hill (May 12).—**Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission abolished.**—Parliament adjourned (Oct. 20).—A Committee of the Commons appointed to sit during the recess.—**Pacification of Scotland.**—Massacre of the Protestants in Ireland (Oct. 23).—**Parliament frames a REMONSTRANCE** on the state of the nation, which is carried by a small majority in the Commons (Nov. 22).
1642. First use of the terms *Cavalier* and *Roundhead.*—The king impeaches Lord Kimbolton and five members of the Commons (Jan. 3).—Great disturbances in London.—Charles retires to Hampton Court.—**Both parties prepare for war.**—Hull seized by the Parliament.—The queen retires to Holland.—Parliament demands the king's assent to the militia bill.—Charles proceeds to York.—Parliament levies forces in the name of the king.—The Earl of Essex in command of the Parliamentary forces.—**Charles collects troops—advances southwards, and sets up the royal standard at Nottingham** (Aug. 22).



## READING LESSON XXVII.

## THE EARL OF STRAFFORD.

After the dissolution of his third Parliament (March 10th, 1629), King Charles resolved to call no more Parliaments, and thenceforward, for a period of more than eleven years, he ruled as an absolute monarch. To strengthen himself in the position he thus assumed, he was obliged to yield so far to the public opinion of the time, as to choose for his ministers men of mark and influence among the popular party. One of these was Sir Thomas Wentworth, an eminent parliamentary leader, who had been foremost in his opposition to the misgovernment of the king's former favourite minister, Buckingham. The rise of Wentworth to power was now most rapid. He was created successively baron, viscount, and then Earl of Strafford, appointed Lord-President of the North and Deputy of Ireland, and regarded by the king as his chief counsellor and minister. His desertion, however, of the popular party was never forgiven by his former associates; and one of them, Pym, is said to have remarked, that "though Strafford might leave them, yet he would not leave him while his head remained on his shoulders."

Strafford now devoted the whole of his eminent abilities to the service of King Charles, and the advancement of the royal prerogative. As Lord-President of the North, his authority in that part of England was almost absolute; and, when removed to the governorship of Ireland, he carried the same principles of government into effect in that country. His administration of the government of Ireland, if arbitrary in its character, was eminently successful. At no previous period of its history had that distracted country enjoyed such tranquility as under Strafford's firm but beneficent rule. Industry and the arts of peace were introduced; the commerce of the country

was largely developed ; manufactures, particularly that of linen, promoted ; and agriculture improved by means of the English and Scottish immigrations. Strafford was able not only to maintain a small and well disciplined army for the preservation of peace within his vice-royalty of Ireland, but also to send assistance to King Charles in his expedition against his rebellious subjects in Scotland. For eight years—first as Deputy and afterwards as Lord-Lieutenant—Strafford governed Ireland with great vigilance, prudence, and activity. But, though a successful, he was not a popular ruler ; and his unpopularity was still further increased by his joining with Archbishop Laud in advising the king to introduce martial law into England. Writing to the archbishop on one occasion, he said, “ I am confident that the king, being pleased to set himself in the business, is able by his wisdom and ministers to carry any just and honourable action *thorough* all imaginable opposition.” This word “ *Thorough* ” became, from that time, the watchword of the court, as opposed to the country or national party.

The troubles in Scotland, and the want of means for prosecuting the war, at length compelled the king to summon a new Parliament. This assembled (April 13th, 1640), but, proving intractable, was speedily dissolved (May 5th). Charles’s troubles increasing, he was obliged to issue writs for the assembly of another Parliament, which met upon the 3rd of November in the same year, and became memorable in history as the LONG PARLIAMENT. Strafford was at this time in England, having been recalled from Ireland to take the command of the forces against the Scots. Knowing how bitter was the hatred against him of the majority of the members of the popular party, he now wished to retire to his government ; but, receiving the promise of the king that “ not a hair of his head should be injured,” he came to London (April 9th),



and was almost immediately impeached by the Commons for high treason, sequestered from Parliament, and committed to the Tower. A joint committee of the Lords and Commons was then appointed to investigate his case, and to draw up the charges against him. The articles of impeachment against him were laid before the Lords, Jan. 30th, 1641. They were twenty-eight in number, and had regard to his conduct as president of the council at York, as deputy or lieutenant of Ireland, and as commander in England.

The trial commenced in Westminster Hall, on Monday the 22nd of March, and was conducted with much solemnity. The prosecution was entrusted mainly to Pym—the friend of his earlier years, and his associate in the great struggle which produced the Petition of Right, but now his most bitter opponent. Strafford made a noble defence, which is thus characterized by Whitelock, the chairman of the committee which conducted the impeachment: “Certainly never any man acted such a part, on such a theatre, with more wisdom, constancy, and eloquence, with greater reason, judgment, and temper, and with a better grace in all his words, than did this great and excellent person: and he moved the hearts of all his auditors, some few excepted, to remorse and pity.”

The accusation and defence had lasted eighteen days, when the Commons, doubtful of securing a verdict against Strafford, resolved to proceed against him by a Bill of Attainder,\* thus following one of the worst precedents furnished by the reign of

---

\* The student must distinguish between an *Impeachment* and a *Bill of Attainder*. In the former, the Commons are the accusers, and the Lords alone are the judges: in the latter, the Commons are united as judges with the Lords. A Bill of Attainder may be introduced, like any other bill, into either House: it passes through the usual stages, and, when agreed to by both Houses, receives the assent of the Crown.



Henry VIII. The bill was supported by a large majority in the lower house, but met with more opposition from the peers,—being passed in the upper house by a small majority only (May 7th, 1641). The king for some time refused to give his assent to the bill, and assured Strafford of his protection ; but, being alarmed by the clamours of the London populace for justice upon his minister, and Strafford having generously placed his life at the disposal of his sovereign, he at length yielded to the popular desire and granted a commission to four noblemen to give the royal assent in his name to the bill.

Three days afterwards (on May 12th, 1641), Strafford was led forth to execution on Tower Hill. On his way he stopped under the windows of Laud's place of imprisonment, and asked for the blessing of the archbishop and the assistance of his prayers in those awful moments. His end was full of the courage and resolution which had characterized the public actions of his life.

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXV.

A.D.

- 1642.** An attempt at negotiation with the Parliament fails.—Portsmouth falls into the hands of the Parliamentary forces (Sept. 20).—**BATTLE OF EDGEHILL** (Oct. 23).—Death of Lord Lindsay, the Royalist general.—The king takes Banbury and Oxford, and advances to Reading.—Skirmish at **Brentford** (Nov. 12).—Essex recruits his forces in London.—The king retires into winter quarters at Oxford.
- 1643.** **Essex takes Reading** (April 27)—the royal authority established in the north by the Earl of Newcastle.—Sir W. Waller, the Parliamentary general in the south and west, captures Winchester, Chichester, Hereford and Tewkesbury.—Cornwall reduced by the Royalists.—Battle of **Chalgrove Field** (June 19).—Hampden mortally wounded.—Battle of **Lansdown** near Bath

A. D.

- (July 5).—Waller defeated at Devizes (July 13).—Bristol surrenders to Prince Rupert (July 27).—Gloucester invested by the Royalists (Aug. 10)—the siege is raised upon the approach of Essex.—**First Battle of Newbury** (Sept. 20).—Lord Falkland killed.—Fairfax routed at **Atherton Moor**, near Bradford (June 29).—Hull besieged by Lord Newcastle.—Parliament signs the "**Solemn League and Covenant**," and concludes a treaty with the Scots.
- 1644.** Royalist forces from Ireland reduce Cheshire—they are defeated by Fairfax at **Nantwich** (Jan. 25).—**The Scots invade England**.—Battle of **Marston Moor** (July 2), and total defeat of the Royalists.—York surrenders.—The Scots take Newcastle (Oct. 29).—Waller routed at **Cropredy Bridge**, near Daventry (June 29).—**Second battle of Newbury** (Oct. 27).—**Rise of the sect of the Independents**, with **Cromwell**, Sir **Harry Vane** and others as their leaders.
- 1645.** **Execution of Archbishop Laud** (Jan. 10).—Passing of the *Self-denying Ordinance* (April 3).—Essex and others retire from their commands in the Parliamentary army.—Sir Thomas Fairfax appointed Commander-in-chief in the name of the Parliament alone.—**Cromwell virtually the commander**.—Remodelling of the army of the Parliament.—The Earl of Montrose gains some advantages over the Covenanters in Scotland.—**BATTLE OF NASEBY** (June 14)—the Royalists defeated—the king retires into Wales.—Rupert surrenders Bristol to Fairfax (Sept. 10).—Montrose defeated at **Philiphaugh**, near Ettrick.—The Scots take Carlisle, and lay siege to Hereford.—Charles takes refuge in Oxford.—The Prince of Wales joins the queen at Paris.—The king concludes a treaty with the Irish rebels.
- 1646.** Charles leaves Oxford and surrenders himself to the Scots at **Newark** (May 5).—All the royal garrisons receive orders to submit to the Parliament.
- 1647.** **The Scots sell their king** to the Parliament for £400,000 (Jan. 30).—Charles is imprisoned at Holmby House, in Northamptonshire.—*Distempers* in the army of the Parliament.—Cromwell and a committee sent to inquire into them.—**The person of the king seized by the army** (June 4).—Cromwell invested with the supreme command.—The army overawes the Parliament (Aug. 6).—Charles removed to Hampton Court.—He escapes to the Isle of Wight (Nov. 11), but is arrested and imprisoned in Carisbrook castle.

- A.D.  
 1648. Rise of a party in the army called the *Levellers*.—Council of officers at Windsor.—Proposals to bring the king to trial first mooted.—*Vote of non-addresses* (Jan. 13).—A movement in support of the king commences.—The Scots make a treaty with Charles, and invade England.—Their forces are defeated by Cromwell at Preston (Aug. 17).—**Colonel Pride's Purge** (Dec. 5).—The *Rump* declare the king guilty of treason in having levied war against his Parliament.
1649. Charles is conducted to Whitehall (Jan. 19).—His trial in Westminster Hall commences (Jan. 20).—Sentence is pronounced (Jan. 27).—**King Charles I. beheaded at Whitehall** (Jan. 30).

### § 3. *The Commonwealth.*

(A.D. 1649-1653.)

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXVI.

- A.D.  
 1649. The Monarchy and House of Peers abolished.—Creation by the Rump of an executive Council of State.—**Charles II. proclaimed king in Scotland** (Feb. 5).—Ormond returns to Ireland, and succeeds in capturing Dundalk and Drogheda.—Dublin besieged by the Royalists.—**Cromwell is appointed Lord-Lieutenant and General of Ireland.**—Ormond defeated near Dublin (Aug. 2).—Cromwell lands in Ireland (Aug. 18).—Drogheda and Wexford taken and their garrisons massacred.—40,000 Irishmen pass into foreign service.
1650. Montrose taken prisoner, and hanged at Edinburgh (May 21).—**Charles II. lands in Scotland**, and submits to sign the Covenant (June 16).—Cromwell crosses the Tweed with an army of 16,000 men (July 16).—**Battle of Dunbar** (Sept. 3).—Cromwell takes possession of Edinburgh.—The Scots retire to Stirling.—Death of William, Prince of Orange.
1651. **Charles II. crowned at Scone** (Jan. 1).—Cromwell takes Perth.—The Scots march into England—Cromwell follows, leaving General Monk in command in Scotland.—**Battle of Worcester** (Sept. 3).—The king escapes to Normandy (Oct. 17), and rejoins the exiled royal family in Paris.—Expedition of Blake

A. D.

- against Portugal.—Monk completes the reduction of Scotland.—Sir Harry Vane and other commissioners sent by the English Parliament to settle that kingdom.
1652. **War with Holland.**—Blake defeats the Dutch off Dover (May 19).—Naval action off Plymouth (Aug. 16).—The Dutch again defeated off the coast of Kent (Sept. 28). A Dutch victory in the Downs (Nov. 28).
1653. **The war with Holland continues.**—The Dutch fleet under Tromp and De Ruyter defeated by Blake off Portland (Feb. 18).—**Cromwell forcibly dissolves the Rump** (April 20).—Meeting of the *Barebones Parliament* (July 4).—This Parliament resigns its powers, and by the *Instrument of Government* confers the title of “**Lord Protector**” upon Cromwell (Dec. 13).

---

## READING LESSON XXVIII.

### THE BATTLE OF WORCESTER.

Charles II. was at the Hague at the time of his father's execution. He was at once proclaimed king in Scotland—the Covenanters having been restored to something like a feeling of loyalty to the royal house of Stuart by the excesses of the English Independents. Their offer of the crown was, however, coupled with the condition that Charles should sign the Covenant, and swear to the maintenance of Presbyterianism as the established and national form of religion. The failure of Ormond's attempt in Ireland, and the capture and execution of the Earl of Montrose, after a similarly fruitless effort on behalf of the royal cause in the Highlands, at length obliged him to accept the crown of Scotland on the terms offered by the commissioners of the Covenanters. Escorted by several Dutch ships of war, Charles set sail for Scotland, where he landed June 13th, 1650; but not before he had fulfilled the terms of the agreement, and sworn to be faithful to the Covenant. The king was now a mere puppet in the hands of Argyle and the Presbyterian clergy: he



was consulted in no public measure ; and was compelled to issue a declaration expressing his contrition on account of his father's opposition to the Covenant and the shedding of the blood of God's people throughout his dominions, as well as lamenting, what they termed, the idolatry of his mother, and its toleration in his father's house.

This state of affairs lasted until after the defeat of the Scots by Cromwell at Dunbar (Sept. 3, 1650), when the vanquished Covenanters were obliged to give their sovereign more authority, and apply to him for support. He was crowned at Scone, with much pomp and solemnity (Jan. 1, 1651), and allowed to join the camp of the Scottish army at Stirling.

Cromwell, after the victory at Dunbar, took possession of Edinburgh and Leith, and retired into winter quarters. As soon as the season permitted, he took the field again with his forces, and endeavoured to bring the Scottish leaders to a general engagement ; but, failing in this, he crossed the Firth of Forth, and laid siege to Perth, with the intention of cutting off Charles's communication with the Highlands. While his enemy was thus occupied, the king suddenly formed the resolution of marching into England, and striking another blow for his father's crown. The project was put into execution with such secrecy and expedition, that Cromwell was at first taken by surprise ; but, quickly repairing his oversight, and leaving General Monk in charge of affairs in Scotland, he followed the royal forces with the main body of his army.

Charles had expected that, on reaching England, numbers would have flocked to his standard ; but having no warning of the king's approach, the English Royalists and Presbyterians were not prepared to join him ; while the Scots, alarmed at the hazardous nature of the undertaking, deserted in great numbers. The army of Cromwell, on the other hand, was largely



increased by the militias of the counties through which he passed. Upon approaching Shrewsbury, the king summoned it to surrender, but meeting with a firm refusal, he marched on towards Worcester, at which place his harassed and jaded forces were attacked and totally routed by Cromwell, at the head of an overwhelming force of more than 30,000 men (Sept. 3, 1651). The engagement lasted between four and five hours, and the whole Scottish army, after a desperate resistance, was either killed or taken prisoners—the few who escaped the field of battle being put to death by the country people.

Charles fled from Worcester in company with a small band of faithful followers; and, after a number of adventures and hair-breadth escapes, succeeded in embarking in a vessel at Shoreham, in Sussex, and arrived safely at Fécamp, in Normandy (Oct. 17, 1651). The battle of Worcester, which Cromwell, in the language of that day, termed “a crowning mercy,” was fought on the anniversary of his victory over the Scots at Dunbar.

#### § 4. *The Protectorate.*

##### *Oliver Cromwell.*

*Born* A.D. 1599; *Protector* 5 years (1653–1658).

##### *Richard Cromwell.*

*Born* A.D. 1626; *Protector* 7 months (Sept., 1658–April, 1659); *Died* A.D. 1712.

##### *The Commonwealth restored.*

(April, 1659–May, 1660.)

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXVII.

A.D.  
1653. CROMWELL Protector of the Commonwealth of England.—Establishment of a standing army of 20,000

A.D.

- foot and 10,000 horse.—Several naval victories over the Dutch.—Van Tromp killed (July 31).
- 1654.** Peace concluded with Holland (April 5).—The Protector summons a new Parliament (Sept. 4).—Lenthall chosen Speaker.—Cromwell's title and authority discussed.
- 1655.** Parliament dismissed (Jan. 31).—The Royalists attempt an insurrection.—**England divided into eleven military jurisdictions**, each under a major-general with absolute powers.—Charles withdraws from Paris to Cologne.—Cromwell equips two armaments at Portsmouth.—Blake proceeds to the Mediterranean, and destroys the fleets of the Deys of Algiers and Tunis.—**Admiral Penn** sails to the West Indies, and captures **Jamaica**.
- 1656.** Spain declares war against England.—Capture of Spanish treasure ships off Portugal (Sept.)—Scotland governed by a council consisting mostly of English.—Fleetwood rules in Ireland with much harshness.—A packed Parliament assembled (Sept. 17).
- 1657.** Cromwell aspires to the crown.—The *humble petition and advice* voted.—Cromwell obliged to refuse the offer of the crown (May 8).—The Protector has the power of nominating his successor conferred upon him.—He is also empowered to create a second legislative assembly.—Blake destroys the Spanish fleet in the harbour of Santa Cruz (April 20).
- 1658.** Parliament re-assembled (Jan. 20).—Cromwell fails in his attempt to create a House of Peers, and dissolves Parliament (Feb. 4).—**Capture of Dunkirk** (June 4).—Discovery of a Royalist conspiracy.—Disaffection in the army.—**Death of Cromwell** (Sept. 3).—**The succession of Richard Cromwell** recognised by the Council.
- 1659.** A new Parliament assembled (Jan. 29).—The country distracted by factions and cabals.—A council of officers called.—Parliament dissolved (April 22).—**The Protector resigns** soon afterwards.—The council of officers resolve upon restoring the Long Parliament.—The Presbyterians and Royalists unite in an attempt to overthrow the Rump Parliament.—Sir George Booth routed by Lambert.—The Rump is dismissed (Oct. 23).—**A Committee of Safety** elected.—**General Monk** advances from Scotland with his army.
- 1660.** Monk enters London (Feb. 3).—Parliament, including the expelled members, re-assembled.—**The Long**

A.D.

Parliament issues writs for summoning a new Parliament, and is finally dissolved (March 16).—The elections for the new Parliament are everywhere in favour of the king's party.—**THE CONVENTION PARLIAMENT** meets (April 25).—A motion made for the king's restoration (April 27).—Charles's letter to the House received (May 1).—**CHARLES II. PROCLAIMED** at Temple Bar (May 8).—The king enters London (May 29).

---

## READING LESSON XXIX.

### GENERAL MONK.

The person who was mainly instrumental in bringing about the restoration of King Charles II., and putting an end to the civil war, was George Monk, the second son of an ancient and honourable, but decayed, family of Devonshire. He adopted the profession of arms in early youth, and, at the commencement of the reign of Charles I., accompanied the unfortunate expeditions of Sir Edward Cecil and the Duke of Buckingham against Cadiz and the island of Rhé, in the years 1626 and 1627. Upon the conclusion of peace with France and Spain, in 1629, Monk's passion for warlike enterprise induced him to enter the service of the States of Holland. Here he greatly distinguished himself, and gained that experience in military affairs which proved of such service to him in the course of the civil strife that was soon to desolate his own country.

When the sound of war was first heard in this island, Monk returned to England ; and, in 1639, he took part in the expedition of Charles I. against the Scottish Covenanters. Upon the pacification of Scotland, he was employed against the Irish rebels. In this war, his coolness and daring, as well as his military skill, soon brought him into notice, and obtained for him the command of a regiment.

For some time after the outbreak of hostilities between Charles and his Parliament, Monk remained an adherent of the royalist cause. He accompanied the Irish forces when they were summoned to the support of their sovereign in England; and fought at the head of his regiment when the Irish contingent was attacked by Fairfax at Nantwich (Jan. 25, 1644). Monk was taken prisoner in this engagement, and sent to the Tower, where he was kept in close confinement for nearly two years. Several attempts were made by the Parliament to induce him to take a command in their army, but without avail. When, however, the Royalists were entirely subdued, he was, by the invitation of Cromwell, persuaded to engage in the campaigns against the Irish, who were regarded as rebels both by king and Parliament.

From this time his interests became identified with those of the Commons; for, having once obeyed the orders of the Long Parliament, the circumstances of the time soon brought him into contact with the Royalists under Ormond in Ireland, as well as with those under the young king, Charles II., in Scotland.

After the Battle of Dunbar (Sept. 3, 1650), and the subsequent invasion of England by the Scottish Presbyterians; Monk was left by Cromwell in supreme command in the northern kingdom; which, upon its complete subjugation, he governed with such ability and justice, that contentment and order were once more restored to that turbulent country. His popularity with the officers and soldiery under his command had always been considerable, and this he now strove to increase by every means in his power, foreseeing that occasion might arise when the goodwill of the army would be of great service to him.

Monk was retained in his command throughout the Protectorate of Cromwell, whose high opinion of him as a military leader more than outweighed any sus-



picion that he may have entertained of his secret attachment to the cause of the exiled Stuarts. That some doubt, however, of his sincerity did exist in the mind of Cromwell, is apparent from a letter addressed to Monk, in which the Protector says:—"There be that tell me there is a cunning fellow in Scotland, called George Monk, who is lying in wait there to introduce Charles Stuart. I pray you use your diligence to apprehend him and send him up to me."

After the death of Cromwell and the resignation of his son Richard, Monk declared in favour of the Parliament whose members had been expelled by Fleetwood, Lambert, and the other commanders in England. Collecting his forces, he crossed the Tweed (Jan. 1, 1660), and advanced upon London, which he entered without opposition on the 3rd of February. Three days afterwards, Monk was introduced to the House (which had resumed its sittings upon the approach of the army of the north), and received from the Speaker, Lenthal, the thanks of the Commons for the eminent services he had rendered to his country. The Parliament, having renewed Monk's commission, then voted its own dissolution, and issued writs for the election of a new assembly.

Upon the meeting of the new, or Convention Parliament, as it was called, a motion was introduced for the restoration of the king; and on the 8th of May, the two Houses attended while the king was solemnly proclaimed at Palace Yard, Westminster, and at Temple Bar. The king himself was met at Dover by General Monk, and escorted to London amid the general rejoicings of the people.

Thus, in a very short space of time, and without further effusion of blood, the prudence and skill of one man brought about the restoration of the monarchy in England, and effected the peaceable settlement of the three kingdoms, long torn with the most



violent convulsions. In reward for his services, Monk was elevated by Charles II. to the peerage, under the title of Duke of Albemarle,\* and was ever treated by the king with great marks of distinction.

Although a man of solid capacity, Albemarle was not fitted by nature to shine in a court like that of Charles II. We do not therefore find him taking any prominent part in the politics of the early part of this reign. He retained, however, his warlike tastes, and greatly distinguished himself in the succeeding naval conflicts with the Dutch, especially in those of the year 1666, when, in conjunction with Prince Rupert, he held the command of the English fleets.

He died at Newhall, in Essex, on the 3rd of January, 1670, after a languishing illness, and in the 63rd year of his age.

It is worthy of note, that when Charles II. disbanded the army of the Commonwealth, he retained the services of Monk's own regiment:—the Coldstream Guards—which thus became the nucleus of the present standing army of England.

---

\* This title became extinct upon the death of the second duke, in 1688. The present Earl of Albemarle is descended from Admiral Keppel, who was created earl in 1696.



§ 5. *The Restoration. Charles II.**Born* A.D. 1629; *Reigned* 25 years (1660-1685).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XXXVIII.

A.D.

1660. A Council of State formed of the most eminent Royalists and Presbyterians.—General Monk created Duke of Albemarle; and Admiral Montague, Earl of Sandwich.—Sir Edward Hyde (now Earl of Clarendon) made Prime Minister.—Execution of the regicides.—Wardships and purveyance abolished.—Excise duties established.—Tonnage and poundage granted to the king for life.—The Convention Parliament dissolved (Dec. 29).—The army disbanded.
1661. The Drunken Parliament at Edinburgh.—Argyle tried and executed.—Sharpe made Archbishop of St. Andrews.—Episcopacy restored in Scotland.—A Conference held in the Savoy.—A new Parliament assembled in May.—The Covenant ordered to be burnt by the common hangman.—The bishops restored to their seats in Parliament.—The Corporation Act passed.
1662. The Act of Uniformity receives the Royal Assent (May 19), and comes into operation on St. Bartholomew's Day (Aug. 24).—The king's marriage with Catherine of Braganza at Portsmouth (May 21).—Tangiers in Africa, and Bombay, in the East Indies, come into the possession of England.—Trial of Lambert and Vane (June 2).—Vane executed (June 14), Lambert pardoned.—2,000 clergy resign their cures (Aug. 24).—Dunkirk sold to the French king.
1664. The Triennial Act repealed.—Passing of the Venticle Act.—The Commons complain of the Dutch outrages upon English trade.
1665. War with Holland declared (Feb. 22).—The Dutch defeated off Suffolk.—The Great Plague of London.—Parliament meets at Oxford.—The Five Mile Act.
1666. Great naval action with the Dutch off the mouth of the Thames (June 1-4); each side claims the victory.—The Dutch fleet under De Ruyter defeated by Prince Rupert and Albemarle (July 25).—The Great Fire of London (Sept. 2-5).—The Dutch appear in the Thames and Medway, and burn the English shipping.

A.D.

1667. **Peace concluded with Holland by Treaty of Breda** (July 10).—**New York** acquired during this war.—Unpopularity of the Clarendon ministry.—Fall and banishment of Clarendon.—Formation of the **Cabal ministry**.—Louis XIV. invades the Netherlands.
1668. **The Triple Alliance** (England, Holland, and Sweden) against France (Jan. 13).—The French give way, and a treaty is concluded at **Aix-la-Chapelle**.
1670. **A secret treaty between France and England** signed at Dover (May 22).—Charles becomes the pensioner of Louis XIV.—Passing of the **second Conventicle Act**.—Immunity of juries from fines in respect to their verdicts.—Col. Blood attempts the life of Ormond (Dec. 6).
1672. Charles adopts unconstitutional means for raising supplies.—**War with Holland** commenced (Mar. 17).—De Ruyter attacks the English fleet off Suffolk, and is defeated (May 28).—**The French overrun Holland**. The Dutch rally under the leadership of **William, the young Prince of Orange** (afterwards William III. of England).—Assassination of the De Witts (Aug. 4).
1673. Parliament assembles after a prorogation of two years.—A remonstrance framed against the illegal exercise of the royal prerogative.—Passing of the **Test Act**.—Unpopularity of the alliance with France.—The standing army voted a grievance.—Parliament prorogued (Nov. 4).
1674. **Fall of the Cabal ministry**.—Re-assembling of Parliament.—**Treaty with the Dutch** (Feb. 9).
1675. Danby, Prime Minister.—An attempt is made to carry a bill declaring it unlawful to take up arms against the king upon any pretence whatever.
1677. **Marriage of William, Prince of Orange, to Mary**, daughter of the Duke of York (Nov. 4).
1678. **Treaty of Nimeguen**.

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE XXXIX.

1678. **The Popish Plot** invented by Titus Oates.—Assembly of Parliament (Oct. 21).—The **Parliamentary Test Act** passed.—Popular excitement occasioned by the pretended revelations of Oates and other informers.—The queen accused of conspiring against her husband's life.

A.D.

- 1679.** Discovery of secret intrigues with the court of France.—Danby, the Prime Minister, impeached.—Charles dissolves the Parliament (Jan. 24).—Trial and execution of several of the alleged conspirators.—The Duke of York retires to Brussels.—Meeting of a new Parliament (Mar. 6).—Dispute with the king concerning the election of a speaker.—The impeachment of Danby renewed.—Danby absconds, but afterwards surrenders and is committed to the Tower.—**The Habeas Corpus Act** receives the royal assent.—A new Privy Council chosen.—Shaftesbury becomes President.—**The Exclusion Bill** carried in the Commons.—Parliament dissolved (May 27).—**Murder of Archbishop Sharpe**, the primate of Scotland.—Claverhouse repulsed by some Covenanters at Drumclog.—**Monmouth disperses the Covenanters at Bothwell Bridge** (June 22).—The Duke of York returns to England, and is sent as High Commissioner to Scotland.—Shaftesbury dismissed from the presidency of the Council.—**The Meal-tub Plot**.—A new Parliament is elected, but is prorogued before its assembly.—The *petitioners* and *abhorrrers*.—Origin of the terms WHIG and TORY.
- 1680.** The king opens Parliament (Oct. 21).—The informers are rewarded.—**The Exclusion Bill** again introduced.—It is thrown out by the Lords.—Execution of Stafford upon the false evidence of Oates and others (Dec. 29).
- 1681.** Parliament dissolved (Jan. 10).—A new Parliament is assembled at Oxford (Mar. 21), but is dissolved after a tumultuous sitting of only seven days.—Shaftesbury committed to prison on a charge of treason.—He is acquitted (Nov. 24).—The Earl of Argyle condemned for treason.—He escapes to Holland.—Illness of the king.—Monmouth, Russell, Shaftesbury, and others conspire to oppose the succession of the Duke of York.
- 1682.** Shaftesbury retires into Holland.
- 1683.** **The Rye-house Plot** discovered.—Monmouth escapes.—Russell committed to the Tower.—Several of the conspirators taken and executed.—Russell tried and beheaded (July 21).—**Execution of Algernon Sidney** (Dec. 7).
- 1685.** Death of Charles II. (Feb. 2).



## READING LESSON XXX.

## THE LEGISLATIVE ENACTMENTS OF CHARLES II.

The first Parliament of the Restoration, or, as it is more commonly known, the *First Convention Parliament*—from its having been summoned informally—was mainly occupied with questions regarding, (1) the pardon of all who had taken part against the Crown in the late disturbances, excepting those who were immediately concerned in the death of King Charles; (2) the abolition of the feudal tenure of knight's service, with all its incidents, such as marriage, relief, and wardship; and (3) the re-establishment of the Church. This Parliament was dissolved by the king towards the close of the year 1660; and writs were soon afterwards issued for the election of a new Parliament, which assembled in the month of May in the following year. From the venality of the majority of its members, this Parliament has received the name of the *Pension Parliament*. It was at first essentially royalist in its character; but, during its long existence of nearly eighteen years, it underwent many political changes, and was at length dissolved (Jan. 1679) for its violent opposition to the court party.

Among the earlier measures of this Parliament, the most important were those which are included in what is generally known as the CLARENDON CODE—so called after Lord Clarendon, the chief adviser and Prime Minister of Charles II. It consisted mainly of the four following legislative enactments: viz., the Corporation Act, which was passed in 1661: the Act of Uniformity, in 1662: the Conventicle Act, in 1664: and the Five Mile Act, in 1665.

THE CORPORATION ACT.—This was partly applicable to religious, and partly to political affairs. By it all officers of corporate bodies were required, within one year before their election, to have taken the Sacrament



in accordance with the rites of the Church of England ; and, upon election, to take the oaths of allegiance and of supremacy, to sign a declaration against the Solemn League and Covenant, and to swear that they believed it unlawful to take up arms against the king upon any pretence whatever. The Corporation Oath of *non-resistance*—as it was called—was abolished at the accession of the House of Hanover, by “an Act for Quieting and Establishing Corporations” (5 Geo. I., cap. 6) ; though it most probably had become a dead letter by the time of the Revolution, in 1688.

THE ACT OF UNIFORMITY.—By this Act all clergymen, who had not previously received episcopal ordination, were required to be re-ordained. They were obliged, moreover, to give their assent to everything contained in the Book of Common Prayer, to take the oath of canonical obedience, to abjure the Covenant, and to take the oath of *non-resistance*. The Act received the royal assent on May 19, 1662, and was ordered to come into operation on St. Bartholomew’s Day (Aug. 24), upon which day more than 2,000 clergymen resigned their benefices, rather than conform to the terms of the Act, and thus sacrificed their interests to their religious scruples.

THE CONVENTICLE ACT.—This Act—dictated by the same spirit of intolerance—was passed during the session of 1664. It forbade all unauthorised religious assemblies, and enacted that, wherever five persons, above those of the same household, should meet together for religious worship, otherwise than in accordance with the Book of Common Prayer, every one of them was liable to a penalty of three months imprisonment or a fine of £5 for the first offence, of six months or a fine of £10 for the second, and of transportation for seven years or a fine of £100 for the third.

A second Conventicle Act was passed, in 1670,

renewing the one just mentioned, which had been only of a temporary nature.

**THE FIVE MILE ACT.**—This was an Act passed in 1665, by which all persons in holy orders, who had not subscribed to the declaration required by the Act of Uniformity, were forbidden to come within five miles of any corporate town, or of any place, where they had formerly ministered, under a penalty of a fine of £40 and six months' imprisonment. By this Act the non-conforming clergy, who had been ejected from their livings under the Act of Uniformity, and who had been rendered incapable of gaining any livelihood by their spiritual profession, through the operation of the Conventicle Act, were now deprived of all means of subsistence, by their compulsory removal from the places where their influence was supposed to be dangerous to the interests of the Established Church.

The other important enactments of this reign were the Test Act, which was passed in 1673; an act for a Parliamentary Test, in 1678, and the Habeas Corpus Act, in 1679.

**THE TEST ACT** was directed mainly against the Roman Catholics, and had for its object their exclusion from all political power. It required all persons holding any office—whether civil or military—to take the oaths of allegiance and supremacy, to receive the Sacrament according to the usage of the Church of England, and to abjure the doctrine of transubstantiation. In consequence of this Act, the Duke of York was obliged to resign all his commands—he having been for some time in open communion with the Church of Rome. Some attempt was made to relieve the Nonconformists from the operation of the Act, but without avail, as Parliament was prorogued before the resolution to this effect could be put to the vote.

Five years afterwards, in 1678, the PARLIAMENTARY TEST ACT passed the House of Commons without much opposition. By this bill no peer or member of parliament could sit or vote without subscribing to a declaration, repudiating the doctrine of transubstantiation, the adoration of the Virgin and the sacrifice of the Mass. Its passage through the Upper House met with but little more opposition than it had done in the Lower—the Duke of York obtaining an exception in his favour by a majority of only two voices. These two Bills remained in force till the reign of George IV., when Roman Catholics were relieved of their disabilities by the Catholic Emancipation Act of April 10, 1830.

THE HABEAS CORPUS ACT. — This celebrated statute, which ranks in importance next to Magna Charta itself, had for its object the protection of the subject from arbitrary and illegal imprisonment. It did not introduce any new principle, but only rendered more available a privilege which had been secured by Magna Charta, and renewed and extended by the Petition of Right. The Bill provided for the speedy trial of a prisoner after his arrest; it prohibited his transportation to a prison beyond the sea; it ordered all judges, under a severe penalty, not to refuse the request of a prisoner for a writ of *habeas corpus*, by which the gaoler was directed to produce the body of his prisoner in court, and to certify the cause of his detention in prison; and it enacted that no prisoner after being released by order of the court should be liable to recommittal for the same offence.



§ 6. *James II.*

*Born* A.D. 1633; *Died* 1701; *Reigned* 3 years (1685–1688); *Interregnum*, 1688–1689.

## MEMORY EXERCISE XL.

A.D.

- 1685, **Accession of James II.**—The new king makes profession of his intention to maintain the established government in Church and State.—His arbitrary proceedings.—**Coronation of the king and queen** (April 23).—Opening of Parliament (May).—Oates convicted of perjury, publicly whipped, and pilloried.—**Insurrection of Monmouth.**—The rebels defeated at **Sedgmoor**, near Bridgwater (July 6);—Monmouth taken prisoner, condemned, and executed (July 15).—**Judge Jeffrey's campaign.**—The king declares his intention to maintain a standing army and to dispense with the tests (Nov. 9).—**Revocation by Louis XIV. of the Edict of Nantes.**—50,000 Protestant refugees pass over to England.—James attempts to restore Roman Catholicism.—Roman Catholics are raised to office.—The king assumes the dispensing power.
1686. Establishment of an Ecclesiastical Commission on the model of the old High Commission (July 14).—The Earl of Castlemaine sent as ambassador to the Pope.—The Papal Nuncio received at Windsor.—The charters of the principal towns annulled.
1687. James attempts to force Roman Catholic professors upon the Universities.
1688. **A declaration of indulgences ordered to be publicly read in the churches** (April).—Petition of Sancroft, the primate, and six other bishops against the declaration.—**The bishops are committed to the Tower.**—**Their trial and acquittal** (June 30).—Birth of a Prince of Wales (June 10).—**The Prince of Orange** receives invitations from most of the chief men in England to assist them in restoring the just laws and liberties of the country.—**William lands at Torbay** (Nov. 5).—Desertion of James's officers.—The Prince of Orange marches upon London.—James attempts to escape to France (Dec. 11), but is captured at Feversham and brought back to London.—He is allowed to retire to Rochester, from whence he embarks for France (Dec. 23).



A.D.

**1689. THE SECOND CONVENTION PARLIAMENT** assembled (Jan. 23).—James is declared to have *abdicated* the government.—**The Crown is settled on William and Mary.**—**The DECLARATION OF RIGHTS** is annexed to this settlement of the Crown. **William and Mary proclaimed** (Feb. 23).

---

## READING LESSON XXXI.

## REVIEW OF THE STUART DYNASTY.

With the settlement of the crown upon the Prince and Princess of Orange, the struggle between sovereign and people, which had lasted, with but little intermission of the strife, from the days of the early Plantagenets, was at length decided. The circumstances of the time had enabled the Tudor sovereigns, in many instances, to stretch the bounds of the royal prerogative, and to triumph over the legislature of the country; but even they had a wholesome dread of public opinion, and knew how to recede with a good grace from any position which they discovered to be untenable. The Stuarts, however, went beyond this; and adopting the theory of the Divine Right of kings, endeavoured to inculcate in their subjects the doctrine of passive obedience to the sovereign in all things. Such maxims as these began now to be questioned by a large party in the state; and—but for the natural timidity of James, which obliged him to withdraw his pretensions upon any show of opposition on the part of his Parliament—the contest, which afterwards resulted in the temporary overthrow of the monarchy, would have begun with the accession of the Stuarts. The good sense and natural indolence of Charles II. enabled him to avoid the renewal of the struggle, which had proved so fatal to his father, and which eventually was to



occasion the deposition and exile of his brother James II.

The period of the Stuarts furnishes the student with abundant materials for the study of the constitutional and parliamentary history of our country. The two opposing theories of the divine right of kings, and the right of the people to self-government, met with able supporters in the great writers of the time—Milton, Sidney, and Locke, being among the ablest of the advocates of the popular view, and the philosopher, and profound thinker, Hobbs, being as strongly enlisted in favour of the opposite doctrine.

The reigns of the first four Stuarts present little of interest in regard to foreign affairs. The constitutional dread of warfare, which was ever manifested by James I., prevented his taking any active part in the politics of the Continent, even when the ties of family interests, and his position as the first Protestant prince in Europe, rendered such interference obligatory on his part; so that instead of the united kingdoms, upon the accession of James, being able to maintain that position among European states, which had been secured by the policy of Elizabeth, our country—to use the words of Macaulay—“descended from the rank she had hitherto held, and began to be regarded as a power hardly of the second order.” The domestic disturbances of the succeeding reign diverted the attention of the English from continental affairs; and the unsuccessful attempt at interference in behalf of the Huguenots, which was made under Buckingham, served only to bring the English arms into greater contempt. Under the administration of Cromwell, the renown of the English name was for a time revived; but under Charles II.—a monarch who stooped to become the pensioner of France—the influence of England in the councils of Europe was reduced to the lowest ebb.

In spite, however, of dishonour abroad and disturbances at home, the country slowly, but steadily, increased in wealth, power, and civilization. At the close of the reign of Charles II. the population of England numbered about five millions and a quarter—the increase being chiefly in the counties south of the river Trent. Those to the north, which were destined in a succeeding age, through the development of the coal-fields of that region, to become the great centres of industrial enterprise, were, as yet, but sparsely peopled.

The means of internal communication were still very imperfect ; canals did not exist ; and what roads there were were wretched in the extreme, and infested with highwaymen. Some attempt was made at improvement in the reign of Charles II., by the establishment of turnpikes and a postal system ; but it was not till George II.'s time that any visible progress in this respect became apparent.

A comparison between the revenues of the crown at the accessions of James I. and II., respectively, will show the improvement which was made, in the interim, in the trade and resources of the country. The annual revenue of James I., arising chiefly from crown lands and feudal rights, amounted to about £450,000 : that of James II.—even after the abolition of feudal tenures—to nearly two millions sterling. The customs, moreover, which in the reign of James I. realised less than £190,000, under the Commonwealth amounted to at least half-a-million sterling—a sum ten times greater than during the most flourishing period of Elizabeth's reign.

With this increase of revenue came also a greatly increased expenditure, necessitated by the maintenance of large military and naval forces. A regular standing army in time of peace was first kept by the Commonwealth. Charles II. had a few regiments of

guards ; but James II. maintained a regular force of about 20,000 men. The same sovereigns also added largely to the English navy, which at the time of the Revolution consisted of a fleet of 173 vessels, manned by a force of about 42,000 seamen.

Intimately connected also with this increase in revenue was the corresponding increase in the commercial transactions of the country. Colonies were planted in America ; the trade with the East Indies began to flourish ; Greenland was discovered, and the whale fishery commenced. The Dutch wars, by disturbing the trade of that republic, had the effect of increasing the commerce of England : while the persecution of the Puritans and the intolerance of the Church party in the state, by driving many into exile, did but add to the importance of the nation in her colonial dependencies, and therefore to her commercial prosperity. During the interval between the Restoration and the Revolution—a period of only twenty-eight years—the shipping of England is said to have been more than doubled. Manufactures also increased in value ; several new ones were introduced, especially that of silk, which was brought over and established in this country by French Protestant refugees, who were driven from their country after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes.

The manners of the nation underwent great changes during this period. Under the first two Stuarts they were marked by great religious austerity, which developed, under the Commonwealth, into a gloomy enthusiasm, and gave birth to many religious sects—the most remarkable of which was that of the Quakers, founded by George Fox, in the reign of Charles I. The restoration brought with it a complete reaction from the strictness of the Puritan rule, and the manners of the people became distinguished by their profligacy and shamelessness.

The early part of the Stuart Period was famous for its literary celebrities ; Shakspeare, Lord Bacon, Ben Jonson, and Raleigh, all flourished under James I. The turbulent era which followed was not favourable to literature. Milton is the only great writer belonging to the period of the Commonwealth ; and his noblest works were produced after the monarchy had been restored. The writers who flourished after the Restoration were more numerous, if not so distinguished ; and to them belongs the merit of having moulded our language, and especially its prose, into its present form. The dramatic writings of the time were, however, too frequently marred by their indecency, ribaldry, and profanity.

Art was encouraged by Charles I. ; but no native school of either painting or sculpture was as yet formed—most of the artists employed, as Vandyke, Verrio, Kneller, and Lily, being foreigners ; Inigo Jones and Sir Christopher Wren, were, however, Englishmen, and eminent in art as architects.

The era of the Stuarts is great in the names of its philosophers. Among these stand pre-eminently those of Bacon, Hobbes, Locke, Boyle, Newton, and Harvey, the discoverer of the circulation of blood. The Royal Society for the encouragement of scientific discovery was founded in the early part of Charles II.'s reign, and incorporated by royal charter in 1662.





### § 7. *William III. and Mary II.*

*William, born A.D. 1650; Reigned 14 years (1688-1702). Mary, died A.D. 1694.*

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XLI.

A. D.

- 1689.** A bill passed to declare the Convention a legal Parliament (Feb. 23).—Moderate supplies voted.—William loses his popularity.—Passing of the Mutiny Bill.—The army placed under martial law.—Resignation of the primate, Sancroft, and eight other bishops.—The Nonjurors.—**William and Mary crowned at Westminster Abbey** by Compton, bishop of London (April 11).—**The Toleration Act** passed (May 24).—Insurrection of Dundee in the Highlands.—Dundee killed at **Killiecrankie** (July 27).—Scotland reduced to obedience.—Ireland still governed by Tyrconnel.—**James II. lands at Kinsale** (Mar. 12).—**Siege of Londonderry**.—The city is relieved and the siege raised (Aug. 1).—William's forces, under Schomberg, land on the coast of Down (Aug. 12).—The Bill of Rights, the third great charter of English freedom, becomes law during this year.
- 1690.** **The Convention Parliament dissolved** (Feb. 6).—A new Parliament assembles (March) and votes a supply for the war in Ireland.—William lands at Carrickfergus (June 14).—**Battle of the Boyne** (July 1).—James embarks at Kinsale, and reaches Brest (July 9).—Wexford, Clonmel, Waterford, and Duncannon taken, and **Limerick besieged** (Aug. ).—William leaves for London (Sept.)—Marlborough lands at Cork with 5,000 men and takes Kinsale.—**The Dutch and English fleets, under Torrington, defeated by the French off Beachy Head** (June 30.) Sancroft and five other nonjuring bishops deprived (Feb. 1.)
- 1691.** The campaign in Ireland brought to a close.—**Pacification of Limerick** (Oct. 3).—12,000 Irish enter the service of Louis XIV.—William returns from Holland, where he had been conducting a campaign against Louis, to open Parliament (Oct).—**Pacification of the Highland clans** (Dec. 31).

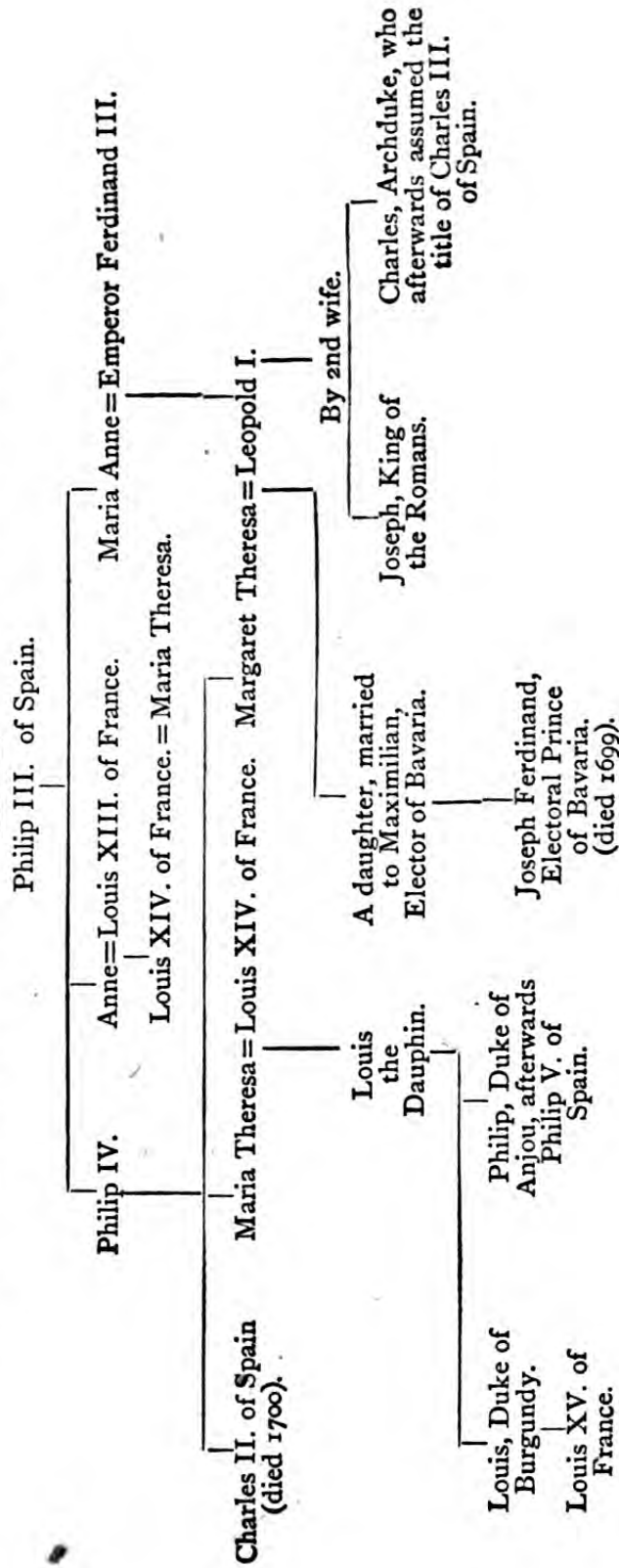


- A. D.
1692. **Massacre of Glencoe** (Feb. 13).—William visits Holland, leaving Mary to administer the government.—A conspiracy for the restoration of James II. discovered.—Marlborough and others sent to the Tower.—**The Battle of La Hogue** (May 19).—William defeated in an attempt to raise the siege of Namur.
1693. The French, under Tourville, attack and capture a great part of the Smyrna fleet.
1694. Bristol, Exeter, and Boston, declare for James II. Intrigues entered into for his restoration.—A triennial bill passed (Nov.).—**Death of Queen Mary** (Dec. 28).
1695. The censorship of the press abolished.—Several newspapers started.—The law of treason reformed.—The king visits Holland, and is present at the taking of Namur.
1696. Detection of a conspiracy against the life of the king.—A conference between the belligerent powers opened at Ryswick between Delft and the Hague (May 9).
1697. Sir John Fenwick beheaded on Tower Hill (Jun. 28).—**The Peace of Ryswick** signed (Sept. 10).
1698. William again visits Holland, and, while there, negotiates a treaty respecting the Spanish succession (Oct. 1).—Parliament meets (Dec.) and insists upon the reduction of the army, and the dismissal of the Dutch troops.
1700. **Second treaty of partition** signed at London (Feb. 21).—Death of Charles II. of Spain (Nov. 1).—**Regular establishment of a Cabinet.**
1701. Meeting of a new Parliament (Feb.).—**The Act of Settlement** passed.—Both houses express their disapproval of the partition treaties.—Several of the king's ministers impeached, but afterwards acquitted.—**Commencement of the WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.**—**The Grand Alliance** between the Emperor of Germany, England, and the States of Holland, signed (Sept. 7).—King James II. dies at St. Germain (Sept. 16).—Louis XIV. acknowledges James' son as king of Great Britain and Ireland.—**Preparations for war with France.**
1702. Death of William (Mar. 8).



## THE WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

### A GENEALOGICAL TABLE EXHIBITING THE DESCENT AND RELATIONSHIP OF THE RIVAL CLAIMANTS TO THE SPANISH CROWN.



§ 8. *Anne.*

*Born* A.D. 1664; *Reigned* 12 years (1702-1714).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XLII.

A. D.

1702. **Anne, Princess of Denmark, proclaimed Queen** (Mar. 8).—Crowned in Westminster Abbey (Mar. 23).—A Tory cabinet formed.—**Marlborough** made captain-general of the queen's forces.—**War declared against France and Spain** (May 4).—Marlborough commands the allied armies in Flanders.—He returns to England.—Receives the thanks of the Commons, and is created duke.
1703. **Savoy and Portugal join the Grand Alliance.**—The campaign, upon the whole, favourable to France.—England visited by a great storm (Nov. 26).
1704. **Battle of Blenheim** (Aug. 13).—A treaty concluded with the King of Prussia.—**Sir George Rooke captures Gibraltar.**
1705. The English fleet, under Sir Cloudesley Shovel, proceeds to the Spanish coast.—**Barcelona taken by the Earl of Peterborough.**—Charles III. acknowledged in Valencia and Catalonia.—The campaigns in Italy and Germany favourable to the French.
1706. Marlborough defeats the French, under Marshal Villeroy, at the **Battle of Ramillies** (May 23).—Majorca and Iviza reduced by the English fleet under Sir John Leake.
1707. The English and allies, under Galway, defeated at Almanza by the Duke of Berwick (April 14).—**LEGISLATIVE UNION OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND** (May 1).—**First United Parliament of Great Britain** (Oct. 23).
1708. **The Pretender makes an attempt upon England,** but his fleet is dispersed by Admiral Byng.—**Battle of Oudenarde** (July 11).—Admiral Leake takes Minorca.
1709. **Louis sues for peace.**—Conferences opened at the Hague.—The French agree that Philip shall relinquish the whole of the Spanish succession, excepting Naples and Sicily.—The allies refuse to accept these terms, and **hostilities recommence.**—Tournay taken.—The French defeated by Marlborough at **Malplaquet.**—Mons captured (Oct. 20).

A.D.

1710. **Negotiations for a peace** again opened (March).—The successes of the allies continue.—Trial of Dr. Sacheverell in Westminster Hall (Feb. 27).—Change of ministry.—Harley and St. John chief ministers (Aug. 8).
1711. Marlborough retains his command, and proceeds to Holland to conduct the campaign.—Harley created Earl of Oxford.—**The Schism Act.**—Marlborough is removed from office, and retires to Antwerp.
1712. **Conferences opened at Utrecht** (Jan. 18).—The Duke of Ormond commands the allied forces.
1713. **The Treaty of Utrecht** signed (Mar. 3).
1714. **Illness of the Queen.**—Quarrel between Oxford and Bolingbroke.—Oxford deprived of office.—**Death of Queen Anne** at Kensington (Aug. 1).

---

## READING LESSON XXXII.

### THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH.

John Churchill, afterwards the celebrated Duke of Marlborough, was the second son of Sir Winston Churchill, of Wootton Bassett, in Wiltshire, and was born at his mother's native place of Ashe, in the parish of Masbury, in Devonshire, on the 24th of June, 1650. He was introduced to court at an early age, and appointed page of honour to the Duke of York, who, observing in him a passion for military pursuits, obtained for him a commission in the King's Guards. Upon the accession of the duke as James II., Churchill was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-general, appointed to an office of importance in the new king's household, and employed as special ambassador to the Court of France, to notify his patron's accession to the throne of England. On the 14th of May, 1685, he was raised to the peerage under the title of Baron Churchill of Sandridge, in Herefordshire, and in the same year was instrumental in putting down the rebellion of the Duke of Mon-

mouth in the west. In spite, however, of all the favours conferred upon him by James, he was one of the first to desert his royal benefactor, and to go over to the party of the Prince of Orange. This defection of Churchill's was a great blow to the king; but a yet greater was in store for him. At the instigation of Lady Churchill, his daughter Anne withdrew herself from his protection; while her husband, Prince George of Denmark, with other persons of distinction, followed Churchill in his desertion to the party of the invaders.

As a reward for his services, Churchill was at once invested with high command in the army of the Prince of Orange, and shortly after the latter's accession to the throne, was created Earl of Marlborough. His attachment, however, to the new sovereign does not appear to have been sincere; for, in the year 1692, during the temporary absence of King William in Holland, we find Marlborough in secret correspondence with the exiled James, who—assisted by Louis XIV.—was preparing for an invasion of England. Information of the intrigue coming to the ears of the government, Marlborough was arrested and sent to the Tower. After a detention of some weeks, he was liberated—the evidence of his complicity in the plot being insufficient. He continued, however, to be regarded with suspicion throughout the remainder of William's reign.

Upon the accession of Queen Anne, Marlborough—who, through the influence of his wife, had retained the friendship of that princess—was invested with the order of the garter, and appointed to the chief command of the armies of England. The ascendancy which Lady Marlborough had obtained over the mind of the queen was so complete, that, for some years, she and her husband were the virtual rulers of the country. Shortly after the queen's accession, Marl-



borough was employed as ambassador extraordinary to the States of Holland; and, upon his return, war was, by his advice, declared against France and Spain (May 4, 1702).

It would occupy too much space to enter into a minute detail of the events of the campaigns of the war which now ensued, and in which Marlborough acquired such renown as a military leader. The war of the Spanish Succession, as it was called, was commenced with the view of checking the ambitious designs of Louis XIV., King of France, who was aiming at universal sovereignty in Europe. The contest was waged for a period of eleven years. Its chief theatre was the Netherlands, where most of Marlborough's great victories were gained.

The battle with which the fame of this great general is most intimately associated, was fought on the 13th of August, 1704, at the little village of Blenheim, on the banks of the Upper Danube in Germany. In this engagement the French loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was upwards of 40,000 men—Marshal Tallard, the French commander, and a hundred of his officers, being amongst the captured. For this great victory, which decided the fate of Germany, Marlborough received the formal congratulations and thanks of the Queen and both Houses of Parliament, and was rewarded with the manor of Woodstock, upon which a splendid mansion was erected for him at the expense of the nation, and named Blenheim Castle from the place of his victory. For his services in the campaign of the preceding year, Marlborough had been created a duke, and rewarded with a pension of £5000 a year.

Other important victories were gained by the duke in the succeeding campaigns of the war; viz., at Ramillies, over the French, under Marshal Villeroi (May 23, 1706); at Oudenarde (July 11, 1708), where the

electoral Prince of Hanover, afterwards George II., is said to have greatly distinguished himself; and at Malplaquet (Sept. 11, 1706), where Marshal Villars was routed after an obstinate contest, in which the allies lost 20,000 men.

The glory acquired by Marlborough in these campaigns was greatly tarnished by his mercenary practices and avaricious disposition, which lost him much of the popularity due to his military successes. Towards the close of the war his influence at court declined, and his duchess too was supplanted in the queen's affections by one Mrs. Masham, whom she had herself introduced to the notice of Anne. In the session of Parliament towards the close of the year 1711, Marlborough was accused of peculation in regard to the supplying of rations to the troops in the Netherlands, and dismissed by the queen from all his offices. The duke thereupon retired from England, and took up his residence at Antwerp. He returned to England upon the accession of George I., and was reinstated by that monarch in his old offices of captain-general and master of the ordinance; but his known predilection for the Stuart family was a bar to his being admitted to any share of the government. It is stated, indeed, that he secretly supplied the Pretender with funds, which probably assisted the rebellion of 1715. His later years seem to have been passed in complete seclusion from public affairs. He died, after a lingering illness, at the age of 73, June 16, 1722, and was buried with great pomp in Westminster Abbey. His duchess survived him, and died in 1744 worn out with age and infirmities.

“With the exception of being implicated in these (mercenary) practices, Marlborough was undoubtedly the greatest man of his age. He united in his own character in an eminent degree all the qualities which form a courtier, a soldier, and a statesman. His person

was lofty and well made ; his features manly yet beautiful ; his looks gracious and open ; his memory faithful and exact ; his penetration deep ; his judgment solid ; his courage undaunted. He knew the art of living in a court beyond any man in it. He caressed all people with a soft and obliging deportment, and was always ready to do good offices. He was ambitious, but free from haughtiness and ostentation. As a soldier, he was a man of the strictest honour—cool, vigilant, and indefatigable : on the day of battle he gave his orders with all the clearness and composedness imaginable—leading on his troops without hurry or perturbation, and rallying those who were disordered without abusive reproofs, which damp rather than animate the soldier's courage. As a statesman he managed a variety of business—either singly or in concert with the prime minister—with great dexterity, ease, and sufficiency. In council he was never supercilious or assuming, but could bear contradiction without passion, and, by cool argumentation, bring others over to his own opinion. To sum up the character of this great man : King William said of him that he had the *coolest* head and the *warmest* heart of any man he ever knew." \*

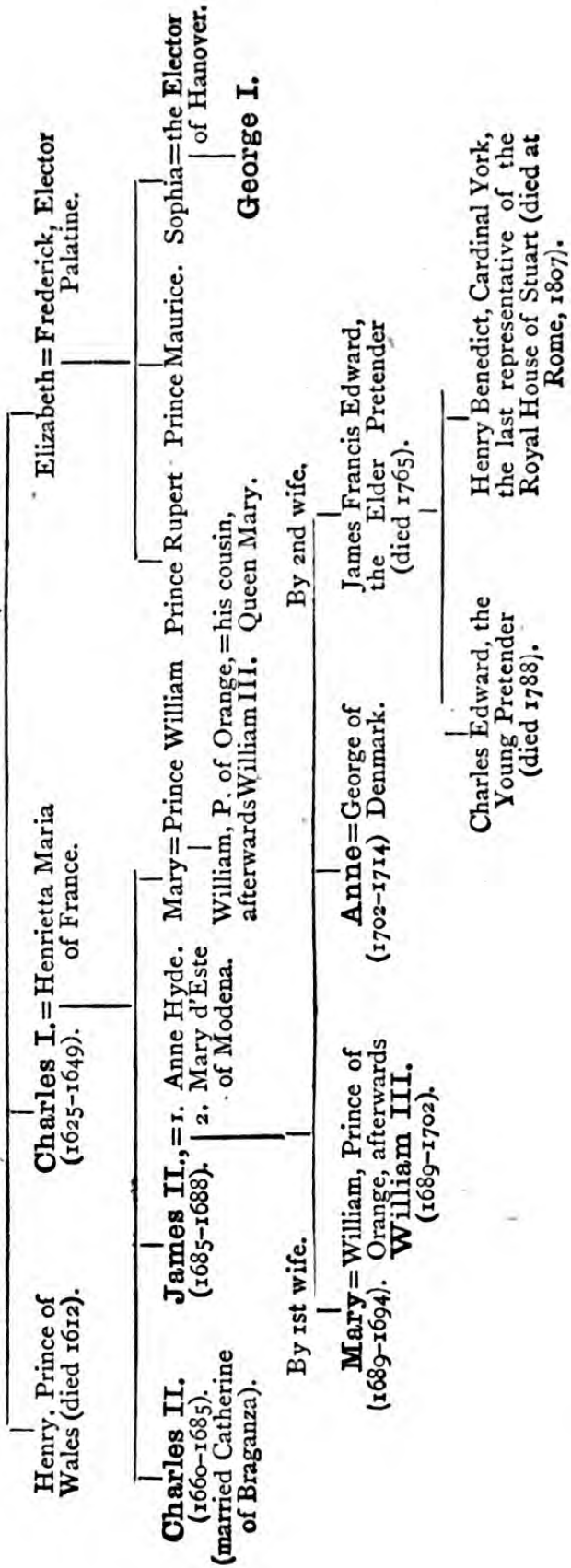
---

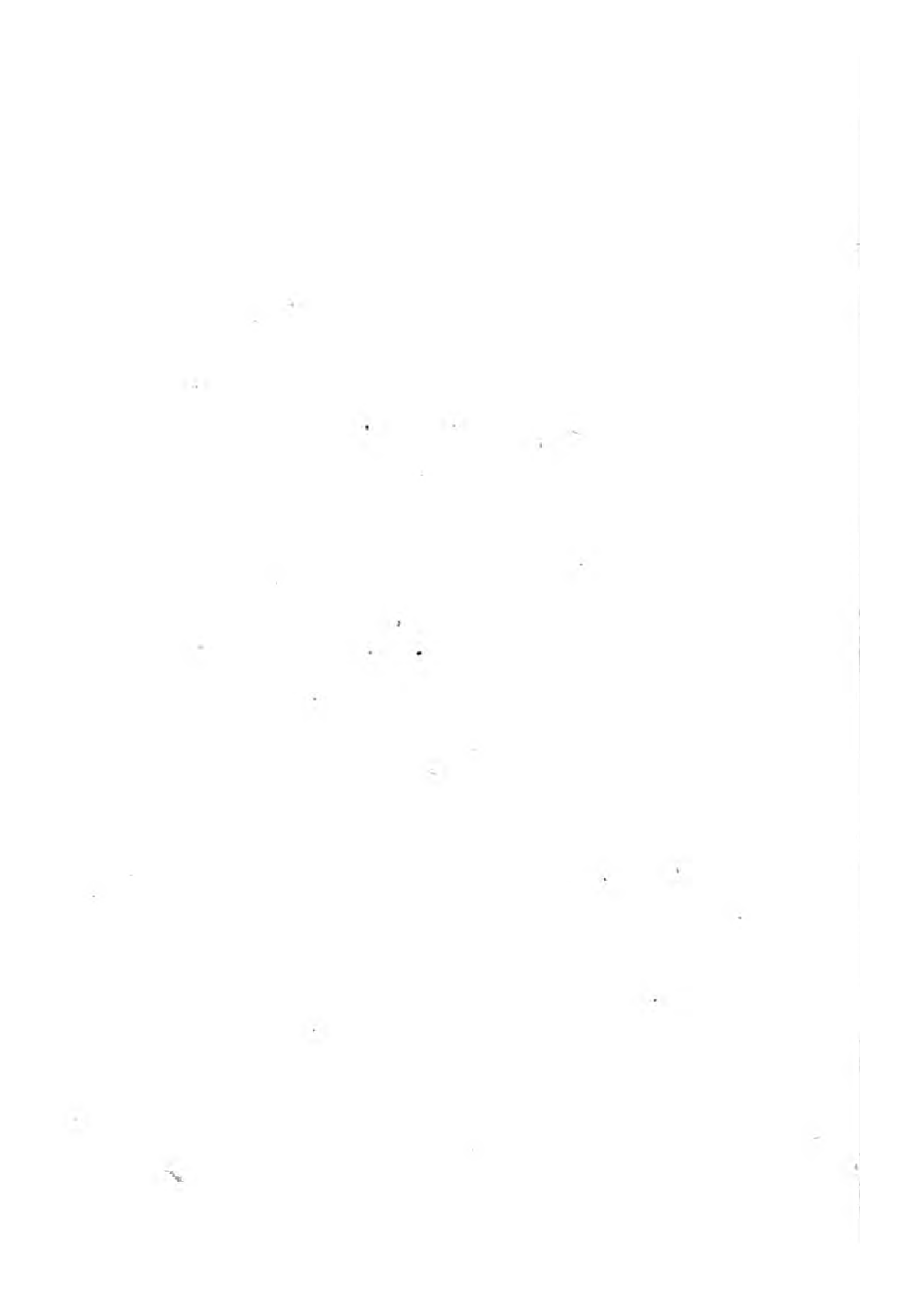
\* Kings of England, p. 184.



## GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF STUART.

**James I. (1603-1625) = Anne of Denmark.**  
 (Son of Mary, Queen of Scots, and Lord Darnley, and great-grand-son of Margaret, the daughter of Henry VII., married to James IV. of Scotland. *Vide* Genealogical Table, page 145).



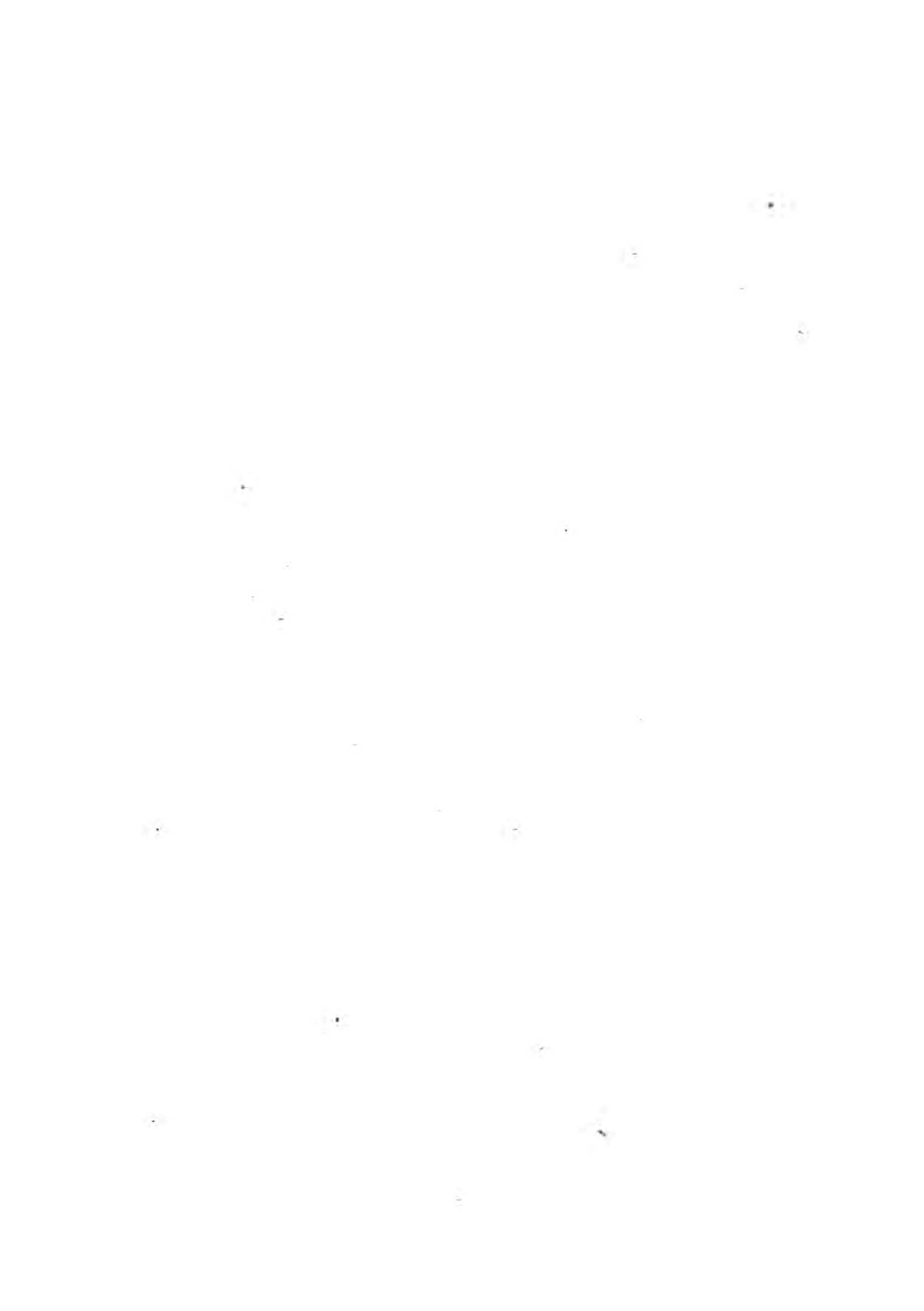




X.

The Brunswick Period.

FROM A.D. 1714.



X. THE BRUNSWICK PERIOD.

§ I. *George I.*

*Born* A.D. 1660; *Reigned* 13 years (1714-1727).

MEMORY EXERCISE XLIII.

A.D.

1714. Eighteen peers nominated, in accordance with the Regency Bill, to act as lords justices until the arrival of the new king.—**George I. lands at Greenwich** (Sept. 18.)—A Whig ministry appointed, with Lord Townshend as Prime Minister.—Marlborough reinstated in his old offices.—**The Chevalier de St. George** (the Pretender) publishes a manifesto, asserting his right to the throne.
1715. The king opens Parliament in person (March).—The members of the late ministry impeached.—Bolingbroke and Ormond flee to the continent.—Oxford sent to the Tower.—**Death of Louis XIV.** (Sept. 1).—**The Earl of Mar raises the standard of revolt in the Highlands** (Sept. 6), and enters Perth with 5,000 men (Sept. 28).—**Rising of the Jacobites** in the north of England under **Lord Derwentwater** and **Mr. Foster**.—The insurgents surrender at **Preston** (Nov. 13).—Argyle defeats Mar at **Sherriffmuir**, near Stirling, on the same day.—The Pretender lands in Scotland (Dec. 22).
1716. Public entry of the Pretender into Dundee (Jan. 6).—Perth evacuated by the rebels (Jan. 30).—The Pretender embarks again for France from Montrose (Feb. 4).—**Execution of the lords Derwentwater and Kenmuir** (Feb. 24).—Escape of Lord Nithsdale.—Repeal of the Triennial Act of 1694, and passing of the **Septennial Act**.—The king visits Hanover.—A treaty between England and France signed (Nov. 28).—General (afterwards Earl) Stanhope and the Earl of Sunderland, chief ministers of the crown.
1717. The Dutch become parties to the treaty (Jan. 4).—The Pretender obliged to leave France.—He lives thenceforward principally at Rome.—Addison becomes Secretary of State.

A.D.

1718. Stanhope proceeds to Paris, and concludes the **QUADRUPLE ALLIANCE** between England, Holland, France and Austria against Spain.—The Spaniards defeated by Admiral Byng off **Cape Passaro** (Aug. 11).
1719. The Pretender visits Spain.—The Jacobites, with the assistance of Spanish troops, attempt a rising in the Highlands. — The Highlanders disperse, and the Spaniards surrender as prisoners of war at Glenshiel.
1720. **Spain joins the Quadruple Alliance**.—Philip renounces his claim to the French crown, and agrees to surrender Sicily and Sardinia.—Walpole joins the English ministry.—The royal assent given to the South Sea Company's Bill.—Bursting of the **South Sea Bubble** (Sept.).
1721. Death of Stanhope.—**Walpole becomes Prime Minister**, which office he holds till 1742.—South Sea Company's directors punished.
1722. Death of the Duke of Marlborough (June 16).—A Jacobite plot discovered; Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, banished for his complicity therein.
1724. Tumults in Ireland, excited by the introduction of the coinage termed *Wood's half-pence*.—Riots also in Edinburgh and Glasgow, occasioned by the imposition of a new malt-tax, passed through the corruption of the Scotch members.
1725. Lord Chancellor Macclesfield found guilty of peculation, and fined £30,000.—George II. revives the **Order of the Bath**.—**Secret treaty between Austria and Spain**.—A defensive alliance between England, France, and Prussia, signed at Hanover (Sept. 3).
1726. **War declared against Spain**.—Porto Bello blockaded.
1727. The Spaniards make an unsuccessful attempt upon Gibraltar. The Dutch and Swedes join the treaty of Hanover.—Russia deserts Austria, and Austria then abandons Spain.—The preliminaries of peace signed at Paris (May 31).—King George dies of apoplexy at Osna-burg (July 10).



## READING LESSON XXXIII.

## THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

Towards the close of Queen Anne's reign an inquiry was instituted by the Commons into the debts which had been incurred by the nation during the long and expensive wars of William and Marlborough. The liabilities of the navy, with some other debts—amounting in all to upwards of nine millions sterling—were thrown into a fund, bearing interest at six per cent. till the principal should be discharged. The holders of this fund were then incorporated into an association,—afterwards known as the South Sea Company—and were granted the monopoly of a projected trade with the Spanish coasts of America. At this time it was anticipated that important concessions would be obtained through the treaty of commerce which was then on the point of being concluded with Spain ; but, upon the ratification of the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, the only privileges secured from that country were some trifling ones, included under what was called the *Asiento* contract, by which the company was to supply the Spanish West Indian settlements with negroes. They were also permitted to send one ship annually, of not more than 500 tons burden, to the coast of Peru, and to establish some factories there.

The company continued to flourish from these and other sources till the year 1719, when it entered into competition with the Bank of England for the purchase of the national debts and their consolidation into one fund. This scheme was projected by one of the directors of the South Sea Company, named Sir John Blunt,—a man of great boldness and plausibility—who succeeded in persuading the ministry that the plan would greatly increase the prosperity of the nation, while at the same time he was



not less successful in assuring the proprietors of South Sea stock that they would be greatly enriched. The offer of the company was accepted by the government; and, early in the session of 1720, a bill was introduced into Parliament to give effect to the scheme.

So great was the excitement which it occasioned, that, even while the affair was being discussed in the house, the shares in the company rose to nearly 400 per cent. Afterwards, when the bill had received the royal assent, and the company had formally opened their subscription lists for the purchase of the debts of the nation, their stock rose in value until, in August, it reached the enormous amount of 1040 per cent.

In order to keep up the excitement, the most extravagant stories of the wealth which was to accrue to investors in the company's stock, were invented and put into circulation. It was stated that Gibraltar was to be ceded in exchange for several places on the coast of Peru, and that treaties with Spain were to be signed, granting to England a free trade with all the Spanish colonies; by all which means the English trade to the South Sea would be protected and enlarged. By such acts as these, and by the promise of prodigious dividends upon investments, the South Sea stock was maintained for a time at the figure above quoted.

Taking advantage of the popular mania for speculation which now prevailed, other adventurers were soon in the field, and bubble companies rose on all sides. Many of the schemes thus projected were most chimerical; but so intoxicated were the people that they became a prey to the wildest delusions. Among some of the most absurd of the projects thus put forth were a fishery of wrecks on the Irish coast—a scheme for extracting oil from sun-flower seeds—

another to make salt water fresh—for importing walnut trees from Virginia—to extract silver from lead—for the importation of timber from Wales—for trading in human hair—for making iron from pit coal, and many others of a like description. Above a hundred such schemes were floated in the share market; and it was computed that the sums proposed to be raised in this way amounted to upwards of three hundred millions, or to more than the fee simple of all the lands in England. One obscure speculator published a prospectus, inviting subscriptions to a project the details of which he promised to reveal a month afterwards; but guaranteeing a hundred pound share in the undertaking to every depositor of two guineas. In one forenoon as many as 1000 shares were subscribed for, and in the evening of the same day this swindler decamped with the deposits of those whom he had thus duped.

The South Sea Company, by taking legal proceedings against some of these bubble companies, exposed the delusion which had taken possession of the public mind, but at the same time turned attention to its own affairs. Alarm being once excited, holders of the company's stock hastened to realise; and, by the end of September, the South Sea shares had fallen from 1000 to 300. The panic now became universal; thousands of families discovered that their investments were almost valueless, and that they had been reduced to beggary; and the bitterest anger was excited throughout the country against the projectors of the company and the ministry who had given them encouragement.

The subject was taken up by both houses of Parliament, and a secret committee was appointed to examine into the affairs of the company. It was then discovered that, in order to facilitate the passing of the bill of incorporation, several members

of the ministry and others had been bribed by the distribution among them of more than half a million of fictitious stock. Several members of Parliament who had taken part in these scandalous proceedings were expelled; and the estates of the directors of the company were confiscated and applied to the relief of those who had suffered through their delinquency. It was long, however, before the credit of the nation recovered from the shock which it had received; though much was done through the wise policy of Walpole, who now succeeded to power, to mitigate the distress which had been everywhere occasioned.

## § 2. *George II.*

*Born* A.D. 1683; *Reigned* 33 years (1727-1760).

### MEMORY EXERCISE XLIV.

- A.D.
1727. **Accession of George II.**—Walpole and the rest of the late king's ministers re-appointed.
1728. The king of Spain notifies his desire for peace.
1729. **The Treaty of Seville** concluded (Nov. 9).
1730. Quarrel between Walpole and Townshend; the latter resigns, and Walpole becomes supreme in the government.
1731. **Second Vienna Treaty** (see 1725).
1733. Introduction of **Walpole's Excise Scheme**; it is abandoned by the ministry on account of the violent opposition it excited.
1734. Commercial treaty with Russia.—Attempts are made, but without success, to repeal the Septennial Act.
1735. William Pitt enters Parliament as member for Old Sarum.
1736. Frederick Prince of Wales marries Augusta of Saxe Coburg.
1737. Quarrel between the king and his son.—Death of Queen Caroline (Nov. 20).—Public feeling is excited against Spain.—The fable of Jenkins's ears.—A fleet despatched to the Mediterranean.

A.D.

1739. A convention extorted from Spain (Jan. 14).—Rise to eminence in Parliament of **William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham**.—The Spaniards evade the convention.—**War declared against Spain** (Oct. 19).—Porto Bello, in the Isthmus of Darien, captured (Nov.).
1740. Commodore Anson despatched against Peru. (He returned in 1744, having completely circumnavigated the globe.)—A large naval and military force collected at Jamaica under Admiral Vernon and Lord Cathcart.—**Accession of Maria Theresa to the Austrian dominions**.—England takes her part against Frederick the Great of Prussia.
1741. Unsuccessful attack upon the Spanish fortress of Carthage in America.—**War of the Austrian Succession** commenced; Austrians defeated by Frederick at Mollwitz.
1742. **Walpole compelled to resign office**; the king creates him Earl of Orford.—The Earl of Bath and Lord Cartaret become chief ministers.—Parliament votes assistance to Maria Theresa.—Silesia ceded to Frederick the Great, king of Prussia.
1743. **Battle of Dettingen** (June 27).—The French obliged to evacuate Germany.—The king's partiality for foreigners renders him unpopular.—Jacobite intrigues recommence.
1744. Prince Charles sets out from Rome (Jan. 9).—He lives for some time privately at Gravelines.—15,000 French troops collected at Dunkirk.—The Young Pretender's fleet shattered by a storm and driven back to Dunkirk.—He himself returns to Paris.—The French king, **Louis XV.**, declares war against England (Mar. 20).—French invasion of Flanders.—Formation of a coalition ministry, termed the "**Broad Bottom Ministry**," with Henry Pelham as Premier.—William Pitt, Vice-Treasurer of Ireland.—The Prussians overrun Bohemia and Moldavia.—Maria Theresa, aided by the Hungarians, drives them out of the former country.
1745. **A Quadruple Alliance** formed between England, Holland, Austria, and Saxony.—Death of the Emperor Charles VII., at Munich.—The husband of Maria Theresa elected in his room, with the title of Francis I.—**Battle of Fontenoy** (May 11).—Shameful flight of the Dutch forces.—The French capture Tournay, Ghent, Bruges, etc.—The English take Louisbourg, the capital of Cape Breton Island (June 15).



## READING LESSON XXXIV.

## SIR ROBERT WALPOLE.

This celebrated statesman, descended from an ancient family in the county of Norfolk, was born in 1676. He was educated at Eton, and afterwards at King's College, Cambridge. He was at first intended for the church, but, on the death of his two elder brothers, this intention was relinquished, and, in 1700, he entered Parliament as a member for the family borough of Castle Rising. On July 30th of the same year, he married Catherine, the daughter of Sir John Shorter, Lord Mayor of London, and a few months afterwards (Nov. 28), he succeeded, on the death of his father, to the family estates.

In 1702, Walpole was elected member for King's Lynn, which place he represented in several succeeding Parliaments. His abilities soon secured him employment. In 1705; he was nominated a member of the council of Prince George of Denmark, the husband of Queen Anne; and, in this capacity, he won the esteem of Godolphin, Marlborough, and the other Whig leaders of the time. Three years afterwards, in 1708, upon the temporary retirement of Harley and St. John from the ministry, he was appointed Secretary at War; and, in the following year (1709), he became Treasurer of the Navy.

Shortly after this, as we shall presently see, the fortunes of Walpole suffered a reverse. The influence of the Duke and Duchess of Marlborough over the queen had been much weakened by the intrigues of Mrs. Masham.\* This person was distantly related to Harley, who was indeed the prime mover in the scheme for alienating the queen's attachment from the Whigs. For a time, as we have seen, the plan failed; but

---

\* *Vide* Lesson xxxii., *The Duke of Marlborough*; page 186.



Harley retained his secret influence and awaited his opportunity for a triumphant return to power.

The downfall of the Whig government was hastened by an event which happened in 1709. Dr. Sacheverell; chaplain of St. Saviour's, Southwark, was impeached by the ministry for certain doctrines which he had promulgated in a sermon preached by him, in St. Paul's (Nov. 5th, 1709), before the lord mayor and aldermen. In this sermon, he had inveighed against the violence and indecency of the dissenters and low churchmen, and had insisted upon the doctrine of passive obedience. He had likewise reflected in very strong terms upon the government, and especially upon Godolphin.

Walpole was one of the managers of this impeachment; and his opinion, as expressed at the time, upon the important question at issue, is well worth recording: "The doctrine of unlimited, unconditional, Passive Obedience," he sagaciously observed, "was first invented to support arbitrary and despotic powers, and was never promoted or countenanced by any government that had not designs some time or other of making use of it: what then can be the design of preaching the doctrine now, unasked, unsought for, in her majesty's reign, where the law is the only rule and measure of the power of the Crown, and of the obedience of the people?"

The trial of Dr. Sacheverell took place in Westminster Hall (Feb. 27, 1710), and resulted in a sentence so lenient, as to amount to a virtual acquittal. A change in the ministry was almost immediately effected; and Walpole—although invited by Harley, the head of the new ministry,\* to continue in office—retired along with his friends. A few months afterwards

---

\* Lord Pawlett was nominally the head of the new government; but Harley, who became Chancellor of the Exchequer, was, in reality, the chief adviser of the queen.

he was expelled from the House by the now triumphant Tory party, and committed to the Tower, on a charge of corruption, relating to some contracts for forage made by him when Secretary at War. He was, however, regarded as a martyr by his party, and when, at the close of the session of Parliament in 1712, he regained his liberty, he found his reputation greatly enhanced by his imprisonment.

On the accession of George I., Walpole, who had from the first been a firm supporter of the Hanoverian cause, was, along with others of the Whig party, favourably received at court; and, a few days after the arrival of the new king, he was made a privy-councillor, and had other high offices conferred upon him. He was chairman of the committee appointed to inquire into the conduct of the late ministry, and he took a leading part in the impeachment of Oxford and Bolingbroke. For this service he was, in 1715, raised to the office of First Commissioner of the Treasury, and Chancellor of the Exchequer; but, being unable to act in concert with his colleagues, Sunderland and Stanhope, he resigned office in April, 1717.

Walpole now joined the opposition, and, for some time, unscrupulously leagued himself with the inveterate enemies of the Hanoverian dynasty, even to the extent of factiously endeavouring to thwart the very measures he had previously recommended. That his real sentiments, however, remained unchanged is evident from the part he took in procuring, in 1719, the rejection, by the Commons, of the Peerage Bill, intended to limit the royal prerogative in the creation of peers. He was also instrumental, at this time, in bringing about a reconciliation between King George I. and his son, the Prince of Wales, who had been for some time estranged from each other.

Early in 1720, Walpole was induced to join the government and to accept the subordinate office of

pay-master to the forces. It was at this time that he applied his great financial abilities towards freeing the government of the country from the embarrassments occasioned by their entanglement in the affairs of the South Sea Company. While in opposition, he had condemned the prevailing "gold-fever;" and, when the crash at length came, the task of framing a scheme for meeting the public difficulties, was by universal consent assigned to him.

Shortly after this, Walpole became Chancellor of the Exchequer; and, the death, in rapid succession, of his rivals Stanhope, Craggs, and Sunderland, soon placed the chief power of the administration in his hands,—a power which he continued to wield for a period of twenty years.\*

George II., on the death of his father (1727), at first showed some unwillingness to continue the government in the hands of Walpole. The minister had, however, a firm friend in Queen Caroline, and by her influence the king's prejudices were speedily removed, and Walpole, jointly with other members of the late king's ministry, resumed the reins of the administration.

The next ten or twelve years were marked by few events of any importance. During this time, Walpole, by means of his skill in parliamentary tactics, maintained his ascendancy in the state; and, under his able administration, the kingdom was peaceful and prosperous. Several measures of reform were introduced by him, especially in regard to the proceedings of the courts of justice, and certain long-standing

---

\* In June, 1725, the king revived the Order of the Bath, which had been in abeyance ever since the coronation of Charles II. The order was conferred upon Walpole and his son; and, in the following year, Sir Robert was created a Knight of the Garter, being almost the only commoner who, in modern times, has attained that distinction.

abuses connected with prison discipline. According to one of his biographers, Archdeacon Coxe, the grand principle of Walpole's public life was "the love of peace";\* but, according to Lord Macaulay, his aim was not so much the peace of his country, as the peace of his own administration.

In the session of 1733, Walpole brought forward his celebrated Excise scheme, for the purpose of converting the customs on wine and tobacco into Excise duties; of introducing what is now known as the bonding system; and of removing some of the worst and most oppressive abuses of the Excise laws. The opposition to the measure, both in Parliament and throughout the country, was, however, so great, that the ministry were compelled to abandon it.

The death of Queen Caroline (Nov. 20th, 1737) deprived Walpole of his most powerful supporter; and he was soon afterwards most seriously embarrassed by the quarrels which broke out between the Spanish court and the British merchants, who were engaged in an illicit trade with South America,—a trade which the Spaniards strove in vain to repress. Other questions were also in dispute between the two countries, and the tide of feeling in England ran so high, that Walpole, after a vain attempt to arrange the difficulty by a convention, at length gave way to the popular clamour, and declared war against Spain (19th October, 1739).

This false step, however, failed to strengthen the government. Fresh discontents broke out in the country; and, from this time, Walpole's unpopularity steadily increased, while his influence in the Commons—where nearly all the men of the greatest ability† were now on the side of the opposition—as

---

\* *Quieta non movere.*

† Among the ranks of the opposition was William Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham, then rising into eminence.



steadily diminished. His love of power had alienated all the ablest men of his party, and had converted many of his former colleagues into inveterate enemies ; till at length he found arrayed against him, not only the Tories and Jacobites, but “a majority of the landed gentry, a majority of the clergy, one of the universities, and a strong party in the city of London and other great towns.”

The elections for a new Parliament, in 1741, went against the government ; but Walpole still continued, though almost single-handed, to maintain the contest for power. At last, on the 31st of January, 1742, after suffering defeat on several questions, and being urged by his dispirited, refractory, and (as some say) treacherous colleagues and followers, the veteran statesman reluctantly determined to retire. A few days later he tendered his resignation to the king, who accepted it with every mark of regret. In reward for his services he was created Earl of Orford, and assigned a pension of £4,000 a year. The remainder of his life was spent in tranquillity and retirement. He survived his downfall three years, and died March 18th, 1745, at the age of 68.

The character of Sir Robert Walpole has been thus summarised by Lord Macaulay :—

“He had undoubtedly great talents and great virtues. He was not, indeed, like the leaders of the party which opposed his government, a brilliant orator. He was not a profound scholar, like Carteret ; or a wit and a fine gentleman, like Chesterfield. In all these respects his deficiencies were remarkable. His literature consisted of a scrap or two of Horace, and an anecdote or two from the end of the dictionary. His knowledge of history was so limited that, in the great debate on the Excise Bill, he was forced to ask Attorney-General Yorke who Empson and Dudley were.



“But, however ignorant Walpole might be of general history and of general literature, he was better acquainted than any man of his day with what it most concerned him to know—mankind, the English nation, the Court, the House of Commons, and the Treasury. Of foreign affairs he knew little; but his judgment was so good that his little knowledge went very far. He was an excellent parliamentary debater, an excellent parliamentary tactician, an excellent man of business. No man ever brought more industry, or more method to bear on the transaction of affairs. No minister in his time did so much; yet no minister had so much leisure.

“The praise to which he is fairly entitled is this, that he understood the interests of his country better than any of his contemporaries, and that he pursued that interest whenever it was not incompatible with the interest of his own intense and grasping ambition. It was only in matters of public moment that he shrank from agitation and had recourse to compromise. In his contests for personal influence there was no timidity, no flinching. He would have all or none. Every member of the government, who would not submit to his ascendancy, was turned out or forced to resign. Liberal of everything else, he was avaricious of power. Cautious everywhere else, when power was at stake he had all the boldness of Richelieu or Chatham. He might easily have secured his authority, if he could have been induced to divide it with others. But he would not part with one fragment of it to purchase defenders for all the rest. The effect of this policy was that he had able enemies and feeble allies. His most distinguished coadjutors left him one by one, and joined the ranks of the opposition. He faced the increasing array of his enemies with unbroken spirit, and thought it far better that they should attack his power than that they should share it.”

## MEMORY EXERCISE XLV.

A.D.

1745. **The Young Pretender** lands in the Hebrides with "**The Seven Men of Moidart**"—enters Perth (Sept. 3)—takes up his residence at Holyrood Palace (Sept. 17)—and is proclaimed king as **James VIII.**—Sir John Cope, the English commander, defeated at **Prestonpans** (Sept. 21).—The Chevalier commences his march into England (Nov. 1).—Carlisle entered (Nov. 17). The Highlanders advance by way of Preston and Manchester to Derby.—Panic in London.—*Black Friday*.—Retreat of the Scots.
1746. Siege of Stirling commenced (Jan. 3).—General Hawley defeated at **Falkirk** (Jan. 17).—The siege being abandoned, the Pretender's army retreat towards Inverness (Feb. 1).—The Duke of Cumberland in pursuit.—**Battle of Culloden** and total defeat of the Highlanders (April 16).—The Prince escapes to France.—Execution of Lords Cromarty, Kilmarnock, and Balmerino.
1747. The English gain **two naval victories**,—one under Anson, near **Cape Finisterre**, the other, under Hawke, off **Belleisle**.
1748. **A treaty of peace signed at Aix-la-Chapelle**, between England, France, Holland, Spain, and the Emperor (Oct. 7).
1751. Alteration of the Calendar from the Old to the New Style.—Death of Frederick, Prince of Wales (Mar. 20).—Arcot taken by Clive.
1754. The Duke of Newcastle, Prime Minister.—Quarrel between English and French settlers in the East Indies and North America.
1756. The French capture Minorca (June 27).—**Pitt becomes Secretary of State**, and his first ministry is formed (June 29).—Commencement of the **SEVEN YEARS' WAR**.—Prussia in alliance with England against France and Austria.—**Tragedy of the Black Hole at Calcutta**.
1757. Admiral Byng shot by sentence of court-martial (Mar. 14).—The Duke of Cumberland proceeds to the continent to fight in the cause of Prussia.—The Duke of Newcastle resigns; he is recalled to office, and forms a coalition with Pitt: actual commencement of the **Pitt Administration**.—The French overrun Hanover.—**Battle of Plassy** (June 20).—Clive captures the French settlement of Chandernagore in India.

A. D.

1758. War rages in all parts of the world.—Cape Breton and Prince Edward's Island conquered.—Expedition against Cherbourg.—Frederick defeated by the Austrians at Hochkirchen (Oct. 14).—Capture of Goree, on the West coast of Africa.
1759. The English arms successful by sea and land.—Havre bombarded.—The French fleet dispersed by Boscawen off Toulon.—Brest blockaded.—Hawke gains a victory over the French near Quiberon (Nov. 20).—The English take part in the victory of Minden.—Capture of Quebec.—Death of General Wolfe (Sept. 13).
1760. Surrender of Montreal (Sept. 18).—Conquest of Canada completed.—Death of George II. (Oct. 25).

---

## READING LESSON XXXV.

### THE REBELLION OF 1745.

So long as Walpole was in power, and England was at peace with foreign states, the exiled Stuarts had little chance of reëstablishing their dynasty in England, whether by invasion or revolt; but, upon the dismissal from office of one who had so long guided the helm of state, party feeling in the country ran so high, and the tone of parliamentary debates was so violent, that foreigners, and especially the Jacobites abroad, were led to believe that the time was ripe for dynastic changes. The Old Pretender, or the "Cavalier," as he was more commonly named, was, at the time, living in retirement at Rome; but, from his age and infirmities, he was incapable of taking any active share in a struggle for the restoration of his sovereignty. His son, Prince Charles Edward, or the Young Pretender, was, however, by reason of his accomplishments, handsome person, and insinuating address, eminently qualified to win back the lost affections of the English. This prince was invited to Paris, in 1743, and appointed to the nominal com-

mand of an army of veterans, which had been assembled by the French king for the invasion of England. The expedition sailed from Dunkirk early in 1744; but, being dispersed by a tempest, was compelled to return again to port after suffering great loss. The invasion of England was thereupon relinquished by the French ministry, and Charles Edward secluded himself for a time at Gravelines.

The hopes of the Jacobites were shortly afterwards raised by the defeat of the English and their allies at the battle of Fontenoy, as well as by the increasing unpopularity of the Hanoverian dynasty in England; and active preparations were made for a landing in this country in support of the Stuart pretensions. Having succeeded in raising money for the purchase of arms and ammunition, Prince Charles embarked at Belleisle on board a French brig, and, after narrowly escaping capture by an English man-of-war, arrived safely in the Hebrides, and landed with a small retinue at Moidart, in Inverness-shire (July 25, 1745). Here he was joined by a few of the Highland chieftains; but the main body of the clans at first held themselves aloof from the enterprise. Many were, however, unable to withstand the fascinating manners of the prince, and his appeals to their loyalty and good feeling; so that, by the 20th of August, when Charles began his march towards the Lowlands, he found himself at the head of a little army of 1,600 men—undisciplined and badly armed, it is true, but nevertheless bound to him by the closest ties of affection, and ready to sacrifice their lives for "Bonnie Prince Charlie."

Avoiding the forces of Sir John Cope, the English commander-in-chief, the prince entered Perth, amid loud acclamations, on September 3rd, and was there joined by James Drummond, titular duke of Perth, and Lord George Murray, the latter of whom—being a man of



ability and of some military experience—assumed an important place in the councils of the insurgents. The march was then continued southwards, and, on the 17th of September, one of the city gates having been surprised by a body of Highlanders, Edinburgh was entered without opposition, and Prince Charles took up his residence at Holyrood-house, the palace of his ancestors, and caused the heralds to proclaim his father king, as James VIII.

The position of the rebels was, nevertheless, an extremely critical one: the castle of Edinburgh was still in the occupation of King George's troops; and Sir John Cope was at the time engaged in landing his forces at Dunbar, where he was joined by the panic-stricken soldiers who had fled from Edinburgh. Prince Charles, having obtained an accession of force, as well as a considerable supply of arms and warlike stores, marched out at once to give battle to the English general, who, having completed the debarkation of his troops, was now advancing upon Edinburgh. The two armies met near Prestonpans, and the English, though supported by artillery, and possessing the advantage of situation, were routed with great slaughter—Sir John Cope fleeing with his cavalry first to Edinburgh, and afterwards to Berwick.

After the victory at Prestonpans the young Pretender returned to Holyrood-house. Great numbers of the Highlanders now went home with their booty, and Charles was left with a force of barely 1,500 men; but the victory which had been gained inspired such confidence in many of the chieftains who had hitherto held back from the enterprise, that, in a few weeks, his army was augmented to nearly 6,000 men.

With the exception of the castles of Edinburgh and Stirling, and some forts in the distant Highlands, the prince was now master of all Scotland. His father



was proclaimed in most of the large towns, upon which contributions were levied for the conduct of the war of conquest. Large supplies of munitions of war also arrived from France, accompanied by several French and Irish officers.

Charles, in opposition to the advice of his council, who recommended him to be content for the time with his conquest of the northern kingdom, now resolved upon the invasion of England. The march southwards was commenced on November 1st, and Carlisle was entered, with but little opposition, on the 17th,—the garrison being allowed to withdraw upon delivering up their arms and horses. On the 20th, the march was resumed—the insurgents advancing in two separate columns, which united at Preston on the 27th.

The prospects of the Pretender were, however, by no means encouraging. He was disappointed in his expectation of being joined in large numbers by the English Jacobites, and his own troops began to clamour for their return to Scotland. At Manchester, where there still remained some attachment to the House of Stuart, he was indeed received with something like enthusiasm, and was joined by a troop of about 200 English volunteers; and “these were all the English who ever declared themselves openly in favour of the prince.”

The march was continued as far as Derby, Prince Charles succeeding in eluding the armies of both Marshal Wade and the Duke of Cumberland, which had been despatched to intercept him. The metropolis was now seized with a panic, and the wildest stories of the desperate valour of the Highlanders were circulated; numbers of the citizens collected their goods and fled; and the king himself made preparations for withdrawing, if necessary, from the kingdom. The alarm, however, was soon at an end. Disappointed of the succours from his English

partisans, whom he had expected to join him at Derby, and distracted by dissensions in his own camp, the Pretender reluctantly yielded to the desire of his troops, and gave orders for a retreat. He was closely pursued in his march northwards by the forces of the Duke of Cumberland; but, excepting a slight skirmish near Penrith, in which the English were worsted, the army of Prince Charles succeeded in reaching Glasgow without molestation on December 26th, having, in the advance and retreat, marched upwards of 600 miles in 56 days, including many days of halt.

On January 3rd, 1746, Charles Edward arrived at Stirling, and resolved upon besieging the castle. General Hawley, who had been appointed to the command of the English forces in Scotland, advanced to the relief of Stirling Castle at the head of 13,000 men, but, being met by the prince at Falkirk, he was defeated with great loss, and compelled to make a precipitate and disgraceful flight to Edinburgh. The Duke of Cumberland was immediately despatched to retrieve this disaster. He reached Edinburgh on the 30th of January, and on the next day set out on his march to raise the siege of Stirling, which, after the battle of Falkirk, had been renewed by the prince, but was being very inefficiently conducted.

Upon the advance of the duke, the rebel army raised the siege and recommenced their retreat to the north, and, by rapid and fatiguing marches, succeeded in reaching Inverness on the 18th of February. Cumberland followed more slowly, and established his headquarters at Aberdeen, whence, upon April 8th, he marched to the attack of Inverness at the head of 8,000 foot and 900 horse.

Charles, although his forces had dwindled to not more than 5,000, advanced with the intention of surprising the enemy on their march; but, abandoning this intention, he drew up his little army on Culloden

Moor. In the battle, which ensued (April 16), the Scotch were overpowered both by the numbers and superior discipline of the English troops, and were routed with great slaughter.

This defeat gave the death blow to the cause of the Stuarts. After the battle the vanquished prince dismissed his followers, and for the space of five months wandered about, with a price of £ 30,000 set upon his head—a miserable fugitive, exposed to hunger and weariness, and in constant danger of being apprehended. At length, on the 20th of September, he succeeded in making his escape to the continent in a privateer, which had been hired from St. Malo by some of his Irish adherents.\* Several of the rebel leaders likewise made their escape, but a great number were taken prisoners, brought to trial and executed. The Earl of Kilmarnock and the Lords Balmerino and Lovat were executed on Tower Hill.

The Duke of Cumberland fixed his head-quarters for a time near Fort Augustus, and seems to have permitted every kind of outrage and cruelty in the pursuit and capture of the rebels. On account of this brutality he acquired the nickname of *The Butcher*. Upon his return to London, however, he was hailed as the deliverer of his country, and a pension of £ 25,000 a year was settled upon him and his heirs.

---

\* Being afterwards compelled to leave France, he retired to Italy, where he lived for some years at Florence, and died at Rome, on the 30th January, 1788, of palsy and apoplexy, in his 63rd year.



§ 3. *George III.*

*Born* A.D. 1738 ; *Reigned* 60 years (1760-1820).

## MEMORY EXERCISE XLVI.

A. D.

1760. **Accession of George III.**—The old ministry retained.—£20,000,000 voted for the conduct of the war.—Clive returns from India, and is rewarded with an Irish peerage.
1761. Pondicherry captured (Jan. 16).—Marriage of the king with Charlotte of Mecklenburg Strelitz (Sept. 8).—Coronation of the new queen (Sept. 22).—Negotiations for peace commence.—Expedition against Belleisle.—**The Family Compact** between France and Spain.—**Resignation of Pitt**, because his advice to declare war against Spain is not accepted.
1762. **War declared against Spain** (Jan. 4).—Resignation of the Duke of Newcastle.—Lord Bute becomes Prime Minister.—Successes in the West Indies.—Capture of Martinique, Grenada, St. Lucia, and St. Vincent.—Havana capitulates.—The Philippine Islands taken.—Bute alarmed at the increase of the National Debt, now amounting to £139,000,000.
1763. **Treaty of Paris concluded** (Feb. 10).—Unpopularity of Bute, on account of the peace.—He resigns (April 8).—Fox raised to the House of Lords under the title of Lord Holland.—Grenville Prime Minister.—Prosecution of Wilkes for libel in the *North Briton*.
1764. Wilkes expelled from the House of Commons.
1765. Passing of the celebrated **American Stamp Act**.—Resignation of Grenville.—The Marquis of Rockingham at the head of the government.
1766. **Repeal of the American Stamp Act**, chiefly through the influence of Pitt.—The Duke of Grafton becomes Prime Minister.—**Pitt, created Earl of Chatham**, forms the new ministry.
1767. **Illness of Pitt**.—In his absence from public affairs, a bill is passed to tax the **American colonies**.—Commencement of the **War with Hyder Ali**.
1768. Wilkes is returned member for Middlesex.—The sentence of outlawry against him is declared void ; but he is



A.D.

- sentenced to two years' imprisonment.—Riots in London in consequence.—Riots in Boston on account of the taxes upon tea, glass, paper, etc.
1769. Wilkes again expelled the House of Commons.—**Letters of Junius** appear in the *Public Advertiser*.
1770. Chatham appears in the House, and denounces the American policy of the ministry.—The Duke of Grafton resigns, and Lord North becomes Prime Minister.—**The American duties repealed, except that upon tea.**
1772. First partition of Poland by Russia, Prussia and Austria.—**Warren Hastings** appointed Governor of Bengal.
1773. Disturbances in Boston.—Cargoes of tea thrown overboard by the mob (Dec. 16).—Lord North's India Bill passed, for regulating the affairs of the East India Company.—**Warren Hastings becomes the first Governor-General of India.**
1774. The Boston Port Bill passed.—General Gage sent out as governor of Massachusetts and commander-in-chief in the colonies.—**Meeting of the first Congress at Philadelphia** (Sept. 4).—Resolutions passed to suspend all trade with Great Britain.—Addresses to the people of Great Britain and Canada published by the Congress.—Meeting of a new Parliament (Nov. 29).—Wilkes takes his seat for Middlesex.—Suicide of Lord Clive.
1775. Lord Chatham denounces the attempts to coerce the Americans, and introduces a Conciliatory Bill, which is rejected.—Burke's Resolutions to the same effect in the Commons thrown out.—**Skirmish at Lexington** (April 19), and **Commencement of the AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE**.—**Second meeting of Congress at Philadelphia** (May 10).—**WASHINGTON** appointed to the command of the American forces.—**Battle of Bunker's Hill** (June 17).—Repeal of the Acts relating to the port of Boston.—The Americans invade Canada and besiege Quebec.
1776. The British troops evacuate Boston.—**The DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE** signed (July 4).—Arrival of Lord Howe with full powers to treat.—Failure of the negotiations.—Long Island captured by the English troops (Aug. 27).—New York taken (Sept).—Washington recovers the states of Jersey.—**Congress at Baltimore**.—Several French officers take service in the American army.—Imprisonment of Horne Tooke for sympathizing with the Americans.



## READING LESSON XXXVI.

## WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM.

William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, the greatest of England's orators and statesmen, was the younger son of a country gentleman, Robert Pitt, of Boconnoc, in Cornwall, and was born November 15th, 1708. To distinguish him from his scarcely less famous son, he is sometimes styled Pitt the Elder. The family to which he belonged was wealthy and respectable. His grandfather had been Governor of Madras, where he had amassed a large fortune, which, upon his retirement to England, he invested, as the manner of the time was, in the purchase of estates and rotten boroughs. Governor Pitt, his son, and grandson, successively represented one of these boroughs, namely, Old Sarum,—a name still remembered as being synonymous with electoral corruption itself.

Of the early part of the life of William Pitt, little more is known than that he was educated at Eton, and that at the age of seventeen he was entered at Trinity College, Oxford. He left the university without taking his degree, and for some time travelled in France and Italy for the purpose of alleviating the gout,—a constitutional disease with which he had been cruelly tormented from his school-days, and which continued to afflict him to the end of his career. He returned from this excursion but little benefited by the change; and his father having died, leaving very little to his younger children, it became necessary for him to choose a profession. He selected the army, and a cornetcy was obtained for him in the Blues.

Shortly afterwards, in 1735, through the influence of his family, he entered Parliament as member for

Old Sarum,—his elder brother, Thomas, being at the same time returned for Oakhampton. Pitt at once joined the party of Frederick, Prince of Wales,—at that time at enmity with the king,—and offered a determined opposition to Sir Robert Walpole, who had now been during fourteen years at the head of the administration. In consequence of this opposition he was deprived by Walpole of his commission in the army,—an act which served only to increase the vehemence of his denunciations both of the Court and the Government.

But the deprivation was no real loss to Pitt. He was made Groom of the Bedchamber to the Prince of Wales, and continued to assail the ministry with increasing ability and unyielding vigour. On the question of maritime right, which was then a source of much contention between Spain and England, he was one of the strongest supporters of that warlike policy to which the premier, Walpole, was compelled most unwillingly to accede, and which in the end was so unproductive of any substantial result. When war was declared in 1739, and the joy bells were pealing from every steeple, Walpole had with prophetic foresight remarked: "Ay, they may ring the bells now, but before long they will be wringing their hands;" and, before three years had elapsed, the prophecy of the minister proved true; for, with the exception of the capture of Porto Bello from the Spaniards, no success attended the English arms. Pitt himself, on subsequent occasions, gave ample proof that his opposition to Walpole, at the time, was dictated solely by popular prejudice and party spirit.

The ministry of Walpole fell in 1742; and after an interval, during which Pitt's influence in the House of Commons continued to increase, the king—notwithstanding his hatred of the rising young commoner—was obliged to sanction his admission to a subordi-

nate office in the new government. He was appointed Vice-treasurer of Ireland, and, subsequently, Paymaster of the Forces, under the administration of Pelham.\* The latter office was a most lucrative one, the perquisites being very great, and no dishonour attaching itself, in the minds of men of the time, to their appropriation. Pitt, however, refused to accept one farthing beyond the legal salary assigned to the office. Such disinterested and patriotic conduct as this excited the warmest admiration throughout the great body of the nation; and "Pitt was thenceforward considered as a man who was proof against all sordid temptations. If he acted ill, it might be from an error of judgment; it might be from resentment; it might be from ambition. But, poor as he was, he had vindicated himself from all suspicion of covetousness,"† no insignificant reputation for a man to acquire in those days of venality and corruption.

Some time previously to this, in 1744, the Duchess of Marlborough died, leaving to Pitt a legacy of ten thousand pounds, in recognition of "the noble defence he had made for the support of the laws of England, and to prevent the ruin of his country;" and later, Sir William Pynsent, struck with a similar admiration of his patriotism and powers of oratory, left him his whole property.

After the downfall of Walpole, the opposition to the Government began to grow feeble; and on the death of Prince Frederick, in 1751, it completely disappeared. Peace had been concluded with France and Spain in 1748; and Pitt, who had urged on the war with so much vehemence, seems to have silently acquiesced in an arrangement which left the country

---

\* Generally known as the "Broad Bottom ministry."

† Macaulay.

in precisely the same position that it had held before the war, when he had indulged in so much invective against the peace-loving policy of Walpole.

Pelham died in 1754, and was succeeded in the administration by the Duke of Newcastle. The duke was at first inclined to dispense with Pitt's services in the cabinet; and to this end made overtures to the celebrated Henry Fox, afterwards Lord Holland, and at that time Secretary of War, to become Secretary of State and leader of the House of Commons. The offer was, however, coupled with conditions so degrading, that Fox indignantly declined it, although he consented to continue his services as Secretary at War. Being filled with resentment at the manner in which they had been treated by the Premier, Pitt and Fox united in opposing his Government, and so terrified Newcastle by their joint attacks, that he once more entered into negotiations with Fox, who this time yielded to his solicitations, and, abandoning his connection with Pitt, consented to enter the cabinet in 1755. Previously to this, Newcastle had made an ineffectual attempt to enlist the services of Pitt, who could not, however, be brought to sanction the foreign policy of the Government, and therefore coldly declined the proffered seat in the cabinet.

In the year following, Fox, disgusted with the levity and perfidy of the Prime Minister, resigned his office; and Newcastle, unable to stem the tide of popular feeling, was also at length compelled to tender his resignation. After a short delay and an attempt on the part of the king to induce Fox to form an administration in concert with Pitt, the Duke of Devonshire became Prime Minister, with Pitt as Secretary of State and leader in the Lower House (Dec. 4, 1756).

Affairs were at this time in great confusion. The "Seven Years' War" had commenced; the country was in a defenceless condition; Minorca had been



lost to the French ; while a miserable system of subsidies to Russia and the German States had been entered upon for the purpose of carrying on the war with France. But Pitt's elevation to power imparted fresh vigour to every part of the administration. A national militia was substituted for the German mercenaries ; regiments of Highlanders were raised for foreign service ; the naval force was strengthened ; and a firm treaty of alliance was made with Frederick the Great.

The foreign policy of the new Government was, however, so strongly opposed by George II., who could neither abandon his German predilections, nor subdue his old feelings of enmity against Pitt himself, that the ministry were compelled, early in 1757, to resign. A period of great public excitement thereupon ensued ; and, in obedience to the popular demand, Pitt was once more called to power. A reconciliation with the former premier, Newcastle, was effected, the duke becoming the nominal head of the Government, though the administration was virtually that of Pitt. Fox accepted office under this ministry as Paymaster of the Forces.

The next four years during which Pitt held office were the noblest of his life. Being now firmly established in power, his war policy was characterized by unusual vigour and sagacity ; while the internal administration of affairs was, in a great measure, redeemed from the domination of corrupt factions. Success everywhere attended the arms of the British and their allies ; French armies were defeated in India, in Africa, in Canada, and on the Rhine ; and the English navy held the supremacy on the seas. The energy of the statesman pervaded all quarters of the world, and a new spirit was infused into every branch of the service.

With the year 1760 came the capture of Montreal



and the subjugation of the whole province of Canada,—events which added new triumphs to the administration of Pitt. Among the glories also of this period must be included the foundation of the English empire in India, where, in the short space of three years, the power of the French was almost extinguished and the authority of the East India Company rendered “more absolute than that of Akbar or Aurungzebe had ever been.”

“The situation which Pitt occupied at the close of the reign of George II. was the most enviable ever occupied by any public man in English history. He had conciliated the king; he domineered over the House of Commons; he was adored by the people; he was admired by all Europe. He was the first Englishman of his time; and he had made England the first country in the world.”\*

Soon after the accession of George III., the “Family Compact” was entered into between France and Spain, by which the latter country agreed to declare war against England in the event of the continuance of the war with France. As soon as Pitt obtained certain intelligence of this agreement, he strongly advised that war should at once be declared against Spain; but his wise and resolute counsel being rejected, he resigned office in 1761, proudly declaring that he “held himself accountable to the people who had called him to power.”

On his retirement he was offered the governorship of Canada, without residence being required, and £5,000 a-year; or the duchy of Lancaster, with about the same emolument. He declined both these offers, but consented to receive a peerage for his wife, who was created Baroness Chatham, with a pension of £3,000 per annum.

---

\* Macaulay's *Essay on the Earl of Chatham*.

The Earl of Bute, who had acquired great influence over the young king, now became Premier; and within a few weeks the country was involved in the war with Spain, which the late minister had predicted as inevitable. Pitt, however, refrained from taking any party advantage of the fact that his rejected advice had become a necessary state policy. "A time of war," said the orator, "is no season for personal altercation. In the face of the common enemy, England should be united as one man."

Pitt remained out of office till 1766, when he received the royal commands to form a ministry. He undertook the task; but, to the astonishment of every one, he chose for himself the almost sinecure office of Privy Seal, with a seat in the House of Lords as Viscount Pitt and Earl of Chatham. By this time his bodily infirmities had increased upon him to such an extent, that he could take no part in public affairs; and his greatness is hardly recognizable in the feebleness of the administration he had organized. Finding that his colleagues adopted measures entirely opposed to his own principles, he resigned, October 12th, 1768, to hold office no more.

Chatham did not, however, cease to take an interest in public affairs. From time to time, as his strength permitted him, he was carried to the House of Lords, where he spoke strongly against the harsh and arbitrary policy of the Government towards the American colonies. Even after the Declaration of Independence, he endeavoured to induce the ministry to agree to some terms of reconciliation with the rebellious states. But when, on the conclusion of the treaty between France and America, it was proposed to remove the ministers, and to make peace on any terms, as well as to recognize the independence of the United States, all Chatham's pride in the glory of the British name flashed forth; he came down to the

House of Lords, and in a powerful address protested against the conclusion of an ignominious peace and the dismemberment of the British empire. Exhausted with the effort of speaking, he fell back into the arms of his son, and was carried from the house in a dying state.

This occurred on the 8th of April, 1778. He died on the 11th of the following month, and was buried with great state in Westminster Abbey,—the chief mourner being his second son William Pitt, whose name, together with that of the great man, his father, will live for ever in the pages of English history.

---

#### MEMORY EXERCISE XLVII.

A. D.

1777. The Americans defeated at **Brandywine** (Sept. 11).—Philadelphia taken.—**Convention of Saratoga** (Oct. 17), and capitulation of the English under General Burgoyne.
1778. Treaties of commerce and alliance between France and the Americans signed at Paris (Feb. 6).—Conciliatory measures introduced by Lord North, and passed (Mar. 11).—Resignation of Lord North.—**Death of the Earl of Chatham** (May 11).—North accepts office again.—The Americans, strengthened by the French Alliance, refuse to treat with the English commissioners.—Sir H. Clinton reduces Georgia.—St. Lucia, St. Pierre, and Miquelon taken from the French.—The French take Dominica.—Indecisive battle with the French fleet off Ushant.—Capture of Pondicherry and other French settlements in India.
1779. **Spain unites with France against England**.—The French threaten an invasion of England.—Spain makes an attempt upon **Gibraltar**.—Exploits of the famous Paul Jones.—St. Vincent and Grenada reduced by the French.—A combined French and American attack on Savannah repulsed.—Charleston invested by General Clinton.
1780. **The Gordon Riots** in London.—Admiral Sir G. Rodney gains a victory over the Spanish fleet off **Cape St.**

A. D.

- Vincent** (Jan. 16).—Charleston capitulates.—The Americans routed at Camden (Aug. 6).—Execution of Major André, as a spy, by the Americans.—Sir H. Clinton writes for more forces, and resigns the command.—An armed neutrality established between Russia, Sweden, and Denmark.—**War declared against Holland** (Dec. 20).—**Hyder Ali** overruns the Madras Presidency.
- 1781. Capitulation of Lord Cornwallis at York Town.**—Close of the American War.—Gibraltar relieved.—**Hyder Ali** defeated at **Porto Novo** and **Pollilore**.
- 1782. Surrender of Minorca to the Spaniards** (Feb. 5).—General Conway carries, in the Commons, an address to the king against continuing the war in America.—Resignation of Lord North.—The Marquis of Rockingham again Prime Minister.—Discontents in Ireland.—**The independence of the Irish Parliament acknowledged.**—Measures of reform introduced into the **English House.**—The French fleet destroyed by admirals Rodney and Hood in the West Indies.—**Negotiations for peace opened at Paris.**—Death of Rockingham.—Pitt, the younger, becomes Chancellor of the Exchequer.—**Bombardment of Gibraltar** by the fleets of France and Spain.—The fortress is relieved by Lord Howe.—**The Independence of the United States recognised** (Nov. 30).—**Death of Hyder Ali.**—His son **Tippu Sultan** succeeds.
- 1783. Treaty of Versailles** (Jan. 20).—Resignation of the Shelburne ministry.—The Duke of Portland becomes Premier.—Lord North and Mr. Fox, Secretaries of State.—Dismissal of the Coalition Ministry.—**Mr. Pitt becomes Prime Minister.**—Hastings concludes a peace with Tippu Sultan.
- 1784. Pitt's India Bill** carried.
- 1785. Warren Hastings**, having tranquillized India, returns to England.—**Mr. Adams**, the first American ambassador to the court of London, has an interview with the king.
- 1786. Lord Cornwallis** appointed Governor-general of India.
- 1787. Impeachment of Warren Hastings.**
- 1788. Illness of the king.**—Dispute in Parliament concerning the Regency.—Commencement of the **Trial of Warren Hastings.** (The trial was not concluded till 1793, when Hastings was acquitted).
- 1789. The king recovers.**—Storming of the Bastille, and **Commencement of the FRENCH REVOLUTION.**



READING LESSON XXXVII.

THE REVOLUTION IN AMERICA.

At the accession of George III., the American colonies, which during the previous reigns had gone on increasing in strength and prosperity, consisted of thirteen states, lying along the seaboard of the Atlantic, between the parallels of 30° and 45° north latitude. The government of each state was administered by a governor, appointed by the crown and assisted by a council. Each had also a House of Assembly, elected by the people. Up to this time, the relations between the mother country and her colonies had been of the most friendly character; and the wise administration of Mr. Pitt had so strengthened and compacted the British dominion in America, as to give promise of a long continuance of prosperity to both England and her dependencies.

This bright prospect was, however, soon to be overcast. Mr. Pitt resigned the premiership, and his successors unwisely began to impose restrictions upon the foreign trade of the American colonies. These became the source of much irritation to the colonists, and formal complaints from the Assemblies, or Parliaments of the States, regarding the commercial policy of the mother country, became frequent, especially after the prohibition, in 1763, of the contraband trade between the American and Spanish colonies. Irritated and distressed, as the Americans were, at this time, by a terrible border warfare with the Indians, this conduct of the English ministry produced the most serious dissatisfaction; and the feeling of discontent was greatly increased when, in 1764, Mr. Grenville, the Prime Minister, moved a series of resolutions in the House for imposing small duties upon certain articles of American commerce, and for extending to America the operation of the English Stamp Act.



The Act embodying these resolutions was postponed for a year, in order to obtain further information on the subject ; but, in the next session (1765), so agreeable to the Commons was the prospect of being relieved, by its means, from a portion of the national burdens, that the measure passed with little opposition, and received the Royal assent on the 22nd of March.

The excitement occasioned in America by the passing of the Stamp Act was intense. Riots took place in Boston and other towns ; the Virginian House of Assembly passed resolutions denying the right of the mother country to tax the colonists without their consent ; and a general Congress of the States was appointed to meet at New York, in October, when resolutions and petitions, similar to those of the Virginian Assembly, were adopted. When the stamps arrived, nobody would use them ; and those who had been appointed to distribute them, resigned their posts. In some localities associations were formed against the importation and use of British commodities ; and the notion of separation from the mother country, and of the establishment of an independent republic of the States, began to be entertained.

In the meantime, the Grenville ministry had been succeeded by a new one under the Marquis of Rockingham, who, adopting the advice of the "Great Commoner," Mr. Pitt, brought in a bill for the repeal of the obnoxious Stamp Act. By the majority of the colonists, who were still loyal, the news of the repeal of the Act was received with joy and satisfaction ; but it was only natural that much soreness should remain, as well as a still more natural feeling of secret triumph at the discovery of their strength.

Other changes in the English ministry took place, and Pitt—now raised to the peerage under the title of Earl Chatham—was again called upon to form a cabinet. Constant attacks of illness, however, pre-

vented his attendance in the House of Lords ; and, during his enforced retirement from state affairs, Townshend, the Chancellor of the Exchequer, resolved, in 1767, to raise some supplies in America by means of a tax upon tea, glass, paper, and painters' colours. The consequence of this impolitic act was a revival of all the former animosity of the colonists. The Boston riots were renewed ; and associations were formed forbidding the use of tea, and entering into non-importation agreements,—those who refused to join such associations being frequently stripped, tarred, and feathered.

Affairs remained in this unsatisfactory state till 1770, when Lord North, who had succeeded to the office of Prime Minister, introduced a bill for the repeal of all the taxes excepting that upon tea. Temporary satisfaction was afforded by this measure ; but, in 1773, a violent outburst of popular feeling was occasioned by the arrival in America of several ships, freighted with tea, belonging to the East India Company. At Charleston the landing of the teas was permitted, but their sale was prohibited—the merchants to whom they were consigned were compelled to withdraw from their engagements with the Company ; while in Boston a party of men, disguised as Mohawk Indians, boarded the tea ships in the harbour and threw their cargoes into the sea.

Measures of repression followed, which still further inflamed the minds of the Americans, who began now to take active steps to resist the encroachments of the English Parliament upon their liberties. Committees of correspondence were formed, and a Congress assembled at Philadelphia, at which a Declaration of Rights was drawn up, and addresses prepared to the king and the people of Great Britain.

Parliament met in January, 1775, and the king, in his opening address, asserted his intention to uphold “the supreme authority of the Legislature over all the

Dominions of his Crown." Both Chatham and the statesman Burke endeavoured, but without success, to introduce measures of conciliation, and to prevent the collision between the mother country and her colonies, which now became inevitable. The British Government was resolved to reduce the colonists by force—the Americans were as resolute in their determination to assert and effect their independence.

The first engagement in the war which followed was fought at Lexington, and was upon the whole disastrous to the English forces engaged. This success roused the ardour of the Americans, and the whole of the New England States were soon under arms. A second Congress was assembled, according to appointment, at Philadelphia, on May 10th, 1775, when measures were taken to prohibit the supply of provisions to the British troops, and to provide for the raising of men and money for the prosecution of the war. Colonel George Washington, who had distinguished himself in the wars with the French, was now appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces. Articles of confederation and perpetual union, under the name of "The United Colonies of North America," were at the same time agreed upon. The members of congress appear, however, to have still entertained hopes of a pacification, for a resolution was passed to petition the king, expressing sentiments of loyalty and their desire for a reconciliation. To this petition no reply was vouchsafed.

For the events of the calamitous war which followed, the student must be referred to the Memory Exercises immediately preceding this chapter. The celebrated Declaration of Independence was drawn up and signed by Congress, as the act of the whole American people, on the 4th July, 1776. It began with an assertion of the general rights of man, and the purposes for which governments were instituted; and

declared the lawfulness of changing such governments, when they no longer suited the purposes for which they were intended. It set forth a long catalogue of wrongs alleged to have been received at the hands of the mother country, all having "in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny"; and declared that the thirteen colonies were, "and of right ought to be, free and independent states," . . . "absolved from all allegiance to the British crown."

"After a disastrous struggle of eight years' duration, the treaty of peace, signed at Versailles on the 3rd September, 1783, confirmed the Declaration of the States, and America was for ever severed from Britain, to become, in scarcely two-thirds of a century, one of the greatest and most formidable nations in the world."\*

The patriots in America were not without their sympathizers in England; and attempts were made at different times to bring the conflict to an end; but without avail. Thus, on the 30th May, 1777, Lord Chatham, who had from the first been an advocate of conciliatory measures, came down to the House, after a long absence on account of illness, and moved an address to the king to put an end to the hostilities in America by the removal of grievances. His eloquent though unsuccessful appeal on this occasion will form the subject of the next reading lesson.



---

\* "Kings of England," p. 235.



## MEMORY EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. D.

1791. The Unitarians at Birmingham celebrate the anniversary of the storming of the Bastille—Riots in consequence.—Mirabeau President of the French National Assembly.—Louis XVI. declares his acceptance of the Assembly's draft of a Constitution.—War with Tippu Sultan.
1792. Wilberforce moves for a Committee of the whole House to consider the **African Slave Trade**.—Death of the Emperor Leopold (March).—France declares war against his son Joseph.—The Duke of Brunswick takes the field with an army of Prussians and Austrians.—Massacres in Paris.—**Deposition and imprisonment of Louis XVI.**—Defeat of Tippu Sultan.—Serin-gapatam besieged by Lord Cornwallis.
1793. **Execution of the French king.**—France declares war against England and Holland.—The Duke of York lands at Ostend with 10,000 British troops.—Capture of Valenciennes (July 25).—Successes of the English over the French in the East and West Indies.—**Toulon taken by Lord Hood** in the name of Louis XVII.—The place is retaken, chiefly through the skill displayed by **Napoleon Buonaparte**; but the French fleet and arsenal are destroyed.—All trade with Great Britain forbidden by the French Convention.
1794. The Allies are defeated in the north of France.—Nearly all the towns in Flanders fall into the hands of the French.—The Duke of York returns to England.—Holland submits, and fraternizes with the French republicans.—**Lord Howe gains a victory over the French fleet off Brest** (May 28).—Martinique captured in the West Indies.
1795. **War with Holland.**—Capture of the Cape of Good Hope, Ceylon, and other Dutch colonies.
1796. Spain forms an offensive and defensive alliance with France and declares war against England.—Buonaparte's successful campaign in Italy.—The French meet with reverses on the Rhine.—The Directory make insincere overtures for peace.—A French expedition against Ireland prepared.—Both this and an attempt upon Wales fail.
1797. **The Bank Restriction Bill** passed.—The Bank of England ceases to make cash payments till 1821.—Admiral Sir John Jarvis and Commodore Nelson gain a great naval victory off Cape St. Vincent



A.D.

- (Feb. 14).—The French and Dutch defeated by Admiral Duncan off **Camperdown** (Oct. 11).—**Mutinies of the fleets at Spithead and the Nore.**—Buonaparte forces the **Treaty of Campo Formio** upon the Austrians, and returns to Paris.—Preparations for a French invasion of England.
1798. Havre bombarded by the English.—Buonaparte sails from **Toulon for Egypt.**—Malta captured on the way.—The French land in Egypt (July).—**Battle of the Pyramids**, and capture of Cairo.—Nelson gains the **Victory of the Nile** (Aug. 1).—He is created Baron Nelson of the Nile.—An alliance formed between **England, Russia, and Turkey.**—Some disturbances take place in Ireland during this year.—**Battle of Vinegar Hill**, near Wexford.
1799. Hostilities between Austria and France recommence.—The French compelled to recross the Rhine.—The Russians recover the French conquests in Italy.—Unsuccessful attempt to recover Holland from the French.—Critical situation of the French in Egypt.—Buonaparte undertakes an expedition into Palestine.—**The siege of Acre.**—Sir Sidney Smith compels the French to retreat.—Buonaparte returns to Egypt and thence to France, and is chosen **First Consul.**—**Capture of Seringapatam.**—**Tippu Sultan slain.**
1800. Act passed for the **Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland** (May).—Malta taken from the French (Sept. 5).—Formation of an armed neutrality between Russia, Sweden and Denmark, to prevent the right of search.



## READING LESSON XXXVIII.

## SPEECH OF LORD CHATHAM ON THE AMERICAN WAR.

“I cannot, my lords, I *will* not, join in congratulation on misfortune and disgrace. This, my lords, is a perilous and tremendous moment. It is not a time for adulation : the smoothness of flattery cannot save us in this rugged and awful crisis. It is now necessary to instruct the throne in the language of truth. We must, if possible, dispel the delusion and darkness which envelop it, and display, in its full danger and genuine colours, the ruin which is brought to our doors. Can ministers still presume to expect support in their infatuation? Can Parliament be so dead to its dignity and duty, as to give their support to measures thus obtruded and forced upon them? Measures, my lords, which have reduced this late flourishing empire to scorn and contempt! ‘But yesterday and Britain might have stood against the world; now none so poor as to do her reverence.’ The people whom we at first despised as rebels, but whom we now acknowledge as enemies, are abetted against us, supplied with every military store, have their interest consulted, and their ambassadors entertained, by our inveterate enemy; and ministers do not and dare not interpose with dignity or effect. The desperate state of our army abroad is in part known. No man more highly esteems the British troops than I do: I know their virtues and their valour; I know they can achieve anything but impossibilities; and I know that the conquest of British America is an impossibility. You cannot, my lords, you cannot conquer America. What is your present situation there? We do not know the *worst*; but we know that in three campaigns we have done nothing and suffered much. You may swell every expense, accumulate every

assistance, and extend your traffic to the shambles of every German despot; your attempts will be for ever vain and impotent—doubly so, indeed, from this mercenary aid on which you rely; for it irritates to an incurable resentment the minds of your adversaries, to overrun them with the mercenary sons of rapine and plunder, devoting them and their possessions to the rapacity of hireling cruelty. If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I would never lay down my arms—*never, never, never!*

But, my lords, who is the man, that, in addition to the disgraces and mischiefs of the war, has dared to authorize and associate with our arms the *tomahawk* and *scalping-knife* of the savage?—to call into civilized alliance the wild and inhuman inhabitants of the woods?—and to wage the horrors of this barbarous war against our brethren? My lords, these enormities cry aloud for redress and punishment. But, my lords, this barbarous measure has been defended, not only on the principles of policy and necessity, but also on those of morality; “for it is perfectly allowable,” says Lord Suffolk, “to use all the means which God and nature have put into our hands.” I am astonished, I am shocked, to hear such principles confessed—to hear them avowed in this house, or in this country. My lords, I did not intend to encroach so much on your attention; but I cannot repress my indignation—I feel myself impelled to speak. My lords, we are called upon as members of this house, as men, as Christians to protest against such horrible barbarity! ‘That God and nature has put into our hands.’ What ideas of God and nature that noble lord may entertain, I know not; but I know that such detestable principles are equally abhorrent to religion and humanity. What! to attribute the sacred sanction of God and nature to the massacres of the Indian

scalping-knife ! to the cannibal savage, torturing, murdering, devouring, drinking the blood of his mangled victims ! Such notions shock every precept of morality, every feeling of humanity, every sentiment of honour. These abominable principles, and the more abominable avowal of them, demand the most decisive indignation.

I call upon that right reverend, and this most learned bench, to vindicate the religion of their God, to support the justice of their country. I call upon the bishops to interpose the unsullied sanctity of their lawn—upon the judges to interpose the purity of their ermine, to save us from this pollution. I call upon the honour of your lordships to reverence the dignity of your ancestors and to maintain your own. I call upon the spirit and humanity of my country to vindicate the national character. I invoke the *genius of the constitution*. To send forth the merciless cannibal, thirsting for blood ! against whom ?—your Protestant brethren !—to lay waste their country, to desolate their dwellings, and extirpate their race and name by the aid and instrumentality of these *horrible hounds of war* ! Spain can no longer boast pre-eminence in barbarity. She armed herself with blood-hounds to extirpate the wretched natives of Mexico ; we, more ruthless, loose these dogs of war against our own countrymen in America, endeared to us by every tie that can sanctify humanity. I solemnly call upon your lordships, and upon every order of men in the state, to stamp upon this infamous procedure the indelible stigma of *Public Abhorrence*. More particularly I call upon the holy prelates of our religion to do away this iniquity ; let them perform a lustration to purify this country from this deep and deadly sin. My lords, I am old and weak, and at present unable to say more ; but my feelings and indignation were too strong to have said less. I could not have slept this



night in my bed, nor even reposed my head upon my pillow, without giving vent to my eternal abhorrence of such enormous and preposterous principles."

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE XLIX.

A.D.

1801. The Act for the **LEGISLATIVE UNION OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND** comes into operation (Jan. 1).—Pitt's letter to the king in favour of Catholic Emancipation (Jan. 31).—Pitt resigns, and is succeeded, as Prime Minister, by Mr. Addington.—Prussia joins the northern league and occupies Hanover.—Nelson gains the **victory of Copenhagen** (April 2).—Denmark detached from the confederacy.—Assassination of the Emperor Paul, and subsequent breaking up of the Maritime Alliance.—**Treaty of St. Petersburg** signed by Great Britain, Russia, Denmark, and Sweden.—Camps of invasion formed by the French at Ostend, Dunkirk, Boulogne, Brest, and St. Malo.—The French defeated at Alexandria.—Preliminaries of peace settled (Oct. 1).
1802. **TREATY OF AMIENS** signed (Mar. 28).—**Buonaparte** elected **Consul for life** (May 9).—Abdication of Charles Emmanuel, and annexation of his kingdom of Sardinia by the French.
1803. **War with France renewed**.—200 Dutch and French vessels seized.—English residents and travellers in France imprisoned.—**War with the Mahrattas in India**.—Successful campaigns of Generals Lake and Wellesley.—Capture of Ahmednuggur, Alligur, and the Cuttack.—Victories of **Delhi, Muttra, Agra, Laswaree, ASSAYE, Argaum**.—Capture of the Dutch and French West Indian colonies.—Enrolment of 300,000 volunteers to resist the French invasion.
1804. Return of the king's malady.—Pitt reinstated as Premier.—**Buonaparte** becomes emperor, as **NAPOLEON I.**—Capture of Spanish treasure ships.—**Spain declares war against England**.—The war continues in India.—Impeachment of Lord Melville on a charge of conniving at the misapplication of public money.—A treaty is concluded between England and Russia to resist the encroachments of France.—Nelson chases the French fleet to the West Indies and back again.



A.D.

1805. Napoleon crowned king of Italy (May).—Sir Robert Calder defeats the Spaniards off **Cape Finisterre** (July 22).—**Victory of TRAFALGAR** and death of **Nelson** (Oct. 21).—The naval power of France destroyed.—Austria having joined the alliance against France, Napoleon abandons the invasion of England, and leads the "Army of England" across the Rhine.—Capitulation of the Austrians at **Ulm**.—**Vienna** occupied (Nov. 13).—The Russians and Austrians defeated at **Austerlitz** (Dec. 2).—The **Confederation of the Rhine** formed, with Napoleon as Protector.
1806. **Death of Pitt** (Jan. 23).—The ministry of "*All the Talents*" formed, with Fox as Foreign Secretary.—Joseph Buonaparte installed by his brother Napoleon in the kingdom of Naples.—English expedition into Calabria, and defeat of the French at **Maida**.—The Prussians defeated at the **Battle of Jena** (Oct. 14).—The French enter **Berlin** (Oct. 25).—Napoleon issues the famous **Berlin Decree**, prohibiting all intercourse with England, and the use of her manufactures or colonial products (Nov. 21).—The Duke of Portland as Prime Minister with **Canning** as **Foreign Secretary**.—**Death of Fox** (Sept. 13).—The Marquis of Wellesley resigns the government of India, and is succeeded by Lord Cornwallis.—A treaty concluded with the Holkar.
1807. **Abolition of the Slave trade** by Act of Parliament.—Unsuccessful attempt of the ministry to remove the disabilities of Roman Catholics.—The ministry resigns.—Lord Portland is made Prime Minister.—The **Russians** defeated at **Eylau** (Feb. 8), and again at **Friedland** (June 14).—**Treaty of Tilsit** between France and Russia (June 25).—**Bombardment of Copenhagen** by the English (Sept. 2).—Capture of the Danish fleet.—**Heligoland** taken, as also the Danish islands of St. Thomas, St. John's, and Santa Croce, in the West Indies.—The king of Portugal refuses to enforce the Berlin Decree against England.—**Napoleon concludes a treaty with Spain, and occupies Portugal.**



READING LESSON XXXIX.

RISE OF THE BRITISH POWER IN INDIA.

Previously to the discovery by Vasco di Gama of the route to the East by sea, round the Cape of Good Hope, in the year 1497, very little was known to Europeans of the great Indian continent,—the trade in the rich productions of that country being confined almost entirely to the Venetians and Genoese, and conducted by way of the Mediterranean, Syria, and the Persian Gulf. From this time, however, the trade with the East passed into the hands of the Portuguese, who, under their able, though oftentimes unscrupulous commanders, established their influence over the whole coast-line of the Indian Ocean, and, according to the boast of their own contemporary historians, ruled over an empire stretching from the Cape of Good Hope to China, and comprehending a coast-line more than 12,000 miles in extent.

The dominion thus rapidly acquired by the Portuguese was almost as quickly lost. Their influence at the most was confined to the immediate neighbourhood of the factories and fortresses—perhaps not more than thirty in number—established at distant intervals along this immense line of coast; and, in many cases, their actual possession of territory was limited to the space within the walls of the fortress or factory itself. Their real sovereignty was on the ocean—their ships being successful in every encounter with those of the native powers. Their history for the space of more than a hundred years,—during which they acquired and maintained this kind of supremacy, as well as the exclusive commerce between Europe and India,—is little more than a detail of their struggles with the natives, whom their bigotry and intolerance inspired with the bitterest animosity against them.

Towards the close of the 16th century, the Portu-

guese began to be supplanted by the Dutch, who, by their superior diligence and punctuality, soon acquired the command of the Eastern trade, and, in the end, succeeded in dispossessing their rivals of nearly all their settlements in the islands of the great eastern archipelago. Early in the following century, the Portuguese found new rivals in the English, who gradually superseded them at Surat and other places on the western coast of India. At the same time they were deprived of Ormuz, and expelled from nearly all their possessions on the coast of Africa ; so that of all their vast dominion in the East, Goa and Mozambique, in a very decayed condition, are all that now remain to Portugal.

The enterprises of the Portuguese and Dutch were not without their effect upon the adventurous spirits in England of the time of the Tudors. The reigns of Henry VII. and Edward VI., but more especially that of Elizabeth, form, indeed, an era in the maritime, commercial, and industrial enterprise of the country. At first endeavours were made to open up some communication with India as yet undiscovered by the Portuguese ; but, as these failed, it became necessary to enter into direct competition with Portugal, and invade what had long been regarded as the exclusive privilege of that nation. Sir Francis Drake, in his voyage round the world (1577-1580), and Cavendish, who performed the same voyage between 1586 and 1588, both touched at the Portuguese settlements in the East, and commenced a trade which was destined subsequently to establish the supremacy of the English in India, and lay the foundation of our mighty empire in that quarter of the world.

In 1583, an attempt was made to open up a trade with India along the old route by way of the Mediterranean, Aleppo, Bagdad, and the Persian Gulf. The enterprise was unsuccessful, as was also the first Eng-

lish expedition sent round the Cape of Good Hope in 1591. These failures seem to have chilled the ardour of the English for a time; but, on learning that the Dutch had sent out a squadron in 1595, they were seized with the spirit of emulation, and, in 1599, formed an association for the purpose of fitting out ships for the Indian trade. This association was merged the following year into one on a larger scale, to which a charter was granted by Elizabeth for fifteen years, conferring the privilege of exclusive trade between England and all the countries eastward of the Cape. The new association comprised 215 knights, aldermen, and merchants, and was styled the "Governor and Company of Merchants trading to the East Indies."

The early expeditions of the Company were successful, and, by the year 1612, a regular intercourse was opened up with India,—King James obtaining from the Great Mogul, in 1614, through his ambassador, Sir Thomas Roe, the promise of protection to his subjects trading within the dominions of India. The charter of the Company was confirmed by the same monarch in 1609, and its privileges renewed for an unlimited period. The first English factory in India was established at Surat, in 1612, and was for a long time the principal seat of the English trade in the east. The first territorial possession acquired by the crown in India was the island of Bombay, which was ceded to England by the Portuguese upon the marriage of Charles II. with the Infanta of Portugal, in 1662. As the settlement, however, did not yield a sufficient amount of revenue to pay its own expenses, the sovereignty over it was transferred by King Charles to the Company, in 1668. The presidency over the other settlements of the Company was removed, in 1687, from Surat to Bombay, which has since remained the capital of Western India.

Factories were established by the English on the



Coromandel coast in the early part of the 17th century ; but it was not till 1640 that a permanent settlement was made, by permission of a native chief, at Madras, which became afterwards the capital of the Company's possessions in Southern India. The establishment in Bengal was not formed till the year 1656, when certain of the merchants of Surat, having obtained important trading privileges from the Nawab of Bengal, erected a factory on the Hoogly—a branch of the Ganges, and the principal channel of communication with the interior. Other factories were afterwards formed ; but for a long time they were made subject to the superintendence of the authorities at Fort St. George, the name by which the settlement at Madras was then known.

It was in Bengal that the Company first attempted to establish themselves as an independent political and military power. Their early efforts in this direction were not crowned with success. Endeavouring by force of arms to seek redress from the native rulers of Bengal for wrongs inflicted upon the agents of the Company, the English suffered the loss of their factories at Patna and elsewhere, and were obliged to evacuate Bengal. At the same time, Aurungzebe, who then occupied the Mogul throne, ordered an attack upon the English settlements in other parts of India. Surat, Masulipatam, and Vizagapatam were reduced, and Bombay was sorely pressed. Aurungzebe, however, having regard to the advantages which his dominions derived from foreign intercourse, gradually restored the privileges of the Company, and allowed the trade to resume its former channels. In spite, therefore, of the temporary check which the English cause received, we may look upon this period, 1689, as the epoch from which the East India Company began openly to aim at independent sovereignty in Hindustan.



At the close of the 17th century, the actual possessions of the English in India were confined to the settlements of Bombay and Madras and the small portions of territory in their immediate neighbourhood. To these, in 1698, were added the zemindarships of Calcutta and some other towns and districts in Bengal, obtained by purchase from the Nawab or Viceroy of the province. Here Fort William was erected, which, in 1707, was made the seat of a Presidency, and which was afterwards to become the capital of British India.

Affairs now went on smoothly, and trade rapidly increased; but no change of any moment in the territorial relations of the Company occurred until the outbreak of the war between England and France, in 1744, which, extending itself to the settlements of these two nations in the East, produced a revolution that eventually left the English power supreme in India.

For the events of this interesting period of the history of the British in India, we must refer the student to the chronological summary already given. It will be sufficient here to state, that the war between the rival powers was waged for many years with great fierceness, and that the victories of Clive ruined the French power in India, and left the English in possession of the Carnatic.

War with France was renewed in 1756, and an expedition under Count Lally, an officer of Irish extraction, was sent with the object of restoring the influence of France in Southern India; but the only result was the loss of Pondicherry, the most important, and almost the only, settlement left to the French in India.\*

---

\* This was subsequently restored to France by the treaty of Vienna, in 1815.

Important events were in the meanwhile taking place in Bengal. Calcutta fell into the hands of the Nawab Suraja Dowla; the horrors of the Black Hole were perpetrated (June, 1756); and, for a time, all was lost in that presidency. The day of vengeance, however, soon followed. Colonel Clive was despatched from Madras at the head of all the forces, naval and military, which could be spared, and, by June of the following year, after the total defeat of Suraja Dowla at the battle of Plassy, the English cause was again triumphant in Bengal,—the Company becoming the virtual sovereigns of some of the richest provinces of the Mogul Empire.

From this time the history of India is little more than the detail of a succession of conquests and annexations, which have resulted in giving us the possession of more than three-fourths of the entire country, and the protectorate—amounting in most cases to the actual sovereignty—over the remainder.

Clive retired finally from India in 1767. In his absence the affairs of the Company were mismanaged, and the attention of the Home Government being directed to them, Lord North, in 1773, by an Act of Parliament called the Regulating Act, introduced several important reforms into the constitution of the East India Company. By this act also the Governor of Bengal was invested with authority over the other Presidencies—Warren Hastings being sent out as the first Governor-General of India.

Our space precludes any lengthy account being given of the administration of this able man, who held the reins of Government in India from 1772 till 1785. During this period, great additions were made to the British territory; a successful war was waged in Mysore with Hyder Ali and his son Tippu Sultan; and, at the date of Hastings' departure for England, in 1785, peace prevailed throughout India.

Warren Hastings was succeeded by Lord Cornwallis (1786-1793). Under the vigorous rule of Lord Mornington (Marquis Wellesley), who became Governor-General in 1798, Tippu Sultan sustained his final defeat—his capital, Seringapatam, being taken and his dominions partitioned (1799). Soon after this, Arthur Wellesley (afterwards the celebrated Duke of Wellington) distinguished himself in a campaign against the Mahrattas, whom he overcame in the great battles of Assaye and Argaum in 1802. These victories, and those of General Lake in northern India, more than doubled our Eastern possessions in extent and value, and rendered our power dominant throughout Hindustan. Delhi, the capital of India and the residence of the last Mogul Emperor, at this time fell into our hands.

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE L

A.D.

- 1808. Madrid occupied by the French.**—Charles IV. decoyed to Bayonne and compelled to abdicate.—Joseph Buonaparte invested with the kingdom of Spain, Naples being conferred on Napoleon's brother-in-law, Murat.—Joseph enters Madrid (July 20).—The Spaniards determine to resist the French.—**Commencement of the PENINSULAR WAR.**—Sir Arthur Wellesley sails from Cork for the Peninsula with 12,000 men (July 12), and lands near Oporto (Aug. 1).—He defeats the French under Junot at **Vimeira** (Aug. 21).—The British army is re-inforced and placed under the command of Sir Hugh Dalrymple.—The **Convention of Cintra** signed, by which Junot agrees to evacuate Portugal.—**The British enter Lisbon** (Sept.).—Sir A. Wellesley and Sir H. Dalrymple return to England, and Sir John Moore is appointed to the chief command.
- 1809. Retreat of British forces.**—Defeat of the French, and death of Sir John Moore, at the **Battle of Corunna**

A. D.

- (Jan. 16).—Mr. Canning executes a treaty with the Spanish insurgents (Jan. 14).—Sir A. Wellesley appointed to the chief command in the Peninsula.—He arrives at Lisbon (April 22).—**Total defeat of the French at Talavera** (July 26, 28).—Wellesley created Viscount Wellington of Talavera.—Austria again at war with France.—Napoleon gains the victory of **Wagram**.—Disastrous **Expedition of the English to Walcheren**.—A second attempt upon Calabria by Sir J. Stuart leads to no useful result.—Five of the Ionian Islands taken from the French.—Mr. Percival becomes Premier.
- 1810.** Serious riots in London.—Sir Francis Burdett committed to the Tower, but afterwards released.—Cadiz invested by the French.—Massena in command of the French “Army of Portugal.”—Soult commands in Andalusia.—Wellington defeats the French at **Busaco** (Sept. 27), and retires within the famous lines of **Torres Vedras** (Oct. 8).—The French lose all their Indian possessions.—Santa Maura taken by the English.—Holland annexed to France.—**The Empire of Napoleon extends from Naples to Denmark, embracing a population of Eighty Millions.**—Nearly all the nations of Europe are allies of the French emperor.—Death of the Princess Amelia.—George III. becomes incurably insane.—Arrangements in progress for a regency.
- 1811.** **George, Prince of Wales, appointed Regent** (Jan. 15). Marshal Soult invades Portugal.—Massena’s army obliged to retreat.—General Graham (Lord Lynedoch) defeats the French, under Marshal Victor, at **Barossa** (Mar. 5).—Wellington defeats Massena at **Fuentes de Onoro** (May 3, 5).—The French evacuate Almeida.—Victory of the English, under Marshal Beresford, at **Albuera** (May 15).—**The siege of Badajoz resumed.**
- 1812.** Wellington captures **Ciudad Rodrigo** (Jan. 19).—**Badajoz taken by assault** (April 6).—The French evacuate Salamanca (June 16).—**Battle of Salamanca, and total defeat of the French** (July 22).—Wellington enters Madrid (Aug. 12).—Soult abandons the siege of Cadiz.—Assassination of Mr. Percival.—Lord Liverpool becomes Prime Minister.—Riots of the Luddites.—**The United States declare war against England.**—Failure of the American attempts upon Canada.—**Conclusion of a Treaty between Sweden and Russia.**—**Napoleon invades Russia.**—The French



A. D.

enter Moscow (Sept. 15).—**Burning of Moscow**, and disastrous retreat of the French.—**Treaties concluded between England, Sweden and Russia.**

MEMORY EXERCISE LI.

1813. Defeat of the French at **Vittoria** (June 21).—**Battles of the Pyrenees** (July 27–30).—Marshal Soult compelled to retreat into France.—Wellington enters France (Nov.).—The position of the French at Nivelle forced (Nov. 10).—Soult retires to Bayonne.—An offensive and defensive alliance contracted between Frederick William III., king of Prussia, and Alexander, emperor of Russia (Feb. 28).—The coalition is joined by Great Britain (June).—**The whole continent in arms against Napoleon.**—The French gain the **victories of Lutzen and Buntzen**, and occupy Leipzig and Dresden.—An armistice agreed upon (June 5 to Aug. 10).—Napoleon refuses to give up his conquests beyond the Rhine.—Austria joins the coalition, and war is renewed.—**The French are defeated in the battles of Dresden, Gross-Beeren, Dennewitz, and the Katzbach**, and finally in the great "**BATTLE OF THE NATIONS**" (*Völkerschlacht*) at Leipzig.—Buonaparte retreats across the Rhine, and reaches Paris (Nov. 9).
1814. **The Allies invade France.**—Negotiations for peace commenced.—Congress at Châtillon-Sur-Seine.—Napoleon refuses the terms offered.—After several engagements, **the Allies enter Paris** (Mar. 31).—**Abdication of Napoleon Buonaparte** (April 11).—Elba assigned to the ex-emperor as a residence.—Restoration of the Bourbon rule.—**Louis XVIII. enters Paris** in state (May 3).—**Treaty of Paris signed** (May 30).—Successes of Wellington in the South of France previously to the capture of Paris by the Allies.—The French defeated at **Orthez** (Feb. 27), and again in the bloody **battle of Toulouse** (April 10).—A convention with Soult signed (April 14).—Washington and other towns in America taken.—**Peace with America concluded** (Dec. 24).
1815. **Escape of Napoleon from Elba.**—He lands in France at Cannes (Mar. 1).—Flight of Louis XVIII.—Napoleon enters the Tuileries (April 20).—The French cross



A.D.

- the Belgian frontier with a large army (June 14).—**Repulse of the French at Quatre Bras** (June 16).—**BATTLE OF WATERLOO** (June 18).—**Second Abdication of Napoleon** (June 22).—His flight to Rochefort, where he surrenders to the captain of the *Bellerophon* (July 3).—**The army of the Allies enters Paris** (July 6).—**Louis XVIII. restored** (July 8).—Napoleon banished to St. Helena.—**Second Treaty of Paris** (Nov. 20).—Enactment of an oppressive corn law.—Distress and discontent in England.—Establishment of Hampden Clubs throughout the country.
1816. The National Debt now amounts to 800 millions, the last three years' war having cost England nearly 200 millions.—**Bombardment of Algiers** by Lord Exmouth (Aug. 27), and liberation of Christian captives.—**Nepaulese War**.—Lord Amherst's expedition to China.
1817. Death of the Princess Charlotte, only child of the Regent, who had married Prince Leopold of Saxe Coburg (late king of the Belgians).
1818. **Congress of the Allies at Aix-la Chapelle**.—Withdrawal of the army of occupation.—Wellington returns to England and joins the cabinet.—Death of Queen Charlotte.
1819. The "Peterloo" riots at Manchester.—Passing of the "Six Acts," the latest violation of our free "Constitution."
1820. Death of the Duke of Kent (Jan. 23).—George III. dies (Jan. 29), at the age of 82, and in the 60th year of his reign.

---

## READING LESSON XL.

### PROGRESS OF THE ENGLISH NATION.

The close of the long reign of George III. furnishes us with a convenient opportunity for reviewing the progress made by Great Britain in trade, wealth and population, since the accession of William III. in 1688. But, though the remarks which we have to make will be to a great extent retrospective in their nature, we shall not, in this lesson, confine ourselves exclusively to a notice of the development of com-

merce and the increase in the industrial wealth and material power of the country during the hundred and thirty years that intervened between the epoch of the revolution and the death of George III. : we shall, by anticipation, also allude briefly to the further, and still more remarkable, progress which has been made in every branch of industry and art during the past forty years.

And first, with reference to the principal steps which have been taken during this period for the enlargement and security of our political rights, it should be noticed, that the events of the Stuart era, which had left little to be achieved for our constitutional freedom, had—as we pointed out in a former review \*—left much to be accomplished for our greatness as a nation.

The chief parliamentary enactments since the Revolution, having regard to the definition, confirmation, or increase of the privileges of the subject, have been (1) the Bill of Rights, passed in the first year of the reign of William III., which embodied and confirmed the provisions of the Declaration of Rights, of the previous session, and which also included the settlement of the crown upon the present ruling dynasty ; (2) the Toleration Act, and the Bills for securing the independence of the judges and the liberty of the press,—also passed in the reign of William III. ; (3) the abolition of general warrants, in that of George III., by which authority had been illegally granted for the apprehension of any person or persons supposed to be implicated in a particular charge † ; (4) the repeal

---

\* Lesson xxxi., 'Review of the Stuart Dynasty,' page 177, *ante*.

† The movement which ended in the abolition of general warrants, arose mainly out of the prosecution of the "authors, printers and publishers" of the *North Briton* newspaper, in 1763, and the subsequent debates thereon in Parliament.

of the Test and Corporation Acts, and the emancipation of the Roman Catholics, under George IV.; (5) the Reform Bill, passed in the early part of the reign of William IV., which will form the subject of special notice in a succeeding lesson; and (6) the Bills for the admission of Jews into Parliament, and for the further extension of the parliamentary franchise, passed in the years 1858 and 1867 respectively.

The position and influence of England, which, under the Stuarts, had been reduced to so low an ebb, were restored by the wars of William III., and, still more so, by the victories and military genius of Marlborough in the succeeding reign; while the later struggles with the French republic and the Emperor Napoleon displayed all the energies and resources of the British nation, and gained for it the position of the leading power in Europe.

During this interval also, owing to our maritime supremacy, our colonial empire has extended far and wide. In Europe, the possession of Gibraltar and Malta has secured to us the command of the Mediterranean Sea; in America, the loss of our earlier settlements has been more than compensated by the retention or acquisition of the vast Dominion of Canada, which now stretches from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, and embraces the colonies of Quebec, Ontario, Nova Scotia with Cape Breton, New Brunswick, Manitoba, and British Columbia, together with our earliest settlement of Newfoundland; in the Southern Ocean, in Australia and New Zealand, a new Anglo-Saxon empire has sprung into being, offering a wide and important field of emigration to the surplus population of our too-thickly peopled island; while in the East, the same period has witnessed the growth of another empire, marvellous in extent and wealth, and containing within its limits more than one-sixth of the entire population of the globe.

A common notion prevailed during the early part of the reign of George III., that the population of the country was diminishing ; but the fallacy of this supposition was demonstrated at the taking of the first census of the United Kingdom in the year 1801, when the numbers returned for England and Wales alone amounted to more than nine millions, or an actual increase of a least four millions upon the estimated population at the time of the Revolution. Since the commencement of the present century the growth of the population has been still more rapid. By 1851 the numbers for England and Wales had reached upwards of eighteen millions, showing an increase during the half century of almost 100 per cent. A further increase of more than 25 per cent. has taken place in the last twenty years, the population according to the census of 1871 being 22,704,108. Up to the year 1841, a corresponding increase took place both in Ireland and Scotland ; but since that time,—owing to famine, maladministration, disaffection, and a variety of other causes, all tending to encourage an excessive emigration of the inhabitants,—the population of the former country has greatly diminished ; the numbers in 1841 being to those in 1871 in the proportion of about 3 to 2.\*

The large increase of the total population has taken place mainly in the towns and great centres of manufacturing industry ; for, whereas, in 1770, for each person engaged in the cultivation of the soil there were two occupied in trade and manufactures, in 1851, for one employed in agriculture there were three engaged in other occupations. That this increase in the urban,

---

\* The actual numbers in the case of Ireland in 1841 and 1871, were, respectively, 8,222,664 and 5,402,759. In 1801 the population of the country amounted to 5,319,867 ; so that the rate of diminution has been almost as great as the former rate of increase.



has not taken place at the expense of the rural, population, is evident from the fact that, during the interval from 1770 to 1851, the farmers appear to have doubled, and the agricultural labourers to have almost trebled in numbers. Improved methods of cultivation, the larger application of capital, the extension of the area under tillage, and the introduction of machinery and chemical science into the business of farming, have all combined to convince the British agriculturist that he has no need of protective laws to ensure his individual prosperity and to maintain a supply of food, if not actually commensurate with the rapid increase of the population, at any rate, in proportion to the natural capabilities of the soil.

Various legislative enactments have been framed, from time to time, for the purpose of regulating the exportation and importation of grain. A statute of Edward III. forbade the exportation of corn; other statutes of Richard II. and Henry IV. reversed this policy, and permitted its export under certain restrictions according to its value in the English market; another of Edward IV. prohibited the *importation* of corn, and is the first example of a protective law in favour of the English agriculturist; while others of later reigns, as those of Henry VIII., Edward VI., and Elizabeth, forbade, in the strictest terms, any exportation of corn whatsoever. In more modern times other plans have been adopted, with the view of limiting the supply from foreign countries, and protecting, as was vainly supposed, the interests of the British farmer. Thus, in 1773, the importation of corn was only permitted when the price of English wheat rose above 48s. the quarter,—this rate being raised subsequently, in 1791 and 1804, to 54s. and 63s. In 1815, importation was positively forbidden when the price of wheat in the English market was under 80s. From this time till the repeal of the corn-



laws, in 1846, various modifications were introduced, all more or less based on the principle of a sliding scale, by which the amount of duty levied upon imported corn was made to depend upon the price of wheat in the home market.

With the repeal of the corn-laws was introduced the principle of free-trade, which is now a fact accepted by men of all shades of political opinion, and which has done so much for the prosperity of the British nation and the extension of its commercial relations with every quarter of the habitable world. Some estimate of the dimensions which the trade of Great Britain has assumed may be formed by the consideration of the single fact, that the imports and exports of the United Kingdom, during the year 1871, were valued at no less a sum than £614,590,180.

The development of our industrial resources has kept pace with, if it has not actually outstripped, the increase in the population and commercial prosperity of the country. The beginning of the reign of George III. must be regarded as the epoch of this great revolution in the manufactures and trade of England ; for it was at this time that those truly great men lived and flourished who have done so much to elevate this country to the proud position she now enjoys among the nations of the earth, and who enabled it, at the time, to bear the brunt of the most tremendous war in which it was ever involved. To Brindley, the engineer, we owe the first introduction of canals, which, by uniting the principal rivers of the country, rendered communication between different parts easy, and cheapened the transport of commodities ; to the inventions of Hargreaves, Arkwright, Crompton, Cartwright, and—greatest of all—Watt, we are indebted for the enormous expansion of our textile manufactures, by which the trade of Manchester and the north has been increased a hundred-fold ; to Roe-

buck must be attributed the discovery and first application of the process of smelting iron-ore by means of pit-coal, instead of by charcoal obtained from forests, which were fast disappearing before the advance of agriculture; while the name of Wedgwood is associated with those improvements in the manufacture of earthenware, which laid the foundation of a branch of industry that has ministered very largely to the comfort of mankind.

One of the most remarkable features in the history of this period, is the enormous increase that has taken place in what is termed the National Debt,—an increase occasioned by the expensive wars in which the nation was involved, almost without intermission, throughout the 18th, and the early part of the present, century. At the accession of George I., in 1714, and for some time afterwards, the national debt did not much exceed fifty millions; but even then its amount was regarded with alarm; while twenty years subsequently it was predicted by statesmen and economists, that absolute ruin to the country would follow any augmentation of the public debt beyond a maximum amount of seventy-five or one hundred millions. It seems never to have been imagined for a moment that the resources of the country would keep pace with the increase of taxation, which every addition to the national liability involved, nor that the time would come when England would bear, with greater ease and elasticity, a burden ten times greater in amount than that which was then supposed to threaten national bankruptcy.

At the close of the war with Napoleon the national debt amounted to upwards of eight hundred and forty millions. From that time to the present the amount has been subject to fluctuations. Various efforts were made by statesmen to lessen the debt, and, in 1835, it had fallen to seven hundred and forty-three millions. Since

that time large additions have been made,—loans being required for different purposes, such as the Emancipation of the slaves, and the Crimean War,—so that now, in spite of more recent reductions, it stands at the still enormous amount of £785,800,000.\*

It would be impossible, within the compass of an ordinary lesson, to do justice to all the topics of interest connected with this most important period of our nation's history. We must content ourselves, therefore, with just the briefest allusion to a few of the more important ones which yet remain to be noticed, and refer the student to some work of larger pretensions for fuller information upon the subject we have here attempted to review.

The first introduction of canals and the improvement of inland navigation have already been referred to. At the same time a great reform was being effected in our highways, which, even towards the close of the last century, were, in many parts of England, in a most unsatisfactory condition,—the best coaches in a long journey rarely travelling at a greater speed than four or five miles an hour. The improvement of our roads was followed by the introduction of railways,—the first being opened for passenger traffic between Liverpool and Manchester, in September, 1830. Since that time, so rapid has been the extension of our system of railway communication, that at the end of the year 1871, there were open for traffic within the United Kingdom 15,756 miles of railroad, over which were conveyed during the year the immense number of 375,220,754 passengers.

One great advantage which the nation has derived from the introduction of railways has been the facilitating, and therefore the cheapening, of our postal

---

\* According to the Budget return of 1873.

communication. Under the old system, and in the days of stage-coaches, a letter could not be sent a distance of 400 miles at a less cost than one shilling; but, since the introduction of Sir Rowland Hill's postal reform, in 1840, a uniform rate of one penny for the carriage of single letters within the limits of the United Kingdom has been adopted.

The development of steam navigation has been almost as extraordinary as the rapid extension of railways. The application of steam to the propulsion of vessels belongs to a somewhat earlier date; but steam-vessels did not come into general use till after the peace of 1815. In that year there were in existence eight English-owned steamers; in 1849, the number had increased to 1142; and in 1871, there were 2,557, with a total burthen of 1,290,000 tons, engaged in the home and foreign trade, exclusive of an immense number of smaller vessels employed in the navigation of our rivers and canals.

All these improvements, together with the wonderful inventions that have been brought into use during the past half century,—such as the lighting of our towns with gas, the electric telegraph, steam-printing, electro-type processes, photography, etc.,—will render the era, which we have thus imperfectly attempted to review, one of the most memorable in the history of the world.





§ 4. *George IV.*

*Born* A.D. 1762 ; *Reigned* 10 years (1820–1830).

MEMORY EXERCISE LII.

A. D.

- 1820.** **Accession of George IV.**—The Cato-street Conspiracy.—Thistlewood and four other ringleaders executed (May 1).—George IV. attempts to procure a divorce from his queen, Caroline of Brunswick.—The Bill of pains and penalties against her abandoned.
- 1821.** The Commons vote an annuity of £50,000 to Queen Caroline.—**Death of the Emperor Napoleon** at St. Helena (May 5).—Coronation of the king (July 19).—The queen refused admission to share in, or even to witness, the ceremonial.—**Death of Caroline** (Aug. 7).—Riots at her funeral.
- 1822.** Mr. Peel succeeds Lord Sidmouth in the Home Office.—Mr. Canning becomes Foreign Secretary.
- 1823.** Commencement of the **Burmese War**.—The French army occupies Madrid, overturns the Cortes, and effects the release of Ferdinand.—Mr. Huskisson, President of the Board of Trade, carries the **Reciprocity of Duties Bill** (commencement of the system of Free Trade in England).
- 1824.** Daniel O'Connell advocates the claims of the Irish Roman Catholics.—The Catholic Association formed.
- 1825.** Recognition by England of the South American republics.—A Catholic Relief Bill passes the Commons, but is rejected by the Lords.—Great commercial panic.
- 1826.** A Spanish army invades Portugal.—A British force is despatched to the Tagus.—The Spaniards retire.
- 1827.** **Death of the Duke of York** (Jan. 5).—**Death of Lord Liverpool**.—Mr. Canning becomes Premier, but dies shortly afterwards (Aug. 8), and is succeeded by Lord Goderich.—**The Turkish and Egyptian fleets entirely destroyed at Navarino** (Oct. 20).—Greece becomes an independent kingdom.
- 1828.** The Duke of Wellington becomes Prime Minister.—Lord Palmerston Secretary at War.—**Repeal of the Test and Corporation Acts**.—Mr. Peel's Metropolitan Police Act passed.—Resignation of Mr. Huskisson and the other Canningites in the ministry.—Opening of the London University.
- 1829.** Passing of the **Catholic Emancipation Bill**.
- 1830.** **Death of George IV.** (June 26).



§ 5. *William IV.*

*Born A.D. 1765; Reigned 7 years (1830-1837).*

## MEMORY EXERCISE LIII.

A. D.

- 1830.** Accession of William, Duke of Clarence, as **William IV.**—**REVOLUTION IN FRANCE.**—Abdication of Charles X.—The Duke of Orleans (**Louis Philippe**) becomes king of the French (Aug. 9).—**Opening of the Liverpool and Manchester Railway.**—Mr. Huskisson killed.—Resignation of the Wellington ministry.—Earl Grey becomes Premier.
- 1831.** A Bill for Parliamentary Reform passes the Commons, but is thrown out of the Lords.—Riots in many of the towns in England.—Dissolution of Parliament.—Opening of new London Bridge.—Visitation of Cholera.
- 1832.** **THE REFORM BILL** passed.—Disturbances in Ireland.—A Coercion Bill introduced and passed.
- 1833.** Assembly of the Reformed House of Commons (Feb. 5).—Adoption of the term *Conservative* by the Tory party.—**ABOLITION OF SLAVERY** throughout the British dominions.
- 1834.** Resignation of Earl Grey.—Lord Melbourne appointed Premier.—A new **Poor Law** passed.—The Houses of Parliament destroyed by fire.—Lord Melbourne dismissed by the king.—Formation of a Conservative ministry under Sir Robert Peel.
- 1835.** Lord Melbourne returns to office.—**Municipal Corporations' Reform Act** passed.
- 1836.** **The Tithe Commutation Act** passed.—Reduction of the stamps on newspapers and of the duty on paper.—Creation of the bishoprics of Manchester and Ripon.—Passing of the Marriage and General Registration Acts, as well as an **Act allowing prisoners counsel.**
- 1837.** **Death of William IV.** (June 20).—Separation of Hanover from England.



READING LESSON XLI.

PARLIAMENTARY REFORM.

We have had occasion to make frequent reference to the origin and growth of the English Parliament; and it would be neither an inappropriate nor unprofitable exercise for the student to classify these references, as material for the composition of a short essay on the progress of the Legislature, in each of the several periods, from the first establishment—if not actual introduction—of the principle of parliamentary representation, by Simon de Montfort, in the reign of Henry III., till the final settlement, at the Revolution in 1688, of the relations existing between the Sovereign and the Parliament of the nation.

The more immediate object of the present lesson will be to describe briefly the various steps which have been taken, since the accession of William III., to place the representation of the people in Parliament upon a more satisfactory footing.

The word *Parliament* is derived from the French, and signifies an assembly which meets and confers together. By some of our historians the term is rendered *parlement* or *colloquium*, and was first applied to a Great Council of the nation, which assembled in 1246. This *Magnum Concilium*, like the *Witena-gemôt* of the Saxon period, was a legislative and judicial assembly, and was attended by the bishops, archbishops, and principal abbots, as well as by the barons or tenants *in capite*. Under the Norman sovereigns it was customary to assemble the council at the three great festivals of Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, and at other times when needed. Under the later Plantagenets, Parliament consisted, as now, of the two Houses of Lords and Commons,—the

House of Lords being composed of the sovereign and his lords spiritual and temporal; and the House of Commons, of the knights of the shires, and the burgesses or representatives of the cities and boroughs of England.

The origin of knights of the shires may be thus accounted for: by a clause of Magna Charta, King John was bound to summon all the inferior tenants-in-chief through the sheriffs of the different counties; but, as these oftentimes found it irksome and expensive to attend the Council in person, it became the practice with them, as a class, to send *representatives* to Parliament. The true principle of parliamentary representation was finally established in 1265, in the celebrated Parliament summoned by Simon de Montfort, when the sheriffs were commanded to return two knights from each shire, and two burgesses from every city or borough in each county. The House of Commons, therefore, may be said to date its existence from this time.

It is uncertain when Parliament was divided into two separate houses; but from the first, though sitting in the same chamber, the lords and commons appear to have voted independently, and to have imposed taxes, each upon their own order.

Various statutes have been passed from time to time determining the qualifications of persons entitled to vote at the elections of representatives to Parliament. By an Act of the reign of Henry VI., all who possessed freehold lands or houses of the annual value of 40s. (equivalent to about £20 at the present time) had the privilege of voting for the knights of their shires; while the representatives from the counties themselves were to be knights, and worth at least £20 a year. By this statute the franchise would appear to have been restricted; for, previously to this, under Henry IV., all persons who were present at

the *scir-gemôt* (shire-mote or county court) possessed the right of voting at parliamentary elections.

Other alterations were subsequently made, and several reforms introduced, especially during the Commonwealth; but it was not till the latter half of the 18th century that the questions of reform in the mode of parliamentary representation and the extension of the suffrage began to attract the serious attention of English statesmen. The great Lord Chatham, and his still greater son William Pitt, the younger, were both warm advocates of reform; and the latter, in 1782, moved in Parliament for a committee to inquire into the state of the representation. The motion was lost by a small majority; but several minor measures of reform were at the same time introduced and carried, such as a bill to prevent revenue-officers from voting at elections, and another excluding government contractors from seats in Parliament.

In 1785, Pitt, who was then Prime Minister, again brought forward the question of reform; but, though supported in his measure by many of his opponents, the bill, which he then introduced, was finally lost by a considerable majority. So little public interest was manifested in the subject at this period that the question was then allowed to drop.

It was not until the close of the war with revolutionary France, that parliamentary reform, which had previously been merely an interesting and speculative theory among a small section of leading statesmen, began to assume the proportions of a great national question. The distress which that war had occasioned throughout the land was borne patiently so long as the spirit of the nation was buoyed up with the excitement of victory over the enemy; but, when the struggle was over, and the people began to feel the weight of the grievous burden of taxation which it had been the means of laying upon them, a reaction took place, and



much discontent arose, accompanied by seditions and tumults in many parts of the country. Besides this, a desire for change had sprung up, fostered in a great measure by the outbreak of the French Revolution, and encouraged by unscrupulous agitators, who represented parliamentary reform as the only remedy for all the evils under which the country laboured. Associations were formed, under the name of Hampden Clubs, for the purpose of urging on the question of reform, and demanding annual Parliaments and universal suffrage.

The repeal of the Test Act, and the passing of the Roman Catholic Relief Bill, towards the close of the reign of George IV., and the Revolution in France in 1830, by which Charles X. was deposed, in consequence of his attempts upon the constitution of that country, were not without their influence in preparing the minds of men for further political reforms in England. For a time, king William IV. was not disposed to yield to the popular clamour for reform, and the Duke of Wellington, who was then Premier, incurred great unpopularity by his publicly expressed determination to oppose any measure of parliamentary reform. So strong an opposition to the Government now arose, that the cabinet resigned, and the premiership was thereupon entrusted to Earl Grey, who succeeded in forming a Whig ministry, pledged to the principle of reform in the representation of the people. Of this cabinet, Lord Brougham, Lord Palmerston and Lord Melbourne were prominent members.

On March 1st, 1831, a bill to amend the representation of the kingdom was introduced into the House of Commons by Lord John Russell. It was urged that the development of the industrial resources of the country had occasioned an entire change in the distribution of the population, and that while many places,



with few or no inhabitants, continued to return members to Parliament, there were many others that had become great centres of manufacturing industry, and yet remained unrepresented in the House of Commons.

The advocates and opponents of the Bill were so evenly balanced in the House, that the first reading was carried by a majority of one only. The ministry being afterwards defeated in committee, it was resolved to appeal to the country. Parliament was dissolved, and a new one elected amidst much popular tumult. The new Parliament contained a large preponderance of reformers; so that, when the Reform Bill was again introduced by Lord John Russell, on June 24th, it was carried by a majority of 136. Its subsequent rejection by the House of Lords, was followed by the most disgraceful riots throughout the country, attended by great loss of life and the destruction of much property.

Upon the reassembling of Parliament in March, 1832, the Reform Bill again passed the Commons, and was read a second time in the Lords; but the ministry, being defeated upon some of its clauses in committee of the latter house, resigned office. The Duke of Wellington found himself unable to form a new cabinet, and the king was obliged to recall his former ministers. Opposition being now considered useless, the bill was passed and received the royal assent,—the Duke of Wellington and about 100 of the peers abstaining from voting on the occasion.

By the Reform Bill both the county and borough franchises were extended. In the latter, votes were given, subject to certain conditions, to all resident house-holders paying an annual rental of £10; in the former, the old 40s. freeholders were retained and three new classes of voters created; (1) copyholders of £10 per annum; (2) leaseholders of the annual value of £10, if for a term of 60 years and of £50

for a term of 20 years; and (3) occupying tenants paying an annual rent of £50.

The main feature, however, of the bill consisted in the redistribution of the seats in Parliament. All boroughs having less than 2000 inhabitants ceased to elect members of Parliament; those with less than 4000, and formerly returning two members, were now to send only one. Fifty-six parliamentary boroughs were thus disfranchised, and thirty-one others lost one of their members. The total number of seats left vacant amounted to 143, and these were distributed among forty-three newly-created boroughs and the more thickly inhabited counties.

No further reform in the representation of the people was made till the passing of the second Reform Bill, in 1867,\* by which the franchise was extended in boroughs to all persons who were either householders paying poor-rates, or lodgers occupying rooms at a rental of £10 a year, or upwards; and in counties, to all occupiers of lands or tenements at an annual rental of not less than £12. At the same time, certain boroughs were disfranchised and the vacant seats assigned to Universities, large towns, and newly created divisions of the more populous counties. In the following year this measure of reform was extended to Ireland and Scotland.

In connexion with this subject, it may be mentioned that, for the greater protection of persons exercising the franchise, and for the purpose of securing secrecy of voting at parliamentary and municipal elections, a bill was introduced and passed, during the session of 1872,

---

\* It should be noted, however, that previously to this, in the session of the year 1858, an important measure was passed, by which the disabilities of Jews were removed, and they were henceforth eligible for admission into Parliament. Baron Rothschild at once took his seat for London, and he has been since followed by a considerable number of his co-religionists.

by which it was enacted that at all such elections for the future the votes should be taken by ballot.

For further information regarding the present constitution of the British Parliament, the student is referred to the concluding lesson of this series.

---

§ 6. *Victoria.*

*Born* A.D. 1819; *began to reign* 1837.

MEMORY EXERCISE LIV.

A.D.

1837. **Accession of QUEEN VICTORIA.**—The Duke of Cumberland succeeds to the crown of Hanover.—Insurrections in Canada, aided by adventurers from the United States.
1838. **The rebellion in Canada suppressed.**—Commencement of the **Chartist** movement.—Agitation for the repeal of the **Corn Laws**.—The **Anti-Corn-Law League** formed at Manchester (Sept.).
1839. **Chartist riots at Newport.**—Presentation of a **Chartist** petition.—Commencement of the **Afghan War**.—Candahar, Guzni, and Kelat taken.—Cabul occupied and Shah Sujah, the exiled prince, reinstated (Aug. 7).—Capture of Aden.
1840. **Marriage of the queen with Prince Albert of Saxe Coburg and Gotha.**—The **Penny Postage** established.—Oxford's attempt upon the life of the queen.—**Prince Louis Napoleon** makes an attempt on Boulogne.—He is seized and imprisoned in the fortress of Ham.—Public feeling in France excited against England.—**War with China**, arising out of disputes connected with the opium trade.—Expedition against Mehemet Ali, the Pasha of Egypt.—**Bombardment of Acre.**—Mehemet Ali evacuates Syria.
1841. **Dissolution of Parliament.**—Resignation of the ministry.—Sir Robert Peel again appointed Premier.—Insurrection in Afghanistan (Nov.).
1842. **Disastrous retreat of the English from Cabul.**—The after-successes of Generals Sale, Pollock, and Nott restore the prestige of the English arms.—The English then retire from Afghanistan.—**Treaty with China**, and con-

A. D.

- clusion of the "Opium War."—Introduction of the Income Tax, and repeal or reduction of customs duties.—Presentation of a second monster **Chartist** Petition.—A treaty concluded with the United States, settling the boundary between Canada and Maine.
1843. **Conquest of Sind.**—Sir Charles Napier gains the great victory of **Meanee**, over the **Ameers**, or Princes, of **Sind**; captures **Hyderabad**; and completes the **conquest of Sind**.—He is appointed Governor of the conquered province.—**War in Gwalior.**—The **Mahrattas** defeated with great loss at **Maharajpur** and **Punniar**.—Gwalior annexed.—The **Rebecca** riots in **Wales** suppressed.—Schism in the **Scotch Church**.—Establishment of the **Free Church of Scotland**.—Agitation in **Ireland** for the **Repeal of the Union**.—**Daniel O'Connell** arrested for conspiracy and sedition.
1844. Trial and conviction of **O'Connell** and his fellow conspirators.—Discovery of gold in **Australia**.
1845. **Sikh War.**—Victories of **Moodkee** and **Ferozeshah**.—Agricultural distress.—Famine in **Ireland**.—Renewed agitation of the **Anti-Corn-Law League**.—Resignation of the **Peel** ministry.—**Lord John Russell** fails in forming a new cabinet, and the **Peel** ministry is restored.
1846. **Repeal of the Corn Laws.**—The **Protectionists** desert **Sir Robert Peel**, who is obliged to resign.—**Lord John Russell** becomes **Premier**.—**The War with the Sikhs** continues.—Victories of **Aliwal** (Jan. 28) and **Sobraon** (Feb. 10).
1847. The **British Parliament** votes eight millions for the relief of the distress in **Ireland**.—Death of **Daniel O'Connell** at **Genoa**.

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE LV.

1848. **REVOLUTION IN FRANCE**—**Louis Philippe** expelled and **LOUIS NAPOLEON** elected **President of the French Republic**.—Demonstration of the **Chartists** on **Kennington Common**.—The "Cabbage Garden" insurrection in **Ireland**, incited by **Smith O'Brien**.—**The Sikh War** renewed.
1849. Partial repeal of the **Navigation Laws**.—Indecisive but bloody battle of **Chillianwalla** (Jan. 13).—Capture of **Multan** (Jan. 22).—**Lord Gough's Victory at Guzerat** (Feb. 21).—**The Punjab** annexed.



A.D.

1850. Death of Sir Robert Peel.—**Kafir War.**
1851. The Great Exhibition of the Industry of all Nations opened in Hyde Park (May 1).—Passing of the Ecclesiastical Titles Bill.
1852. Lord John Russell, being defeated on the Militia Bill, resigns, and is succeeded as Premier by Lord Derby.—**Death of the Duke of Wellington** at Walmer Castle.—Dissolution of Parliament.—Resignation of Lord Derby.—A coalition ministry formed, with Lord Aberdeen as Prime Minister. Louis Napoleon assumes supreme power in France, with the title of Consul.—**Second Burmese War.**—Pegu annexed.
1853. The termination of the Kafir War.—The Czar Nicholas of Russia demands the control over all members of the Greek Church within the Turkish dominions.—**War ensues between Russia and Turkey.**—The Russians cross the Pruth and occupy Wallachia and Moldavia.—They are defeated by Omar Pacha at **Olteniza.**—**Louis Napoleon** assumes the title of **Emperor.**
1854. England and France, in alliance with Turkey, declare war against Russia.—**THE CRIMEAN WAR.**—The Allies land at **Eupatoria** (Sept. 14).—Battle of the **Alma** (Sept. 20).—Siege of **Sebastopol.**—Battle of **Balaclava**—“Charge of the Light Brigade” (Oct. 25).—Battle of **Inkerman** (Nov. 5).—Destruction of **Bomarsund** in the Baltic by the English fleet under Sir Charles Napier.
1855. Resignation of Lord Aberdeen.—Lord Palmerston becomes Prime Minister.—Death of the Emperor Nicholas.—Kertch, Yenikale, and other towns destroyed by the English fleet under Sir Edmund Lyons.—The Sardinians join the Allies in the Crimea.—**Final bombardment of Sebastopol** (Sept. 5).—The Russians abandon the south side of the town.—Heroic defence of Kars by the Turkish garrison commanded by General Williams.
1856. Peace with Russia signed at Paris (Mar. 30).—Annexation of Oude.—War with China and Persia.





## READING LESSON XLII.

## THE RUSSIAN WAR.

From the time of the settlement of Europe at the Congress of Vienna, after the battle of Waterloo, until the outbreak of hostilities with Russia, in 1854, there were no warlike movements of any consequence on the Continent, and England had abundant leisure to cultivate the arts of peace ; to develop those resources,—industrial, maritime, and commercial,—which have been alluded to in a previous lesson ; and to recover from that condition of exhaustion and distress, in which she had been left at the close of the long wars with France. But this progress in the material prosperity of the nation was destined to receive a temporary check.

The policy of Russia towards Turkey had, for many years, been manifestly one of aggression, and the Czar Nicholas, who now ruled over the great empire of the North, and who had inherited, in an unusual degree, the ambitious spirit of his predecessors, even conceived the design of annexing the greater part of the Turkish territory in Europe, and establishing the capital of his vast dominions at Constantinople itself.

A pretext for a quarrel with the Sultan, and for the invasion of Turkey was soon discovered. Commencing with a demand for the protection of the members of the Greek Church at Jerusalem, and the granting to them of privileges equivalent to those which the Sultan, at the request of the French government, had conceded to the Latin Christians in Palestine, the Czar endeavoured to extort from the Turkish emperor the spiritual protectorate and control over all the Greek Christians within the latter's dominions.

This demand, which aimed at nothing less than the complete destruction of Turkish independence, and the elevation of the Emperor Nicholas to the position

of Pope of the Eastern Church, was forced upon the Porte\* in the most offensive manner by the Russian minister, Prince Menzikoff, who threatened that measures of coercion would be taken if his sovereign's request were not at once complied with. The Turkish government, at the instance of the Great Powers of Europe, offered fresh securities for the religious privileges of its Christian subjects. The offer was rejected by the Czar, who proceeded to carry out his threat by despatching troops across the Pruth (July 2nd, 1853), and taking military possession of the Moldo-Wallachian provinces.

Upon this act of aggression, the Sultan declared war (Sept. 27, 1853); and, in the battle of Olteniza, which soon followed, the Russian forces were defeated by the Turks under Omar Pacha. This victory was, however, counterbalanced by the total destruction of the Turkish fleet in the harbour of Sinope, a sea-port on the northern shore of Anatolia.

The Russian emperor had not calculated upon meeting with any serious opposition, on the part of the other European powers, to his designs upon Turkey. France had but just gone through the throes of a revolution, which had placed that country under the absolute sway of Napoleon III.; the states of Germany were inclined towards subservience to the wishes of the Czar; while the connivance of England in the spoliation of "the sick man's" territories was expected to be obtained by the offer of Egypt as her share of the plunder. But, contrary to these expectations, though Austria and Prussia held themselves aloof, England and France, feeling the importance of preserving the balance of power in eastern Europe, united for the defence of the Turkish sovereignty,

---

\* The Porte,—the name by which the Government at Constantinople is commonly known.

despatched a powerful combined fleet to the Black Sea, and, in the spring of the following year (1854), declared war against Russia.

An allied French and English force, under Marshal St. Arnaud and Lord Raglan, was assembled at Varna, in Turkey, and an English fleet under Sir Charles Napier sailed for the Baltic; and thus for the first time, after many centuries, the English and French, who had so often encountered each other as enemies, were arrayed side by side against a common foe.

The English fleet in the Baltic was afterwards joined by a French contingent; but, beyond maintaining a close blockade of the Russian ports, and capturing and destroying the fortress of Bomarsund in the Aaland Islands, at the entrance of the Gulf of Finland, very little was effected in that quarter.

The principal scene of operation was in south-eastern Europe. The noble defence of Silistria, and the other successes of the Turks on the Danube, enabled the allied forces, assembled at Varna, to undertake the reduction of the Russian fortress and great naval station of Sebastopol, in the Crimea. A landing was effected without opposition (Sept. 14) at a place called Eupatoria, to the north-west of Sebastopol; and a few days afterwards (Sept. 20), while advancing southwards towards the fortress, the Allies fell in with and totally defeated a force of 60,000 Russians, under Prince Menzikoff, who had been posted on the heights above the Alma, to intercept their passage of that river. So complete was the rout of the enemy that, had the Allies been in a position to move forward at once, it is probable Sebastopol itself would have fallen immediately into their hands. The care of the wounded and the interment of the dead, occasioned a delay that enabled the Russians to place the city in a better posture of defence.

The Allies continued their march, and, taking up a position to the southward of the fortress, between it and the small sea-port of Balaclava, made preparations for commencing a regular siege of the place. The rocky nature of the soil rendered this an extremely difficult matter, and it was not until October 17th that the first grand attack by land and sea could be made. From this time, the siege was continued with little intermission for nearly a whole year, until its final surrender on Sept. 8th, 1855.

Shortly after the commencement of the siege, a Russian force of 30,000 men, under General Liprandi, made an attack upon the English position at Balaclava (Oct. 25th). This attempt to raise the siege was repulsed with great loss to the enemy; but the battle is chiefly memorable for the gallant charge of the light cavalry brigade, under Lord Cardigan, in which, through some confusion in the orders, a body of 600 English horse advanced upon the whole Russian army, captured, and, for a little while, held possession of the enemy's artillery, and fought their way back through a body of 5,000 horse, but leaving more than two-thirds of their number upon the field of battle.

Another attempt was made upon the English position at Inkerman, in the early dusk of the morning of November 5th. Our troops, though taken by surprise and attacked by overwhelming numbers, gallantly held their ground until the arrival of assistance from the French camp enabled them to drive the Russians back to their fortifications with immense loss.

After this defeat, the Russians, though they conducted the defence of the town with great skill and obstinacy, and made desperate sorties upon the besieging forces, did not venture upon another pitched battle.

The loss of the English, through sickness and exposure to the inclemency of a Russian winter, was



very considerable ; while their sufferings were greatly aggravated by the failure of supplies, owing to the disorganized and inefficient condition of the Commissariat Department. So great was the indignation excited in England, upon learning that our troops were actually dying for want of food and clothing, while whole ship-loads of supplies were lying almost within their reach in the harbours of Balaclava, that the ministry of the time were compelled to resign office,—they being held accountable for the mis-management which had brought about so lamentable a state of affairs.

Lord Palmerston thereupon became Prime Minister : more active measures for the relief of the English army in the Crimea were adopted ; a railway was constructed between Balaclava and the camp before Sebastopol for the transport of provisions and warlike materials ; and means were taken for the better housing of the troops engaged in the siege. The privations endured by our soldiers, both in camp and hospital, called forth the active sympathy of many noble-minded English ladies, who, banding themselves together under the leadership of Miss Florence Nightingale, went forth to the seat of war, and, by their untiring devotion and unwearied labours, did much to alleviate the sufferings of the sick and wounded.

In the course of the war, several changes were made in the command. Marshal St. Arnaud, the French commander, died soon after the victory of Alma, and was succeeded by General Canrobert ; Lord Raglan succumbed to an attack of cholera, in May, 1855, and was succeeded by General Simpson ; and the new generals were subsequently superseded by General Pelissier and Sir William Codrington.

The combined fleets of the French and English in the Black Sea, having failed in all their attempts upon the seaward defences of Sebastopol, were sent upon



an expedition against the Russian ports in the Sea of Azov. Kertch, Yenikale, and other towns were captured, and vast quantities of grain and other necessaries, collected for the supply of the garrison of Sebastopol, were upon this occasion destroyed (May, 1855).

The death of the Czar Nicholas had taken place previously to this, and it was thought that this event, which occurred somewhat suddenly, would have led to the re-establishment of peace; but the war continued to be prosecuted with equal vigour by his son and successor, Alexander.

Austria and Prussia still held aloof from the contest, though they were, perhaps, the two European states most interested in checking the encroachments of Russia; but the Allies were joined in the course of the year 1855, by the Sardinians, who despatched a well equipped force to take part in the operations against Sebastopol. Shortly after their arrival in the Crimea, the final assault and surrender of the fortress took place; and, with the fall of Sebastopol, the war may be said to have come virtually to an end. The Allies wintered amid the ruins of the captured city; and there is little doubt that, if the struggle had continued, the whole of the Crimea would have fallen into their hands. Negotiations for peace were, however, commenced and brought to a conclusion in January, 1856.

The final treaty was signed at Paris, on the 30th of March following. By it the protectorate which Russia had assumed in the Danubian Provinces was abolished; the navigation of the Danube and its mouths was declared free and open; both Russian and Turkish ships of war were banished from the Black Sea; the fortifications at Sebastopol were to be demolished; the Christian subjects of the Porte were placed under the protection of the contracting powers; and Russia

was compelled to forego all the demands which originally led to the war.

In November, 1870, during the tremendous struggle between France and Germany, an alarming revival of the Turkish question was threatened by the declaration on the part of Russia, that she would no longer be bound by the treaty, which had been extorted from her by the sacrifice of so much blood and treasure. The matter being referred to a conference of all the powers concerned, resulted in the partial concession of the Czar's claims,—the Black Sea being now thrown open to the admission of all friendly fleets, and the Russians being permitted to restore the fortifications, dock-yards, and arsenals, and to renew the naval force in those waters, which had formerly menaced the existence of the Turkish sovereignty.

---

### MEMORY EXERCISE LVI.

A. D.

- 1857. THE INDIAN MUTINY.**—The rebels capture Delhi.—**Massacre of Cawnpore.**—Recapture of Delhi by General Wilson (Sept. 21).—**First relief of Lucknow** by General Havelock.—Sir Colin Campbell sent out as commander-in-chief.—**Final relief of Lucknow.**—Death of Havelock (Nov. 25).—Suppression of the mutiny.—**War with China.**—Canton taken.
- 1858. The East India Company abolished,** and the government of India vested in the Crown.—**Queen Victoria proclaimed EMPRESS OF INDIA.**—Lord Palmerston's ministry overthrown.—Lord Derby again Premier, with Mr. Disraeli as Chancellor of the Exchequer.—**Jews admitted to Parliament.**—Lord Elgin visits Japan, and negotiates a commercial treaty with that country.
- 1859. Lord Palmerston again in power.**—**Enrolment of the Rifle Volunteers.**—War in Italy, between France and Austria.
- 1860. The French and English occupy Peking.**—**The Treaty of Tien-tsin** ratified (Oct. 13).—**A treaty of commerce**

A.D.

- concluded between England and France.—Visit of the Prince of Wales to Canada and New York.—Garibaldi's campaign in Sicily and Naples.
1861. The Census of March gives the population of the United Kingdom at 29,334,788.—**Secession of the Southern States and commencement of the Civil War in America.**—Death of the Prince Consort (Dec. 14).
1862. Distress in Lancashire from the failure of the cotton supply from America.—Opening of the International Exhibition (May 1).
1863. **Marriage of the Prince of Wales to the Princess Alexandra of Denmark** (Mar. 10).
1864. The Ionian Islands annexed to Greece.
1865. **Assassination of President Lincoln** (April 14).—Death of Lord Palmerston (Oct.).—Earl Russell becomes Prime Minister.—The Fenian conspiracy in Ireland.
1866. **War between Prussia and Austria.**—Lord Russell's Government defeated upon the question of Reform.—Lord Derby again at the head of the cabinet.—The Atlantic Telegraph successfully laid.
1867. **Passing of a New Reform Bill.**—**War with Abyssinia** for the release of a number of English captives.
1868. Death of Lord Derby.—Mr. Disraeli succeeds to the Premiership.—Magdala besieged and taken (April 13).—Close of the Abyssinian War.—Resignation of Mr. Disraeli (Dec. 9).—Mr. Gladstone becomes Prime Minister.
1869. Mr. Gladstone's **Act for the Disestablishment and Disendowment of the Irish Church** receives the Royal Assent (July 26).—Opening of the Suez Canal.
1870. **War between France and Prussia.**—Napoleon III. taken prisoner at Sedan.
1871. Paris surrenders to the Prussians (Jan.).—Peace signed (Mar. 1).—Insurrection in Paris, and establishment of the "Commune" Government.—Second siege of Paris.—**France once more a Republic.**—M. Thiers elected President.—**Re-establishment of the German Empire.**
1872. Passing of the Ballot Act.—Meeting of the Tribunal of Arbitration under the Treaty of Washington at Geneva.

## READING LESSON XLIII.

## THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.

The government of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland is a limited monarchy, and the supreme power is vested conjointly in the Legislature and the Executive. It is this which constitutes the great excellence of our constitution, which is neither an absolute monarchy, a despotic oligarchy, nor a tyrannical democracy, but a judicious combination of all three estates, each acting as a wholesome check upon the others, and thus securing to the nation at large that degree of liberty which has so long been the pride and glory of our country. A great writer on the subject of constitutional history has said, "In all tyrannical governments, the supreme magistracy, or the right of both making and enforcing the laws, is vested in one and the same man, or one and the same body of men; and whenever these powers are united together, there can be no public liberty."

The Legislature of the United Kingdom consists of the King, and the three estates of the Lords Temporal, the Lords Spiritual, and the Commons, without whose joint approval no legislative measure is complete.

The office of sovereign is hereditary, and is not confined by any Salic law, as in some countries, to the male members only of the English Royal Family. The chief prerogatives of the sovereign are (1) the privilege of summoning, proroguing, and dissolving Parliament; (2) the final approval or disapproval of all bills passed by the two Houses;—the sovereign has not, however, the power of initiating such bills; (3) the granting of pardon to offenders against the law; (4) the creation of all ranks of nobility; (5) the control of the coinage of the realm; and (6) the management of our relations with foreign countries.

The House of Lords forms the Upper House of



Parliament, and is composed of the Lords Spiritual and the Lords Temporal.

The Lords Spiritual are twenty-six in number, including the two Archbishops, and all the Bishops of the Church of England, with the exception of the Bishop of Sodor and Man and one other.\* Previously to the disestablishment of the Irish Church, in 1869, one archbishop and three bishops of that Church also possessed seats in the House of Lords.

The Temporal Lords include the whole peerage of England, and certain representative peers of Scotland and Ireland ; though many others of the noblemen of these latter countries possess English titles, which give them the right to sit in the House of Lords ; *e. g.*, the Duke of Buccleuch sits as Earl of Doncaster, and the Duke of Leinster as Viscount Leinster. The number of Lords Temporal is undetermined, and can be increased at the pleasure of the sovereign. At present, the whole assembly of the Upper House comprises 4 Princes of the Royal Family, 2 Archbishops, 20 Dukes, 19 Marquises, 110 Earls, 23 Viscounts, 24 Bishops, 232 Barons, 16 Scottish Representative Peers, elected for each Parliament, and 28 Irish Representative Peers, elected for life.

Previous to the Legislative Union with Scotland, in 1707, the English House of Commons consisted of 513 members. 45 were added for Scotland, and, in 1801, upon the union with Ireland, an addition of 100 was made for that country also ; thus making up a grand total of 658 members. This number has since been preserved, though the apportionment of

---

\* On the creation of the new bishopric of Manchester, in 1837, in order to avoid increasing the number of Spiritual Peers in the House of Lords, it was arranged that the junior bishop, for the time being, should not possess a seat in the Upper House. The sees of London, Winchester, and Durham were, however, not to be affected by this rule.



the seats among the different countries has been twice altered, by the Reform Bills of 1832 and 1867. The House of Commons now comprises 493 members from England and Wales, 60 from Scotland, and 105 from Ireland, elected by the constituents of the counties, cities, boroughs, and universities of the United Kingdom.

By the Septennial Act of the year 1716, the duration of Parliament is limited to seven years; but it is seldom that a Parliament lives out its allotted term: only three times within the present century has a period of six years been exceeded. A new Parliament must be called within six months of the accession of a new sovereign.

To the House of Commons belongs the special privilege of originating all bills of supply; the House of Lords may reject these, but cannot alter them.

All legislative enactments must pass through several stages, and must receive the assent of King, Lords, and Commons, before they have the force of law. Bills,—with the exception of those of supply, just alluded to,—may be initiated in either house. Permission to introduce the motion is first obtained; the measure is then read a first and second time, and afterwards considered clause by clause in a committee of the whole house; the third reading then follows; and, when it has passed all these stages, by a majority in each case, in the one house, the approval of the other is obtained in a precisely similar manner. The final assent of the sovereign—which is now never withheld—then constitutes the measure an Act of Parliament, and a portion of the statute law of the land.

As it is a principle of the English constitution that the “king can do no wrong,” his advisers for the time being are held responsible for any mismanagement of national affairs, and are therefore liable to impeachment for any acts of bad government.

The supreme *executive* power is vested in the sovereign alone, who, however, rules through his ministers, the chief of whom form the Cabinet. Besides these, we have the Privy Council, which is a large body of advisers of the sovereign, chosen from among the most prominent men in the kingdom. Of this body the Cabinet forms, as it were, a committee.

There are also other Committees of the Privy Council, charged with special offices; *e. g.*, the Committee of Privy Council on Education, whose duty it is to administer the grant annually voted by Parliament for the purposes of public instruction; the Poor Law Board, the Chief Commissioner of which has a seat in the present Cabinet (1873); the Board of Trade; and the Boards of Health, Works, etc.

The chiefs of these several departments of Government generally have seats in the Cabinet, which at the present time consists of the following officials:—The First Lord of the Treasury, or Prime Minister as he is called; the Lord High Chancellor, or chief legal adviser of the Crown, who is also the Keeper of the Great Seal; the Chancellor of the Exchequer, who has the management of the revenue and expenditure of the kingdom; The Lord President of the Council; the Lord Privy Seal; the Secretaries of State for the Home Department, for Foreign Affairs, for the Colonies, for the War Department, and for India; the First Lord of the Admiralty; the Chief Secretary for Ireland; the President of the Local Government Board; the Vice-President of the Committee of Council; the Chief Commissioner of the Poor Law Board; and the Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster.

For the administration of justice there are various Courts, as the Courts of Queen's Bench, Common Pleas, and Exchequer, the High Court of Chancery, etc., presided over by Judges appointed and paid by

the Crown. At certain seasons of the year the judges hold assizes in different parts of the country, England being divided for that purpose into six circuits, nearly corresponding to the districts into which it was divided in the reign of Henry II., when itinerating judges were first established (A. D. 1176). In Ireland the courts and mode of procedure are similar to those of England ; in Scotland the chief tribunals are the Court of Session and High Court of Justiciary. In the criminal courts of England and Ireland, causes are first examined before a Grand Jury, and, if they are found fit for trial, a second Jury of twelve decide upon the case by a unanimous verdict of Guilty or Not Guilty ; in Scotland there is no Grand Jury, but a Jury of fifteen try the case, and, by a majority of votes, return the verdict of Guilty, Not Guilty, or "Not Proven," as the case may be.

In addition to the Courts above-named there are the Admiralty Court, or supreme tribunal for the trial of maritime cases ; the Ecclesiastical Court, for the administration of the Canon Law of the Church of England, and the trial of spiritual causes ; the Court of Probate and Divorce ; and the Judicial Committee of Privy Council, consisting of those members of the Privy Council who sit as a court of justice in the hearing of appeals.

The three great principles upon which the administration of justice in England is founded, are those of Trial by Jury, the Habeas Corpus Act, and the Independence of the Judges. The laws of our land, as administered in our Courts, may be classified as ; (1), Statute Law, which is found embodied in the various Acts of the English Parliament ; (2), Common Law, which is the *un-written* law of the land, or that which receives its binding force from immemorial usage and universal reception, as distinct from the *written* or Statute Law ; and (3), the Law of Equity, which ap-

plies to those cases in which the sovereign interferes through the Lord Chancellor, to correct or mitigate the severity of the Common Law, or to extend the application of the law to cases which, though not expressed, come clearly within the reason of the law, whether Common or Statute.



## GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

**George I. (1714-1727)\*** = Princess Sophia of Zell.

**George II. (1727-1760)** = Caroline of Anspach.

Sophia = Frederick William, afterwards King of Prussia.

Frederick, Prince of Wales (died 1751). | William Augustus, Duke of Cumberland (died 1765). | Anne = Prince of Orange. (died 1759). | Mary = Landgrave of Hesse Cassel. (died 1771). | Louisa = Frederick V. Kg. of Denmark. (died 1751).

Edward Augustus, Duke of York (died 1767). | William Henry, Duke of Gloucester (died 1805). | Henry Frederick, Duke of Cumberland (died 1790). | Augusta = Duke of Brunswick. | Caroline = Christian VII., King of Denmark.

**George III.** = Sophia Charlotte, of Mecklenburgh. | Charles Frederick, Duke of Brunswick (killed at Quatre Bras, 1815). | Caroline = George, P. of Wales (George IV.). | Frederick, King of Denmark.

**George IV.** = Caroline of Brunswick. | Frederick, Duke of York (died 1827). | Edward, Duke of Kent (died 1820). | Ernest, Duke of Cumberland and King of Hanover (died 1851). | Adolphus, Duke of Cambridge (died 1850). | Seven other princes and princesses.

**William IV.** = Adelaide of Saxe Meiningen. [No surviving issue.] | Victoria [Ascended the throne June 20th, 1837]. | Albert of Saxe-Coburg (has issue). | George, Duke of Cambridge (born 1819).

Victoria, Princess Royal (b. Nov. 21, 1840). | Alice (b. Ap. 25, 1843). | Alfred (b. Aug. 6, 1844). | Helena (b. May 25, 1846). | Louise (b. March 18, 1848). | Arthur (b. May 1, 1850). | Leopold (b. Ap. 7, 1853). | Beatrice (b. Ap. 14, 1857).

\* For descent of George I. from James I. see Table p. 191.

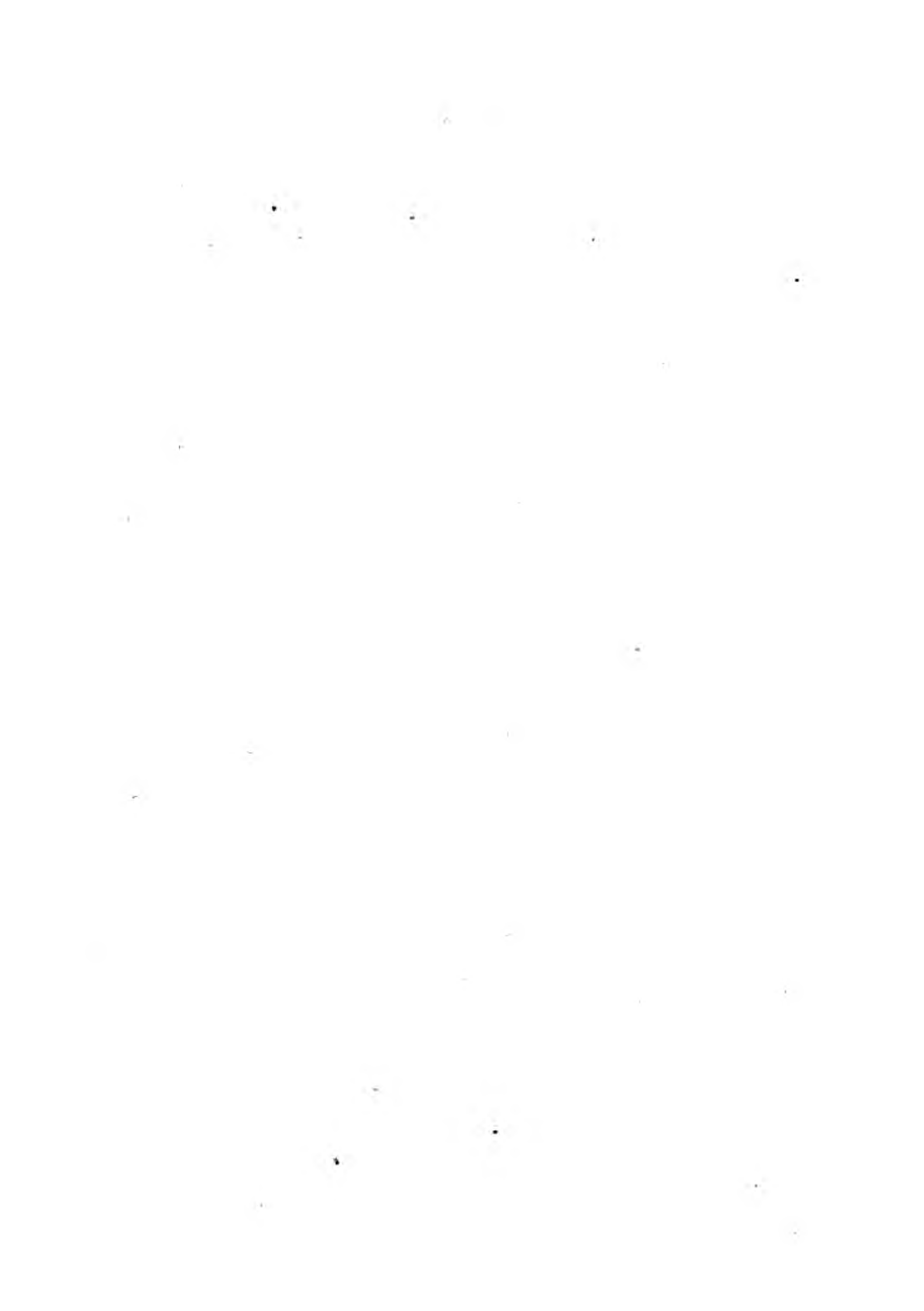


# APPENDIX.

---

## TABLES OF REFERENCE.

1. SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND.
2. BATTLES.
3. TREATIES.
4. STATUTES AND ACTS OF PARLIAMENT.
5. BRITISH COLONIES.
6. ENGLISH WRITERS.
7. STATESMEN, ARTISTS, MEN OF SCIENCE, ETC.
8. MILITARY AND NAVAL COMMANDERS.
9. ADMINISTRATIONS UNDER THE BRUNSWICK DYNASTY.
10. STYLES OF ENGLISH ARCHITECTURE.



## I. SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND.

<i>Sovereign.</i>	<i>Title.</i>	<i>Came to the Throne</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Age.</i>	<i>Length of Reign.</i>
NORMAN LINE.					
WILLIAM I. ....	Obtained the Crown by Conquest.....	1066	1087	60	21
WILLIAM II. ....	Second son of William I. ....	1087	1100	43	13
HENRY I. ....	Youngest son of William I. ....	1100	1135	68	35
STEPHEN ..... {	Son of Stephen, Count of Blois, by } Adela, daughter of William I. ....	1135	1154	49	19
THE PLANTAGENET LINE.					
HENRY II. .... {	Son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, by Ma- } tilda, only surviving child of Henry I. }	1154	1189	56	35
RICHARD I. ....	Third son of Henry II. ....	1189	1199	41	10
JOHN ..... {	Youngest son of Henry II. ....	1199	1216	49	17
HENRY III. ....	Eldest son of John ..... {	1216	1272	66	56
EDWARD I. ....	Eldest son of Henry III. ....	1272	1307	67	35
EDWARD II. ....	Eldest surviving son of Edward I. ....	1307	1327	43	20
EDWARD III. ....	Eldest son of Edward II. ....	1327	1377	65	50
RICHARD II. .... {	Son of the Black Prince, eldest son of } Edward III. ....	1377	1400	33	22
THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.					
HENRY IV. ....	Son of John of Gaunt, 4th son of Ed. III.	1399	1413	46	14
HENRY V. ....	Eldest son of Henry IV. ....	1413	1422	34	9
HENRY VI. ....	Only son of Henry V. ....	1422	1471	49	39
THE HOUSE OF YORK,					
EDWARD IV. .... {	His grandfather, Richard, was son of } Edmund, 5th son of Edward III. ; } and his grandmother, Anne, was } great-grand-daughter of Lionel, 3rd } son of Edward III. ....	1461	1483	42	22
EDWARD V. ....	Eldest son of Edward IV. ....	1483	1483	11	0
RICHARD III. ....	Younger brother of Edward IV. ....	1483	1485	42	2
THE TUDOR LINE.					
HENRY VII. .... {	His father was Edmund, eldest son of } Owen Tudor and Queen Catherine, } widow of Henry V. ; and his mother } was Margaret Beaufort, great-grand- } daughter of John of Gaunt .....	1485	1509	52	24
HENRY VIII. ....	Only surviving son of Henry VII. ....	1509	1547	55	38
EDWARD VI. ....	Son of Henry VIII. by Jane Seymour	1547	1553	16	6
MARY ..... {	Daughter of Henry VIII. by Catherine } of Aragon ..... {	1553	1558	42	5
ELIZABETH ..... {	Daughter of Henry VIII. by Anne } Boleyn ..... {	1558	1603	69	45
THE STUART LINE.					
JAMES I. .... {	Son of Mary, Queen of Scots, grand- } daughter of James IV. and Margaret, } eldest daughter of Henry VII. ....	1603	1625	58	22
CHARLES I. ....	Only surviving son of James I. ....	1625	1649	48	24
COMMONWEALTH {	Commonwealth declared May 19 ..... Oliver Cromwell, Lord Protector ..... Richard Cromwell, Lord Protector ....	1649 1653 1658	— 1658* 1659*	— 59 —	11 — —
CHARLES II. ....	Eldest son of Charles I. ....	1660	1685	54	25
JAMES II. ....	Only surviving son of Charles I. ....	1685	1688†	67	3
{ WILLIAM III. ... } and { MARY II. .... }	Son of William of Nassau, by Mary, } daughter of Charles I. .... {	1689	{ 1702	51	13
ANNE ..... {	Eldest daughter of James II. .... } Daughter of James II. .... {	1702	{ 1694 1714	32 49	6 12
THE HANOVERIAN LINE.					
GEORGE I. .... {	Eldest son of the Elector of Hanover, } by Sophia, daughter of Frederick, } the Elector Palatine, and Elizabeth, } daughter of James I. ....	1714	1727	67	13
GEORGE II. ....	Only son of George I. ....	1727	1760	77	33
GEORGE III. .... {	Son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, the } eldest son of George II. ....	1760	1820	82	60
GEORGE IV. ....	Eldest son of George III. ....	1820	1830	68	10
WILLIAM IV. ....	Third son of George III. ....	1830	1837	72	7
VICTORIA ..... {	Daughter of Edward, Duke of Kent, } 4th son of George III. ....	1837	Vivat Regina!		

\* Richard Cromwell resigned in this year (1659). He died in 1712.

† James II. abdicated the throne (1688). He died at St. Germain, Sept. 6, 1701.

## II. A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE PRINCIPAL BATTLES RECORDED IN ENGLISH HISTORY.

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name, or Locality.</i>	<i>Particulars.</i>
84	—	Grampians .....	Galgacus, the Caledonian leader, defeated by Agricola.
455	—	Ægeles-ford (Aylesford) .....	Horsa, the Saxon chieftain, slain.
457	—	Crayford .....	Britons overcome by the Saxons.— Kingdom of Kent founded.
520	—	Mount Badon ....	Arthur, King of the Silures, defeats the Saxons.
835	EGBERT .....	Hengesdown .....	Defeat of Norse invaders.
878	ALFRED .....	Ethandun .....	Guthrun, the Danish leader, defeated.
934	ATHELSTANE ....	Brunanburgh .....	Defeat of the Danes, Welsh, and Scots.
1066	HAROLD .....	Battlebridge, or Stamford Bridge	Defeat of the Norwegians.—Tosti and Hardrada slain.
1066	"	Hastings, or Senlac	Harold defeated and slain by William of Normandy.— Norman Conquest.
1093	WILLIAM II. ....	Alnwick .....	Malcolm, King of Scotland, defeated and slain.
1106	HENRY I. ....	Tenchebray .....	Robert, Duke of Normandy, taken prisoner.
1138	STEPHEN.....	Standard (Northallerton) .....	Defeat of David I., King of Scotland.
1174	HENRY II. ....	Alnwick .....	William the Lion, King of Scotland, taken prisoner.
1217	HENRY III. ....	Lincoln .....	Defeat of the French. (Their fleet was also destroyed the same year.)
1264	"	Lewes.....	King Henry and Prince Edward taken prisoners by the barons.
1265	"	Evesham .....	Simon de Montfort slain.
1277	EDWARD I.....	Snowdon .....	Llewellyn defeated.
1296	"	Dunbar .....	Victory over the Scots.—Submission of Baliol.
1297	"	Cambus-kenneth ..	The English, under Warrenne, defeated by the Scots, under Wallace.
1298	"	Falkirk .....	Edward gains a great victory over the Scots, under Wallace.
1314	EDWARD II. ....	Bannockburn .....	Total overthrow of the English by the Scots, under Bruce.
1322	"	Boroughbridge ....	Defeat of the barons.— Hereford slain.— Lancaster taken prisoner and executed.
1333	EDWARD III. ....	Halidon Hill .....	Douglas, Regent of Scotland, slain.— Edward Baliol restored.
1346	"	Crecy .....	Victory over the French.
"	"	Neville's Cross ....	Defeat and capture of David II. of Scotland,
1356	"	Poitiers .....	Victory over John II., King of France.
1388	RICHARD II. ....	Otterburn ("Chevy Chase") .....	Douglas slain —Percy taken prisoner.
1402	HENRY IV.....	Homildon Hill ....	Defeat of the Scots.
1403	"	Shrewsbury .....	Hotspur Percy slain.
1407	"	Bramham.....	The Earl of Northumberland defeated and slain.
1415	HENRY V. ....	Agincourt .....	Defeat of the French.
1423	HENRY VI.....	Crevant .....	English victories in France.
1424	"	Verneuil.....	
1429	"	Patay.....	
1455	"	St. Alban's .....	English defeated. (The siege of Orleans had been raised previously.) Lancastrians defeated.— The King taken prisoner.
1459	"	Bloreheath .....	Lancastrians defeated.
1460	"	Northampton.....	Lancastrians defeated.
"	"	Wakefield.....	The Duke of York slain.
1461	"	Mortimer's Cross...	Lancastrians defeated.
"	"	St. Alban's .....	Earl of Warwick defeated by Queen Margaret.

BATTLES (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name, or Locality.</i>	<i>Particulars.</i>
1461	EDWARD IV.....	Towton .....	Total defeat of the Lancastrians.
"	"	Hedgeley Moor .. }	Queen Margaret defeated.
"	"	Hexham .....	
1471	"	Barnet .....	Earl of Warwick and the Lancastrians defeated.
"	"	Tewkesbury .....	Defeat and capture of Queen Margaret, and her son, Prince Edward.
1485	RICHARD III. ....	Bosworth .....	Richard III. defeated and slain.—Henry Tudor proclaimed King as Henry VII.
1487	HENRY VII. ....	Stoke, near Newark	Simmel taken prisoner.
1513	HENRY VIII.....	Guinegate ("Battle of Spurs") .....	
"	"	Flodden.....	The French, attempting to relieve Terouenne, are defeated.
"	"	"	James IV. of Scotland defeated and slain.
1547	EDWARD VI.....	Pinkie .....	The Scots defeated by Somerset.
1558	MARY .....	Calais.....	Capture by the French, under Guise.
1586	ELIZABETH .....	Zutphen .....	Death of Sir Philip Sidney.
1640	CHARLES I.....	Newburn .....	The Scots defeat the English forces.
1642	"	Edgehill .....	First engagement of the Civil War, or Great Rebellion.—Indecisive.
1643	"	Chalgrove Field ..	Hampden killed.
"	"	Lansdown .....	Indecisive.
"	"	First Battle of Newbury .....	
"	"	"	Royalists defeated.—Lord Falkland slain.
"	"	Atherton Moor ....	Fairfax defeated.
1644	"	Nantwich.....	Royalists defeated by Fairfax.
"	"	Cropredy Bridge ..	Waller routed.
"	"	Marston Moor ....	Total defeat of the Royalists.
"	"	Second Battle of Newbury .....	
"	"	"	The King defeated and compelled to retire to Oxford.
1645	"	Naseby .....	Royalists defeated.—Last important engagement of the Civil War.
1650	COMMONWEALTH.	Dunbar .....	Defeat of the Scottish Royalists.
1651	"	Worcester .....	Charles II. defeated by Cromwell.
1652	"	Dover .....	The Dutch, under Van Tromp, defeated by Blake.
1665	CHARLES II.....	Off Suffolk .....	Defeats of the Dutch.
1666	"	North Foreland .. }	
1672	"	Southwold Bay (Suffolk).....	
1679	"	Bothwell Bridge ..	De Ruyter defeated by the Earl of Sandwich.
1685	JAMES II. ....	Sedgemoor .....	Covenanters dispersed.
1689	WILLIAM III. ....	Killiecrankie .....	Monmouth defeated and taken prisoner.
1690	"	Boyne.....	Defeat of Mackay, but death of Dundee.
"	"	Beachy Head .....	James II. defeated.
1692	"	"	The Dutch and English fleets, under Torrington, defeated by the French.
1704	ANNE.....	La Hogue .....	Defeat of the French fleet.
1706	"	Elenheim .....	
1708	"	Ramillies .....	Victories of Marlborough over the French, during the war of the Spanish Succession.
1709	"	Oudenarde .....	
1715	GEORGE I. ....	Malplaquet .....	
1743	GEORGE II. ....	Sherriff Muir.....	The Earl of Mar defeated by Argyle.
1745	"	Dettingen.....	Defeat of the French.
"	"	Fontenoy .....	The English, Dutch, and Hanoverians are defeated by the French, under Marshal Saxe.
"	"	Prestonpans .....	Sir John Cope routed.
1746	"	Falkirk .....	General Hawley defeated.
"	"	Culloden .....	Highlanders totally defeated.
1747	"	Finisterre .....	Naval victory of Anson over the French.
"	"	Belle Isle.....	Hawke
1757	"	Plassy .....	Defeat of Suraja Dowla.
1759	"	Quiberon .....	Naval victory of Hawke over the French.
"	"	Quebec .....	Death of General Wolfe.—Defeat of the French.



BATTLES (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name, or Locality.</i>	<i>Particulars.</i>
1775	GEORGE III. ....	Lexington .....	First encounter between Americans and English.
"	"	Bunker's Hill.....	Indecisive.
1777	"	Brandywine .....	Defeat of Washington.
"	"	Saratoga .....	Burgoyne surrenders.
1780	"	St. Vincent .....	Defeat of the Spanish fleet by Rodney.
1781	"	York Town.....	Lord Cornwallis surrenders.
"	"	Porto Novo and Pollilore.....	Sir Eyre Coote defeats Hyder Ali.
1794	"	Brest .....	Lord Howe's victory over the French fleet.
1797	"	St. Vincent .....	Victory of Sir J. Jervis and Commodore Nelson over the Spanish fleet.
"	"	Camperdown .....	The French and Dutch fleets defeated by Admiral Duncan.
1798	"	The Nile .....	Nelson's victory over the French fleet.
1799	"	Acra .....	Siege.—Sir Sidney Smith compels the French to retire from Syria.
"	"	Seringapatam .....	Tippu Sultan defeated and slain.
1803	"	Assaye.....	Victories of Generals Wellesley and Lake in India.
"	"	Argaum .....	
"	"	Delhi .....	
"	"	Laswaree .....	
1805	"	Trafalgar .....	Defeat of the French fleet.—Death of Nelson.
1809	"	Corunna .....	Defeat of the French.—Death of Sir John Moore.
"	"	Talavera .....	Wellington defeats Victor and Sebastiani.
1810	"	Busaco .....	Wellington defeats Massena.
1811	"	Barossa .....	Graham defeats Victor.
"	"	Fuentes d'Onoro..	Wellington defeats Massena.
"	"	Albuera .....	Beresford defeats Soult.
1812	"	Salamanca .....	Wellington defeats Marmont.
1813	"	Vittoria .....	Wellington defeats Jourdain.
"	"	Pyrenees .....	Wellington defeats Soult.
1814	"	Orthez .....	Wellington defeats Soult.
"	"	Toulouse .....	Wellington defeats Soult.
1815	"	Waterloo .....	Wellington defeats Napoleon.
1827	GEORGE IV. ....	Navarino .....	Destruction of the Turkish fleet.
1843	VICTORIA .....	Meeanee .....	The Mahrattas defeated.
"	"	Maharajpur .....	
"	"	Punniar .....	
1845	"	Moodkee.....	Victories over the Sikhs.
"	"	Ferozeshah .....	
1846	"	Aliwal .....	
"	"	Sobraon .....	
1849	"	Chillianwallah .....	Indecisive.
"	"	Guzerat.....	Victory of Lord Gough.—Annexation of the Punjab.
1854	"	Alma .....	Victories over the Russians in the Crimea.
"	"	Balaclava .....	
"	"	Inkermann .....	
1857	"	Cawnpur .....	Battles and sieges in India during the Mutiny.
"	"	Lucknow .....	
"	"	Delhi .....	
"	"	Second Cawnpur (Dec. 5) .....	
1858	"	Lucknow (Mar.) ..	

### III. IMPORTANT TREATIES MENTIONED IN ENGLISH HISTORY.

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Title of Treaty.</i>	<i>Particulars, Results, &amp;c.</i>
1153	STEPHEN .....	Wallingford .....	Settlement of the dispute between Stephen and Henry Plantagenet.
1272	EDWARD I. ....	Commercial .....	First commercial treaty made by the English with the Flemings.
1328	EDWARD III. ....	Scottish .....	Independence of Scotland recognized by England.
1360	"	Bretigni .....	Edward III. renounces his claim to the crown of France, and is confirmed in the sovereignty of Guienne, Gascony, Calais, Poitou, &c.
1420	HENRY V. ....	Troyes .....	With France.—Henry to administer the government of France, and to succeed to the throne of that country on the death of Charles VI.
1435	HENRY VI. ....	Arras .....	Between Burgundy and France.—The Duke withdraws from the English alliance.
1475	EDWARD IV. ....	Pecquigny .....	With Louis XI. of France.—Edward to receive large subsidies and to withdraw his troops from France.
1492	HENRY VII. ....	Estaples .....	With Charles VIII. of France.—Henry withdraws his troops on receiving £149,000 for the expenses of the war in Brittany.
1529	HENRY VIII. ....	Cambray .....	General peace established in Europe.
1639	CHARLES I. ....	Pacification of } Berwick .....	Accommodation between Charles and the Scottish rebels.
1654	CROMWELL .....	Westminster .....	A defensive league with the United Provinces.—The supremacy of the English flag in the narrow seas recognized.
1667	CHARLES II. ....	Breda .....	With Holland.—England acquires New York.
1668	"	Triple Alliance ..	England, Holland, and Sweden against France.
1670	"	Secret Treaty of } Dover .....	Charles becomes the pensioner of France.
1691	WILLIAM III. ....	Pacification of } Limerick .....	The authority of James II. in Ireland finally extinguished.
1697	"	Ryswick .....	Between England, France, Holland, Spain, and Germany.—France acknowledges William, and restores her Spanish conquests; Holland gives up Pondicherry to France.
1701	"	Grand Alliance ..	Between England, Holland, and the Emperor, against France.
1713	ANNE .....	Utrecht .....	Between France and England and her allies. The Protestant Succession acknowledged by France; Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, and Gibraltar secured to England; the French and Spanish crowns not to be united.
1718	GEORGE I. ....	Quadruple Alliance	Between England, France, Germany, and Holland, to compel Spain to accept the terms of the Treaty of Utrecht.
1725	"	Hanover .....	England concludes a defensive alliance with France and Prussia against the Emperor and the king of Spain.
1729	GEORGE II. ....	Seville .....	A defensive alliance between England, Spain, and France.—Afterwards joined by Holland.—Gibraltar tacitly relinquished by Spain.—The <i>Asiento</i> confirmed to the South Sea Company.—All captures restored.

TREATIES (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Title of Treaty.</i>	<i>Particulars, Results, &amp;c.</i>
1748	GEORGE II. ....	Aix-la-Chapelle ..	Between England, France, and Holland. Mutual restitution of all conquests.—A most inglorious treaty for England.
1763	GEORGE III.....	Paris, or Fontainebleau ....	Between England, France, and Spain.—England retains most of her conquests from France, including Canada.—Minorca, Belle Isle, Martinique, &c., restored.
1783	"	Versailles .....	Between England, France, Spain, and America.—England recovers several islands in the West Indies.—The United States formally acknowledged.
1802	"	Amiens .....	Between England, France, Spain, and Holland.—Merely a truce.
1814	"	First Treaty of Paris .....	Between the Allies and France.—Boundaries of France settled; Malta confirmed to England; all the Dutch colonies, except Ceylon, restored.
1815	"	Second Treaty of Paris .....	The general settlement of the affairs of Europe was effected afterwards at Vienna.
1842	VICTORIA .....	Chinese .....	Conclusion of the "Opium" War.
1856	"	Paris .....	Signed at Paris, at the close of the Crimean War.
1860	"	Commercial .....	Between England and France.
"	"	Commercial .....	With Japan.
"	"	Tien-Tsin .....	With China.—Negotiations commenced in 1858.

## IV. STATUTES AND ACTS OF PARLIAMENT.

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Title.</i>	<i>Object.</i>
1164	HENRY II.....	Constitutions of Clarendon ....	To render ecclesiastics amenable to civil jurisdiction. The <i>Assize of Clarendon</i> , passed at the same time, but not confirmed till 1176—a series of regulations respecting civil affairs.
1215	JOHN.....	Magna Charta ....	<i>Vide</i> "Facts and Features of English History"; Reading Lesson XI., page 56.
1278	EDWARD I. ....	Gloucester .....	The stricter administration of justice, etc.
1279	"	Mortmain .....	To prevent the granting of landed property to religious corporations.
1297	"	Confirmatio Chartarum ....	The Great Charter confirmed.
1349	EDWARD III. ....	Labourers .....	To confine the labourer to one locality; fix the rate of wages; forbid emigration, etc.
1350	"	Provisors .....	To render it penal for any one to procure from Rome presentations to English benefices.
1352	"	Treasons .....	To define the crime of High Treason.
1392	RICHARD II. ....	Præmunire .....	To forbid the bringing of Papal bulls into England.
1401	HENRY V. ....	De Hæretico Comburendo ..	To exterminate Lollardism.
1534	HENRY VIII. ....	Supremacy.....	The King declared Supreme Head of the Church.

STATUTES (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Title.</i>	<i>Object.</i>
1539	HENRY VIII. ....	Six Articles .....	To establish certain articles of religious belief.
1559	ELIZABETH .....	Supremacy and } Uniformity.... }	To establish the Protestant religion in England.
1593	"	Poor Law Act ....	For the relief of the poor. (This Act remained in force, with certain modifications, till 1834.)
1628	CHARLES I. ....	Petition of Right..	A re-assertion of the hereditary liberties of England.
1661	CHARLES II. ....	Corporation Act	For particulars regarding these Acts, see "Facts and Features of English History;" Reading Lesson XXVIII., page 172.
1662	"	Act of Uniformity .....	
1664	"	Conventicle Act	
1665	"	Five Mile Act ..	
1673	"	Test Act .....	
1678	"	Parliamentary Test Act .....	
1679	"	Habeas Corpus Act.....	
1689	WILLIAM III. ....	Bill of Rights ....	To confirm the Declaration of Rights.
"	"	Toleration Act....	To exempt Dissenters from the penalties of former statutes.
1701	"	Act of Settlement..	To limit the succession of the throne to the House of Hanover.
1707	ANNE .....	Act of Union .....	To unite the Legislatures of England and Scotland.
1714	GEORGE I.....	Riot Act .....	To put a stop to attacks on Dissenting places of worship.
1716	"	Septennial Act....	To extend the duration of Parliaments from three to seven years.
1801	GEORGE III.....	Act of Union } with Ireland .. }	To unite the Legislatures of Great Britain and Ireland.
1823	GEORGE IV.....	Reciprocity of } Duties Act .... }	To modify the old navigation laws, as to place all European nations, at peace with England, upon the same footing as regards commercial intercourse.
1828	"	Repeal of Test } and Corpora- } tion Acts..... }	To admit Dissenters to equal political rights with Churchmen.
1829	"	Roman Catholic } Relief Bill .... }	To permit Roman Catholics to enter Parliament.
1832	WILLIAM IV. ....	Reform Bill .....	To extend the franchise and re-distribute the seats in Parliament.
1834	"	Poor Law Amend- } ment Act..... }	To combine small parishes into unions for the in-door relief of the poor.
1835	"	Municipal Cor- } porations' Re- } form Act .....	To secure the popular election of municipal officers.
1836	"	Tithe Commuta- } tion Act .....	To substitute a rent-charge in money for the payment of the tithe in kind.
1846	VICTORIA .....	Repeal of the } Corn Laws .... }	To remove all restrictions upon the importation of corn.
1867	"	Second Reform } Bill..... }	To further extend the franchise, both in boroughs and counties, and to re-distribute the representation in Parliament.
1869	"	Irish Church Bill..	To dis-establish and dis-endow the Protestant Church of Ireland.
1870	"	Irish Land Bill....	To improve the position of tenant-farmers in Ireland.
"	"	Education Act ....	To provide more efficient means of popular instruction.

V. A TABLE EXHIBITING THE GROWTH OF THE  
BRITISH COLONIAL EMPIRE.

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name of Possession.</i>	<i>How acquired, &amp;c.</i>
1608	JAMES I.....	Tobago.....	Sovereignty claimed by James I.—The English flag was first planted in the island in 1580.—During the 18th century it changed hands several times, but it was ultimately taken, in 1800, by Commodore Hood.
1609	"	Bermuda.....	Through the shipwreck of Sir G. Sommers.—Colonized from Virginia in 1611.
1618	"	Gambia and Gold Coast.....	By settlement.—The African Company for trading with the West Coast, constituted by Act of Parliament in 1750.—The forts and settlements of the Company transferred to the Crown in 1821.
1623	"	St. Kitt's .....	Colonized.—Discovered by Columbus in 1493.—Taken by the French in 1782, but restored to the English in 1783.
1624	"	Barbadoes .....	Colonized by Sir W. Courteen.
1628	CHARLES I. ....	Nevis .....	Colonized.—Discovered by Columbus in 1498.
1629	"	Barbuda .....	Colonized.
	"	Bahamas .....	New Providence colonized.—San Salvador, the first land discovered by Columbus in 1492.—The English expelled by the Spaniards in 1641.—Again colonized by the English in 1657.—Fell into the hands of the French and Spaniards in 1703, and became a rendezvous for pirates.—A regular colonial government established by the English in 1718.—Surrendered to the Spaniards in 1781; but finally annexed by the English and their possession confirmed by the Treaty of Versailles in 1783.
1632	"	Antigua .....	Settled by a few English.—Granted by Charles II. to Lord Willoughby.—Declared a British possession by the Treaty of Breda in 1667.
"	"	Montserrat .....	Discovered by Columbus (1493).—Taken from the English by the French in 1664.—Restored in 1668.—Again taken by the French in 1782.—Finally in the possession of the English in 1783.
1655	COMMONWEALTH	Jamaica .....	Captured from the Spaniards by Penn and Venables. Formally ceded by the Treaty of Madrid in 1670.
1659	"	Anguilla .....	Colonized.—Now part of the Government of St. Kitt's.
1662	CHARLES II. ....	Bombay .....	By marriage of Charles II. with Catherine of Braganza.—Transferred by the crown to the East India Company in 1669.
1666	"	Tortola .....	Colonized, together with others of the Virgin Islands.
1670	"	Honduras .....	By treaty with Spain.—Final grant to Great Britain made in 1786.
"	"	Hudson's Bay } Territory .... }	Granted to the Hudson's Bay Company by Charles II.
1673	"	St. Helena .....	Ceded by the Dutch.—Granted by Charles II. to the East India Company, who held possession of it till 1833, except during the period from 1815 to 1821, that it was required by the Crown as a residence for Napoleon Buonaparte.



BRITISH COLONIAL POSSESSIONS (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name of Possession.</i>	<i>How acquired, &amp;c.</i>
1698	WILLIAM III. ....	Calcutta .....	Purchased, together with two other villages, by the East India Company from the Nawab of Bengal.
1704	ANNE .....	Gibraltar .....	Captured by Sir George Rooke.—Ceded by the Treaty of Utrecht, in 1713.—Besieged unsuccessfully by the French and Spaniards, from 1779 till 1783.
1713	"	Newfoundland ....	Ceded to England by the Treaty of Utrecht.—Discovered by John Cabot in 1497.—Formal possession taken of the Island in 1583.—Again settled by the English in 1621.—Subject of strife between the French and English fishermen throughout the 17th, and part of the 18th centuries.
1757	GEORGE II. ....	Bengal, Behar, } Orissa .....	Fell into the hands of the English after the victory of Plassy.—Formally granted to East India Company by the Emperor of Delhi in 1765.
1758	"	Cape Breton I. .. }	Taken from the French.—Ceded by the Treaty of Paris, or Fontainebleau, in 1763.
1759	"	P. Edward's I. .. }	
1762	GEORGE III. ....	Canada .....	
1762	GEORGE III. ....	Grenada .....	Surrendered by the French.—Formally ceded in 1763.—Re-taken in 1779.—Finally restored to Great Britain in 1783 by the Treaty of Versailles.
1767	"	Northern Circars..	Ceded by the Nizam.—Guntur, the southern division, not surrendered till 1788.
1771	"	Falkland Islands ..	Ceded by Spain.—Discovered by Davis in 1592.—Visited by Hawkins in 1594.—In the possession successively of France and Spain.
1775	"	Benares .....	Acquired, with the surrounding district, from the Vizier of Oude.
1786	"	Salsette .....	Taken from the Mahrattas.
1787	"	Pulo-Penang .....	Taken from the King of Quedah.
1788	"	Sierra Leone .....	Ceded by native chieftains.
1788	"	New South Wales..	By settlement.—H.M.S. <i>Sirius</i> , with six transports and three store-ships, arrived in Botany Bay in January, 1788.—The settlement of Port Jackson subsequently founded.
1789	"	Andaman Islands	Taken possession of by the East India Company for the purpose of founding a penal settlement for the whole of India.
1792	"	Malabar, &c. ....	Taken during the war with Tippu Sultan.
1794	"	Seychelles .....	Taken from the French.
1796	"	Ceylon .....	Taken from the Dutch.—Settlements formed by the Portuguese in 1505.—The Portuguese dispossessed by the Dutch in the next century.—Erected into a separate Crown Colony in 1801.
1797	"	Trinidad .....	Taken from the Spaniards.—Discovered by Columbus in 1498.—Taken by the French in 1676, and soon afterwards ceded to Spain.—Finally ceded to the English by treaty of Amiens, in 1802.
1798	"	Canara, Coimbatore, &c. .... }	Annexed, after the storming of Seringapatam, and death of Tippu Sultan.
1799	"	Tanjore .....	
1800	"	Malta .....	Ceded by the native Raja in consideration of an annual pension. Taken from the French.—Finally annexed by the First Treaty of Paris in 1814.—Taken by Napoleon Buona-parto in 1798.

BRITISH COLONIAL POSSESSIONS (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Reign.</i>	<i>Name of Possession.</i>	<i>How acquired, &amp;c.</i>
1801	GEORGE III.....	Carnatic .....	Annexed.
"	"	Allahabad, Cawn- pur, Bundel- cund, &c.....	Ceded by the Government of Oude.
1802	"	Cuttack, Upper Doab (Agra, Delhi, part of Guzerat, &c. ...)	Annexed after the victories of Wellesley and Lake (Assaye, Argaum, Delhi, &c.).
1803	"	Guiana .....	Taken from the Dutch.
"	"	St. Lucia .....	Taken from the French.—First settled by the English in 1639.—From 1663 to 1803 the island was the scene of num- erous hostilities and contentions for its possession.
1806	"	Tasmania .....	Settled.
"	"	Cape Colony .....	Taken from the Dutch, who colonized it in 1652.—Taken by the English in 1795; restored to the Dutch at the Peace of Amiens, in 1802; confirmed in the possession of Great Britain by the Second Treaty of Paris, in 1815.
1807	"	Heligoland.....	Taken from the Danes.
1815	"	Ascension Island..	Annexed.
1816	"	Kumaon, &c .....	Ceded by the Goorkas,
1817	"	Nagpur, &c. ....	Ceded after the Mahratta War.
1824	GEORGE IV. ....	Singapore .....	Purchased.
1825	"	Malacca .....	Ceded by the Dutch.
1826	"	Assam, Arracan, } Tenasserim .. }	Annexed after the war with Burma.
1829	"	Western Australia	Settled.
1836	WILLIAM IV. ....	Victoria .....	Colonized.
1836	"	South Australia ..	"
1839	VICTORIA .....	Aden .....	Taken from the Sultan of the district. First colonized.—Visited by Captain Cook in 1777.—Settlement of English attempted in 1814.
"	"	New Zealand.....	Ceded by the Chinese.
1842	"	Hong Kong .....	Proclaimed a British Colony.—Dutch <i>boers</i> had migrated thither from Cape Colony in 1837.
1843	"	Natal .....	Taken from the Ameers of Sind.
"	"	Sind .....	Ceded by the Sultan of Borneo.
1846	"	Labuan .....	Annexed after the celebrated Sikh wars.
1849	"	Punjab .....	Settled by the Hudson Bay Company.— United to British Columbia in 1866.
"	"	Vancouver Island.,	Separated from New South Wales.
1851	"	Victoria .....	Finally occupied.
1852	"	Pegu & Martaban	Annexed.
1853	"	Nagpur .....	"
1856	"	Oude .....	The East India Company abolished, and Victoria proclaimed Empress of India.
1858	"	British India.....	Made a separate colony.—Until this year, it had formed a part of the Hudson Bay Company's Territory.
"	"	British Columbia..	Separated from New South Wales.
1859	"	Queensland .....	Occupied.
"	"	Perim .....	Ceded by native king.
1861	"	Lagos .....	Organized under a separate local ad- ministration.
1862	"	British Burma ....	Proclaimed British Territory (Oct. 27). Erected into a Crown colony.
1871	"	Griqualand.....	"
1872	"	Basutos Land ....	"

## VI. ENGLISH WRITERS.

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
<b>Gildas</b> .....	516 ?	570	'De Excidio Britannicæ.'	The first British historian. Originally a cowherd, attached to the monastery of Whitby.—Afterwards a monk.
<b>Cædmon</b> .....	—	680 ?	Poems on Bible narratives and miscellaneous religious subjects.	
<b>Aldhelm</b> .....	—	710	Saxon version of the Psalms.	Abbot of Malmesbury, a famous Latin scholar.—His life was written by King Alfred.
<b>Beda</b> (commonly called the "Venerable Bede") ..	673	735	'Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation;' translations of the Scriptures; commentaries; theological and scientific treatises, etc.	Lived nearly his whole life in the retirement of the monastery of St. Paul, at Jarrow.—His <i>Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum</i> was translated into Anglo-Saxon by King Alfred.
<b>Alcuin</b> .....	732	804	Letters; theological writings; elementary treatises on philosophy, mathematics, philology, etc	Born at York.—Lived mostly at the Court of Charlemagne, whose preceptor he was.—Retired in 801 to Tours, where he taught for the remainder of his life. He understood Latin, Greek, and Hebrew.
<b>Erigena, or Johannes Scotus</b> ..	uncertain; ninth centy.		'De Divisione Naturæ.'	Born probably in Ireland.—Lived mostly in France, at the Court of Charles the Bald.
<b>Alfred</b> .....	849	901	Translations from Latin into Anglo-Saxon, of Bede's 'History of the English Church;' the Psalms; Boethius' 'Consolation of Philosophy;' Selections from the Soliloquies of St. Augustine, and the History of Orosius. The Laws of the West Saxons; Institutes; Chronicles; Meditations, etc., are among his original works.	King of England from 871 to 901. For history, see 'Facts and Features,' Lesson IV., page 20.
<b>Asser</b> .....	—	910	Biography of Alfred the Great.	A monk of St. David's; afterwards made Bishop of Shelburn by Alfred.
<b>Aelfric, or Alfric</b> ..	—	1005 or 1050	A Latin and Saxon Glossary; a Saxon version of most of the historical books of the Old Testament; two volumes of Saxon homilies; a Saxon Grammar in Latin.	Son of a Kentish Ealdorman.—Abbot of St. Alban's, and afterwards Archbishop of York. By some he is identified with an Archbishop of Canterbury of the same name, who died in 1050.
<b>Inglolphus</b> .....	1030	1109	'History of the Monastery of Croyland.'	Born in London.—Entered a Norman monastery after making a pilgrimage to the Holy Land.—Invited to England by the Conqueror, and made Abbot of Croyland.
<b>Geoffrey of Monmouth</b> .....	—	1154	'Chronicon sive Historia Britonum.' A metrical 'Life and Prophecies of Merlin' has also been attributed to this writer.	Bishop of St. Asaph.—His chronicle (completed about 1128) is a tissue of the wildest fables, interwoven with some historical traditions.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
William of Mal- mesbury .....	1067?	1142?	'Gesta Regum;' 'Historia Novella; and 'De Gestis Pontificum.'	An early English historian. —Librarian of the monas- tery of Malmesbury. The <i>Gesta</i> and <i>Historia</i> re- late the history of England from the Saxon invasion to the escape of the Empress Maud from Oxford.
Robert Grosseteste } (or Grosthead .. }	1175?	1253	Translations of the 'Testa- ments of the Twelve Patriarchs' from Greek into Latin; sermons and essays in English.	Bishop of Lincoln in 1235.— A distinguished scholar and philosopher.
Matthew Paris ....	1195?	1259	'Historia Major,' a redac- tion and continuation of Roger of Wendower's 'Flores Historiarum;' also an abridgment of the same, called 'Historia Minor;' 'Lives of the Ab- bots of St. Alban's;' etc.	One of the most celebrated of the early English chroniclers.—A monk of St. Alban's, where he suc- ceeded Roger of Wen- dower as annalist.—Ac- complished in all the learning, art, and science of his age.
Roger Bacon .....	1214	1292 or 1294	'Opus Majus;' treatises; a compendium of the- ology; etc.	An English monk.—Born at Ilchester.—Suffered im- prisonment on account of his writings and scien- tific researches.—Re- ceived the title of 'Doctor Mirabilis.'
Layamon, or La- weman .....	early in 13th centy;		The 'Brut'—a metrical chronicle of Britain from the arrival of the fabulous Brutus to the death of King Cadwallader in 689.	A priest of Ernley on the Severn, in Worcester.— His chronicle is of linguis- tic, rather than of literary, value; it marks the tran- sition from Anglo-Saxon into early English.
Robert of Gloucester	uncertain; 13th centy.		A versified chronicle of British and English His- tory from the imaginary arrival of Brutus to the death of Henry III.	Little known of his history. —Living at the time of the battle of Evesham.—His chronicle, chiefly valuable for the language, as mark- ing the transition from Anglo-Saxon to the Eng- lish of Chaucer and Wickliffe.—The matter, ta' en chiefly from Geof- frey of Monmouth and William of Malmesbury.
Sir John Mandeville	1300	1372	Travels in the East, written in Latin, French, and English.	Travelled for thirty-three years in Europe, Asia, and Africa.—Died at Liege.
Robert (or Wil- liam) Langland }	uncertain; 14th centy.		The famous 'Vision of Piers Ploughman,' an alliter- ative rhyming poem of nearly 15,000 verses.	Supposed to have been a West of England monk, living near the Malvern Hills.—Allusion is made in the poem to the treaty of Bretigni (1360), thus fixing the period at which it was probably written.
John Wickliffe ....	1324	1384	Translation of the Bible into English.	The earliest English Re- former.—Died at Lutter- worth.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Writer.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
John Gower .....	1325?	1408	'Speculum Meditantis,' a discourse on the duties of married life, written in French verse; and the 'Confessio Amantis' in English, by which he is best known.	His history enveloped in much obscurity. — Personal friend of Chaucer, by whom he was termed 'a moral Gower.'—His English verse is full of Norman-French words.
Geoffrey Chaucer } ('The Father of English Poetry')	1328	1400	'Canterbury Tales;' 'The Court of Love;' 'The Book of Troilus and Cressida;' 'Parliament of Birds;' 'The Book of the Duchess;' 'The Flower and the Leaf;' 'The Romaunt and the Rose.'	Born in London.—Early history obscure.—Chronology of poems uncertain.—Took an active part in State affairs.—Dismissed from office in 1386.—The last years of his life probably spent in London.—Katherine, his wife's sister, was the third wife of John of Gaunt.
William Caxton ..	1412	1491 or 1492	Many translations; as 'The Lives of the Fathers;' 'The History of Reynart the Foxe;' besides original writings.	The first English printer.—Spent much of his time in Flanders.—Settled as a printer in London about 1474.
Thomas Linacre ..	1460	1524	Translations of several of Galen's treatises into Latin.	An eminent physician and scholar.—One of the introducers of classical learning into England.—Founder of the College of Physicians.
Sir Thomas More	1480	1535	'Utopia'—the conception of an imaginary commonwealth; writings against the Lutherans; History of Edward V. and Richard III.; etc.	Lord Chancellor of England on the dismissal of Wolsey.—Executed (July 6th, 1535) for denying the King's supremacy.
William Tyndale ..	1477? 1484?	1536	Translation of the Bible; doctrinal treatises; etc.	Burnt at the stake during the reign of Mary.
Miles Coverdale ..	1487	1568	Translations from the works of Continental Reformers; tracts; etc. Coverdale's Bible, with a dedication to Henry VIII.	An eminent English divine.—Bishop of Exeter (1551—1553).—Imprisoned by Mary.—Rector of St. Magnus, London (1564—1566).
George Buchanan..	1506	1582	Satires against the Franciscans; 'Detectio Mariæ Reginae;' 'De Jure Regni apud Scotos;' 'History of Scotland.'	A distinguished poet and historian.—Tutor to James VI.—Keeper of the Privy Seal from 1570 till within a short time of his death.
Henry Howard, } Earl of Surrey.. }	1516	1547	Amatory verses, sonnets, and elegies; translation of the 2nd and 4th Books of the Æneid (the first specimen in the English language of heroic blank verse); paraphrases of portions of the Psalms and book of Ecclesiastes.	Eminent as a statesman, warrior, and poet.—'The Flower of the English nobility.'—Engaged in several warlike expeditions against Scotland and France.—Beheaded by Henry VIII.
John Jewel .....	1522	1571	'Apologia Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ;' 'Defence of the Apology;' 'Detection of Sundry Foul Errors.'	Bishop of Salisbury.—One of the ablest and most authoritative expounders of the teaching of the Reformed Church of England.



ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
William Camden ..	1551	1623	'Britannia;' 'Annals of the Reign of Elizabeth;' 'A Collection of Ancient English Historians;' 'Narrative of the Gunpowder Plot;' etc.	Scholar, historian, and antiquarian.—Head master of Westminster School in 1593.—The 'Camden Society' is named after him.
Sir Walter Raleigh	1552	1618	Verses; prose political works; 'History of the World' (written during his long captivity).	Engaged in expeditions to America.—Founded Virginia.—Condemned on a charge of conspiracy by James I.—Imprisoned for more than twelve years.—Executed after his unsuccessful expedition to Guiana.
Edmund Spenser ..	1553	1599	'The Faerie Queen,' an allegorical poem; also lesser pieces, as 'The Tears of the Muses;' 'The Shepherd's Calendar;' 'Mother Hubbard's Tale;' Hymns, etc. A treatise entitled a 'View of Ireland.'	One of the chief literary ornaments of the Elizabethan era.—Appointed Secretary to the Queen's Deputy in Ireland, where he spent a great part of his life.—The <i>Faerie Queen</i> is written in what is called the Spenserian stanza.
Sir Philip Sidney ..	1554	1586	'Arcadia,' a prose romance; and the 'Defense of Poesie;' also verses.	A Courtier of Queen Elizabeth's reign.—Killed at Zutphen.
Richard Hooker ..	1554	1600	'Ecclesiastical Polity,' in five books.	One of the most illustrious of English theologians.—Styled the 'judicious.'
Lancelot Andrewes	1555	1626	'Devotions;' treatises; sermons; lectures. Also engaged in the work of translating the present English version of the Bible.	Bishop, successively, of Chichester, Ely, and Winchester.—One of the most learned theologians of his day.—Master of Latin, Greek, Hebrew, Chaldee, Syriac, Arabic, and fifteen modern tongues.
Francis Bacon (Viscount St. Alban's)	1561	1626	Essays; 'Advancement of Learning;' 'Wisdom of the Ancients;' 'Novum Organum;' and several minor works.	Introduced to public life under Elizabeth.—Became Lord Chancellor under James I.—Dismissed for corruption and fined in 1621.—The writings of this great philosopher embrace almost all subjects.
Michael Drayton ..	1563	1631	Polyolbion, a poetical description of England, in thirty books.	Born at Hartshill, in Warwickshire.—Poet Laureate in 1626.
William Shakspeare	1564	1616	Nearly forty plays, besides sonnets and tales. Opinions as to the number and names of his dramatic writings are divided. Up to 1600 he wrote 23 or 24 plays; about 15 or 16 more were written after that date.	The greatest of English poets.—Born at Stratford-on-Avon.—Early life obscure.—Part proprietor of the Blackfriars and Globe Theatres, as well as actor and author.—Retired from London previously to the year 1613.
Christopher Marlowe	1565?	1593	Several dramatic works, as, 'Dr. Faustus;' 'Tamburlaine the Great;' also 'Hero and Leander,' a narrative poem.	The chief English dramatist before Shakspeare.—He led a reckless life, and perished in a tavern brawl.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*),

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
<b>Sir John Davies ..</b>	1570	1626	'Orchestra, or a Poem on Dancing;' 'Nosce Teipsum, a Poem on the Soul, and the Immortality thereof.' Also legal and political works in prose.	Poet, lawyer, and statesman.—Born at Chisgrove, Wilts.—Solicitor and Attorney-General for Ireland under James I.
<b>John Donne .....</b>	1573	1631	Satires, elegies, religious poems, complimentary verses and epigrams. The 'Pseudo-Martyr,' a book against the Roman Catholics.	Dean of St. Paul's and vicar of St. Dunstan's.—The first of what are sometimes termed the metaphysical poets of the 17th century.—His life has been written by Isaac Walton.
<b>Ben Jonson.....</b>	1574	1637	Several comedies, as, 'Every Man in his Humour;' 'The Silent Woman;' 'The Alchemist;' the tragedies of 'Sejanus' and 'Catiline's Conspiracy.'	A great dramatic writer.—At first a bricklayer; then a soldier in the Low Countries.—Made Poet Laureate in 1619.—Died in poverty.
<b>Robert Burton ....</b>	1576	1639	'The Anatomy of Melancholy,' "a mass of quotations from old and obscure writers strung on a thread of rambling reflection."	Born at Lindley, in Leicestershire.—Rector of Segrave in the same county.—Died at Oxford.
<b>John Selden .....</b>	1584	1654	'History of Titles of Honour;' 'History of Tithes;' 'Selden's Table Talk;' besides many works and treatises on legal, political, and other subjects.	An illustrious scholar, lawyer, and statesman.—Imprisoned in 1630 for his opposition to the Court.—Member for the University of Oxford in 1640.
<b>Philip Massinger ..</b>	1584	1640	Several plays, the best of which are,—'The Virgin Martyr;' 'The City Madam;' and 'A New Way to Pay Old Debts.'	Lived in straitened circumstances, and died in poverty. He sometimes wrote for the stage in conjunction with others.
<b>William Drummond</b>	1585	1649	'Tears on the Death of Moeliades;' Sonnets; 'Notes of Ben Jonson's Conversations with William Drummond;' Songs; etc.	Of Hawthornden, near Edinburgh.—Celebrated for his sonnets.
<b>Francis Beaumont } and John Fletcher .... }</b>	1586 1576	1615 1625	Fifty-two plays; a masque; and several minor poems.	Poets and dramatists.—Wrote plays together.—Morally little can be said in their praise, their writings abounding with impurity.
<b>Thomas Carew ....</b>	1589	1639	Many lyrical poems on trifling subjects. The first edition of them appeared in 1640.	A poet of great merit.—The friend of Ben Jonson and Davenant.—Descended from an old family in Gloucestershire.
<b>Robert Herrick....</b>	1591	1674	'Hesperides,' and 'Noble Numbers,'—collections of lyrics.	A lyrical poet of the time of Charles I.—Vicar of Dean-Prior, in Devonshire.
<b>George Herbert.....</b>	1593	1632	'The Temple, or Sacred Poems and Private Ejaculations;' also a work in prose—'The Country Parson.'	An English clergyman of noble birth, distinguished for his sacred poems.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
Sir William Davenant.....}	1605	1668	An epic called 'Gondibert;' an Ode 'In Remembrance of Master William Shakespeare,' written at the age of ten; plays, etc.	Born at Oxford.—Poet-Laureate in 1638.—Adopted the Royalist cause.—Began his poem of 'Gondibert' in exile.—Knighted at the siege of Gloucester.—Imprisoned in the Tower, but released through the influence of Milton.—Manager of a theatre after the Restoration.
Edmund Waller ..	1605	1687	Two collections of poems, one published in 1645, the other in 1664; 'Panegyric to my Lord Protector,' a poetical eulogium on Cromwell, at his death; also one on the return of Charles II.	Celebrated as one of the refiners of English poetry. Member of Parliament under Charles I.—Not steady in his allegiance to either of the political parties of the time.—Died at Beaconsfield.
Sir John Suckling	1608	1642	'A Session of the Poets,' and other poems; songs and ballads ( <i>e.g.</i> 'The Wedding'); a prose treatise entitled 'An Account of Religion by Reason;' etc.	A poet of the same period.—Succeeded to the large estates of his father.—Served under Gustavus Adolphus; also against the Scots.—Died in the flower of his age at Paris.
John Milton .....	1608	1674	'Paradise Lost;' 'Paradise Regained;' 'Samson Agonistes;' 'Comus;' 'Lycidas;' 'Arcades;' 'L'Allegro;' 'Il Penseroso;' many fine sonnets, etc. His prose writings were also considerable, relating chiefly to the controversies of the times, as 'Eikonoklastes;' 'Areopagitica;' etc.	The greatest epic poet of modern times.—Became Latin Secretary to Cromwell.— <i>Paradise Lost</i> was published in 1667.—It was written in blindness and poverty. Milton was born in Bread Street, Cheapside. He was buried in the chancel of St. Giles's, Cripplegate.
Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon ..}	1608	1674	'History of the Rebellion;' various state papers, manifestoes, etc.	Historian and statesman.—Appointed High Chancellor by Charles II.—Died in exile at Rouen.
Thomas Fuller ....	1608	1661	'History of the Holy War;' 'The Church History of Britain;' 'The Worthies of England;' 'Holy and Profane States;' 'A Pisgah Sight of Palestine and the Confines thereof;' 'Abel Redivivus;' etc.	One of the most voluminous and original divines of the English Church.—Prebendary of Salisbury Cathedral.—'Incomparably the most sensible, the least prejudiced great man, in an age that boasted of a galaxy of great men.'
Samuel Butler ....	1612	1680	'Hudibras,' a kind of metrical <i>Don Quixote</i> , written to caricature the Puritans.	The son of a Worcestershire farmer.
Jeremy Taylor ....	1613	1667	'Holy Living and Dying;' Sermons and Discourses; Collection of Polemical and Moral Discourses; 'Ductor Dubitantium;' 'Liberty of Prophesying,' etc.	One of the greatest divines of the English Church.—A staunch Royalist, a splendid scholar, and a consummate theologian.—Made Bishop of Down and Connor in 1660.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
Sir John Denham..	1615	1668	'Sophy,' a tragedy; 'Cooper's Hill,' a poem; translations of 'Cato Major' and Virgil.	Born in Dublin.—Buried near Chaucer and Spenser, in Westminster Abbey.—One of the fathers of modern English poetry.
Abraham Cowley..	1618	1667	'Poetic Blossoms;' 'Davideis,' an epic poem in four books (not completed).	His poetry, now almost forgotten, was once considered equal to Shakspeare's or Spenser's.
Andrew Marvell ..	1620	1678	Writings in prose and verse relating to matters of only temporary interest. 'The Rehearsal Transposed;' 'Mr. Smirke; or, the Divine in Mode;' etc.	A celebrated English patriot, and an acute, learned, and witty satirist.—Associated with Milton in the office of Latin Secretary to the Protector.—Represented Hull in the Parliaments of Charles II.
John Bunyan.....	1628	1688	'Pilgrim's Progress,' and the 'Holy War.'	Born at Elstow, near Bedford.—Imprisoned under the Conventicle Act, in Bedford Jail for twelve years.—Died in London.
John Dryden .....	1631	1700	'Absalom and Achitophel,' a political satire; 'Ode on Alexander's Feast;' 'The Hind and the Panther;' a translation of Virgil; Fables; many plays; etc.	One of the greatest of English poets.—His masterpieces were his <i>Satires</i> and <i>Fables</i> .—He was also famous as a writer of prose,—witness his <i>Essay on Dramatic Writing</i> .
John Locke.....	1632	1704	'Essay on the Human Understanding;' Letters on 'Toleration;' 'Treatises on Government;' also one on the 'Reasonableness of Christianity.'	The great philosopher of the period.—Educated at Oxford.—Employed in State affairs under Shaftesbury, both at home and abroad.
Sir Isaac Newton ..	1642	1727	'Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica;' 'Geometrica Analytica;' Treatises on Optics; also two literary and theological works, viz.:—'Chronology;' and 'Observations on Daniel and the Revelations.'	The most remarkable mathematician and natural philosopher of his own or perhaps of any other age.—Professor at Cambridge.—Represented the University in the Convention Parliament.—President of the Royal Society for twenty-five years.
Daniel Defoe .....	1661	1731	'Robinson Crusoe;' 'Moll Flanders;' 'Journal of the Plague;' 'Adventures of Roxana;' 'Memoirs of a Cavalier.' A satirical poem, entitled, 'The True-born Englishman;' treatises, pamphlets, etc.	Born in London.—The son of a butcher.—At first a hosier; afterwards author and newspaper writer.—Defoe's style is simple, clear, and vigorous.—His fiction is characterized by an unparalleled appearance of truth.
Matthew Prior ....	1664	1721	'Alma; or, the Progress of the Soul,' and other poems.	Poet and diplomatist.—Born at Wimborne, in Dorsetshire.
Jonathan Swift....	1667	1745	'The Tale of a Tub;' 'Drapier's Letters;' 'Gulliver's Travels;' 'The Modest Proposal;' miscellanies, papers, letters, etc.	The greatest of English satirists.—Born in Dublin.—Lived for some years with Sir W. Temple.—Appointed Dean of St. Patrick's in his 46th year.—Insane during the last three years of his life.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
Sir Richard Steele	1671	1729	Many plays, as, 'The Funeral;' 'The Tender Husband;' 'The Conscious Lovers;' letters; pamphlets; treatises; essays; magazine articles; allegories; short tales; etc.	Born in Dublin.—The <i>Tatler</i> , <i>Spectator</i> , <i>Guardian</i> , and several other periodicals were started by him.—His last years were spent in retirement in Wales.
Colley Cibber . . . . .	1671	1757	'Love's Last Shift;' 'Woman's Wit;' 'Careless Husband;' 'Nonjuror;' and many other plays. His 'Apology' for his life is the work by which he is best known.	A celebrated dramatic author.—Poet-Laureate to George II.—For 19 years, from 1711, he was one of the lessees and principal manager of Drury Lane Theatre.
Joseph Addison ..	1672	1719	'Tragedy of Cato;' 'The Campaign' (a poem written in commemoration of the victory of Blenheim); contributions to the <i>Tatler</i> , <i>Whig Examiner</i> , <i>Spectator</i> , and <i>Guardian</i> ; treatises; letters; etc.	Born at Milston, in Wilts.—Educated at Oxford.—Received a pension from William III. in 1699.—Travelled much on the Continent.—Under-Secretary of State in 1706; and Secretary to the Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland in 1709.
William Congreve	1672	1729	'The Old Bachelor;' 'The Double Dealer;' 'Love for Love;' and other plays.	A celebrated writer of comedies.
Edward Young . . . . .	1681	1765	'Night Thoughts;' the tragedy of 'Revenge;' satires; etc.	Born at Upham, in Hampshire.—Became one of the king's chaplains.
George Berkeley ..	1684	1753	'The Theory of Vision;' 'The Principles of Human Knowledge;' 'The Minute Philosopher;' 'A Word to the Wise;' essays; treatises; papers in the <i>Guardian</i> ; etc.	One of the most distinguished philosophers and scholars of his age.—Bishop of Cloyne in 1736.—Died at Oxford.
Allan Ramsay ....	1686	1757	'Tea Table Miscellany,' a collection of Scottish songs; 'The Vision;' 'The Gentle Shepherd;' etc.	A well-known Scottish poet.—Born at Leadhills in Lanarkshire.
Alexander Pope ..	1688	1744	'Essay on Criticism;' 'Rape of the Lock;' 'Dunciad' (his greatest satire); 'Essay on Man;' translations of the <i>Iliad</i> and <i>Odyssey</i> ; Literary correspondence; 'Windsor Forest;' 'Temple of Fame;' 'Epistle of Eloisa;' etc.	A poet almost from his infancy.—Born in London.—Son of a linen-draper.—Lived mostly at Twickenham, where he died (May 30th, 1744).—His physical infirmities, susceptible temperament, and incessant study, rendered his life one long disease.
John Gay . . . . .	1688	1732	'The Beggars' Opera;' 'Fables;' 'Song of Black-eyed Susan;' several plays; etc.	A well-known English poet.—Born at Barnstaple.
Samuel Richardson	1689	1761	'Pamela;' 'Clarissa Harlowe;' 'Sir Charles Grandison.'	One of the founders of the English novel.
Joseph Butler ....	1692	1752	'Analogy;' Sermons.	One of the most eminent of English divines.—Bishop of Bristol in 1738.



ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
<b>James Thomson</b> ..	1700	1748	'The Seasons;' 'Castle of Indolence;' the tragedies of 'Agamemnon,' and 'Tancred and Sigismunda;' the song of 'Rule Britannia;' and other minor works.	Born at Ednam, in Roxburghshire.—Educated at Jedburgh and Edinburgh.—Went to London to seek fortune and fame as a poet in 1725.—Obtained a Government appointment, and afterwards a pension.—Died and was buried at Richmond.
<b>Henry Fielding</b> ....	1707	1754	'Jonathan Wild;' 'Tom Jones;' 'Amelia;' and other novels.	The first English novelist, and still one of the greatest.—Died at Lisbon.
<b>Samuel Johnson</b> ..	1709	1784	'Rasselas;' 'Lives of the Poets;' 'The Vanity of Human Wishes;' 'London;' 'Dictionary;' contributions to the <i>Tatler</i> ; etc.	Born at Lichfield.—His life written by Boswell.—Lived generally in London.—Buried in Westminster Abbey.
<b>Thomas Reid</b> .....	1710	1796	'Essay on Quantity;' 'Inquiry into the Human Mind on the Principles of Common Sense;' 'Essays on the Intellectual Powers of Man;' etc.	A Scottish professor and celebrated philosopher.—Born at Strachan, a country parish in Kincardineshire.
<b>David Hume</b> .....	1711	1776	'History of England;' 'Essays, Moral and Political;' 'Political Discourses;' 'Dissertations;' etc.	Philosopher and historian.—Born at Ninewells, in Berwickshire.—Died at Edinburgh.
<b>William Shenstone</b>	1714	1763	'The Judgment of Hercules;' 'The Schoolmistress;' 'The Pastoral Ballad.'	A poet.—Born at Hales Owen, Shropshire.
<b>Thomas Gray</b> .....	1716	1771	'The Progress of Poesy;' 'The Bard;' 'Elegy in a Country Churchyard;' 'Ode to Eton College;' etc.	A celebrated writer of Odes.—Son of a London scrivener.
<b>William Collins</b> ....	1721	1759	'Oriental Eclogues;' Odes on 'The Passions,' 'To Liberty,' 'To Mercy;' etc.	A lyrical poet of considerable merit and reputation.
<b>William Robertson</b>	1721	1793	'History of Scotland during the reign of Queen Mary and James VI.;' 'History of Charles V.;' 'History of America.'	A Scottish clergyman.—Principal of the University of Edinburgh.—A great historian.
<b>Tobias Smollett</b> ..	1721	1771	'Roderick Random;' 'Peregrine Pickle,' 'Humphrey Clinker;' 'Adventures of an Atom;' 'History of England;' etc.	An eminent British novelist.—The rival of Fielding.—A native of Dumbartonshire.
<b>Sir William Blackstone</b> } <b>Oliver Goldsmith</b> .. }	1723	1780	'Commentaries on the Laws of England.'	An eminent lawyer and judge.
	1728	1774	'The Traveller;' 'The Deserted Village;' 'She Stoops to Conquer;' also prose works, as 'The Vicar of Wakefield;' 'Histories of England, France, and Greece;' 'Animated Nature;' etc.	Son of an Irish clergyman.—Equally distinguished as a poet and prose-writer.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
Edmund Burke ....	1730	1797	'Vindication of Natural Society;' Essays; 'Account of the European Settlements in America;' 'Thoughts on French Affairs;' 'Reflections on the Revolution of France.'	Philosopher, orator, and statesman.—Born and educated at Dublin.—Represented Wendover, Bristol, and Malton.—Twice Pay-master of the Forces.—Took an important part in the impeachment of Warren Hastings.
William Cowper ..	1731	1800	'Truth;' 'Table Talk;' 'The Task;' etc. Translation of 'Homer.'	A Christian and moral poet.—At times deranged in intellect.
Edward Gibbon....	1737	1794	'The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire;' Essays in French; etc.	The great historian.—Born at Putney.
William Paley ....	1743	1805	'Evidences of Christianity;' 'Natural Theology.'	Theological writer.—Archdeacon of Carlisle.
Richard Brinsley } Sheridan ..... }	1751	1816	'The Rivals;' 'School for Scandal;' 'The Critic;' 'The Stranger;' 'Pizarro;' etc.	Dramatist, orator, and politician.—Born in Dublin.—Took a prominent part in the prosecution of Warren Hastings.
George Crabbe ....	1754	1832	'The Village;' 'The Parish Register;' 'The Borough;' 'Tales in Verse;' etc.	An English popular poet.—Born at Aldborough, in Suffolk.
Robert Burns.....	1759	1796	'Tam O'Shanter;' 'The Cottar's Saturday Night;' 'The Twa Dogs;' etc.	The great lyric poet of Scotland.—Born near Ayr.—Farmer and exciseman.
Samuel Rogers ....	1762	1855	'Pleasures of Memory.'	Banker of London, and poet.
Ann Radcliffe.....	1764	1823	'Romance of the Forest;' 'The Mysteries of Udolpho;' etc.	The 'Salvator Rosa' of English novelists.
Robert Bloomfield	1766	1823	'The Farmer's Boy;' 'Wild Flowers;' 'Banks of the Wye,' and other poems.	A pastoral poet.—Son of a poor tailor at Honnington in Suffolk.
Maria Edgeworth	1767	1849	'Castle Rackrent;' a series of stories; 'Letters for Literary Ladies;' 'Essay on Practical Education;' etc.	A celebrated writer.—Born at Black Bourton, in Oxfordshire.
Sydney Smith ....	1768	1845	Sermons; contributions to the <i>Edinburgh Review</i> ; 'Peter Plymley's Letters;' pamphlets; essays; letters; etc.	An English clergyman.—One of the witty and most popular writers of his time.
William Wordsworth	1770	1850	'The Excursion;' sonnets; ballads; etc.	Succeeded Southey as Poet-Laureate.—One of the 'Lake Poets.'
Sir Walter Scott ..	1771	1832	The Waverley Novels; 'Lay of the Last Minstrel;' 'Marmion;' 'Lady of the Lake;' 'History of Napoleon;' etc.	A great poet and writer of fiction.—Died at Abbotsford.
Samuel Taylor } Coleridge ..... }	1772	1834	'Ancient Mariner;' 'Christabel;' and other poems.	Educated at Christ's Hospital with Charles Lamb.—Died at Highgate.
James Hogg ('The } Ettrick Shep- } herd') ..... }	1772	1835	'The Forest Minstrel,' a collection of songs; 'The Queen's Wake;' 'Pilgrims of the Sun;' 'Winter Evening Tales;' etc.	A Scottish poet.—A native of Ettrick Forest, in Selkirkshire.—His works have been collected since his death, and are comprised in eleven volumes.
Robert Southey ..	1774	1843	'Thalaba,' and other poems; 'Life of Nelson.'	Poet-Laureate in 1813.—One of the 'Lake Poets.'—Lived near Keswick.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Author.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
Charles Lamb ....	1775	1834	'Essays of Elia;' 'Album Verses;' 'Tales from Shakspere;' 'Poetry for Children;' letters; etc.	Poet, essayist, and one of the greatest of English humourists.
Jane Austen .....	1775	1817	'Sense and Sensibility;' 'Pride and Prejudice;' and many other works of fiction.	An eminent novelist.—Died at Winchester.
Walter Savage Landor .....	1775	1864	'Hellenics, enlarged and improved;' 'The Last Fruit off an Old Tree;' 'Dry Sticks Faggotted;' 'Imaginary Conversations;' etc.	A versatile and gifted author.—Born at Ipsley Court, Warwickshire.—Resided chiefly abroad.—Died at Florence.
Henry Hallam ....	1777	1859	'View of Europe during the Middle Ages;' 'Constitutional History of England;' 'Introduction to the Literature of the 15th, 16th, and 17th centuries;' contributions to the <i>Edinburgh Review</i> ; etc.	An eminent historian and critic.—Born at Windsor.—Examiner of Modern History for Oxford University.—Fellow of the Royal Society.
Thomas Campbell	1777	1844	'Ye Mariners of England,' and other ballads; 'The Pleasures of Hope,' etc.	Born and educated in Glasgow.
Thomas Moore ....	1780	1851	'Irish Melodies;' 'Lalla Rookh;' also prose works.	An Irish lyric poet.—Lived mostly in London.
James Henry Leigh Hunt .....	1784	1859	'The Story of Rimini;' 'The Palfrey;' 'The Feast of the Poets;' 'Legend of Florence;' 'Stories in Verse;' etc.	A celebrated poet, essayist, and critic.—Editor of the <i>Examiner</i> .—Fined and imprisoned for two years for reflecting, in one of his articles, on the obesity of the Prince Regent.—Died at Highgate.
James Sheridan Knowles .....	1784	1862	' <i>Virginius</i> ;' 'The Hunchback,' and other plays.	An English dramatist.—Born at Cork.—Died at Torquay.
Henry Kirke White	1785	1806	Contributions to the <i>Monthly Mirror</i> ; 'Remains.'	An English poet.—Died young.—His ' <i>Remains</i> ' were collected and published by Southey.
Thomas de Quincey	1786	1859	'Confessions of an Opium-Eater;' 'The Logic of Political Economy;' essays; etc.	Born at Manchester.—Lived for some time in the Lake district.—Died at Edinburgh.
Lord Byron .....	1788	1824	'Childe Harold's Pilgrimage;' 'The Corsair;' 'Lara;' 'Manfred;' 'Don Juan;' 'Lament of Tasso;' etc.	A great English poet.—Died of fever, at Missolonghi, in Greece.
Percy Bysshe Shelley .....	1792	1822	'Queen Mab;' 'Revolt of Islam;' 'Prometheus Unbound;' 'The Cenci;' odes to 'The Cloud,' and to 'The Skylark.'	Son of a Sussex baronet.—Drowned off the coast of Italy.
Felicia Dorothea Hemans .....	1793	1835	'Songs of the Affections;' 'The Vespers of Palermo;' 'Hymns for Childhood;' 'National Lyrics;' etc.	An English poetess.—Born at Liverpool.—Her first volume of poems published when she was only 14 years old.
Thomas Carlyle ..	1795	—	'Life of Schiller;' 'Hero Worship;' 'History of Frederick the Great;' 'Sartor Resartus;' etc.	Historian and essayist.—Born in Dumfriesshire.—Lived in Scotland till 1837, when he removed to London.

ENGLISH WRITERS (*continued*).

<i>Title.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Writings.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
<b>John Keates</b> .....	1796	1821	'Endymion;' 'Eve of St. Agnes;' 'Hyperion;' etc.	One of the most promising of English poets.—Died at Rome.
<b>Thomas Hood</b> ....	1799	1845	'Whims and Oddities;' 'Eugene Aram;' 'Hood's Own;' 'Tylney Hall;' etc.	Poet and humourist.
<b>Lord Macaulay</b> ..	1800	1859	'History of England from the Accession of James II.;' 'Lays of Ancient Rome;' Ballads, <i>e.g.</i> , 'The Spanish Armada;' 'Moncontour;' and 'The Battle of Ivry;' 'Essays, etc.	A great historian.—Secretary of the Board of Control for India in 1832.—Went out to India as member of the Supreme Council in 1833, and remained till 1838.—Elected M.P. for Edinburgh in 1839.—Appointed successively War Secretary and Paymaster of the Forces.—Died at Kensington, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.
<b>Letitia Elizabeth } Landon</b> .....	1802	1839	'Poetical Sketches;' 'The Improvisatrice, and other poems;' 'The Troubadour;' three novels; etc.	Poetess.—Born at Hans Place, Chelsea.—Died at Cape Coast Castle.
<b>Lord Lytton</b> .....	1805	1872	'The Caxtons;' 'Rienzi;' 'Last Days of Pompeii;' etc. 'The Lady of Lyons,' and other plays.	A great novelist and dramatist.—Born at Haydon Hall, Norfolk. Educated at Cambridge.
<b>Alfred Tennyson</b> ..	1810	—	'The Princess;' 'In Memoriam;' 'Idylls of the King;' 'Enoch Arden;' etc.	Born at Somersby, in Lincolnshire. The present Poet-Laureate.
<b>William Make- } peace Thackeray } Charles Dickens</b> ..	1811	1863	'Vanity Fair;' 'The Newcomes;' etc.	Novelist and satirist.—Born at Calcutta.
	1812	1871	'Pickwick Papers;' 'David Copperfield;' and many other works of fiction.	A distinguished novelist and humorist.—Born at Landport.



## VII. STATESMEN, ARTISTS, MEN OF SCIENCE,\* &amp;c.

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Remarks.</i>
Dunstan .....	925	988	Archbishop of Canterbury for nearly thirty years.—He wielded great power both in Church and State.
Thomas Becket .....	1117	1170	Lord High Chancellor.—Afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury.
Stephen Langton....	—	1228	Archbishop of Canterbury.—Took an active part in procuring <i>Magna Charta</i> from King John.
Robert Grosseteste..	1175	1253	Bishop of Lincoln.—Philosopher and great Greek scholar.
Roger (Friar) Bacon	1214	1292	The founder of experimental philosophy.
Walter Burley .....	1275	—	A celebrated scholastic philosopher and divine.—Chief opponent of the Scotists.
William of Wykeham	1324	1404	Bishop of Winchester.—Founder of Winchester School and New College, Oxford.—A great architect.
William Caxton ....	1412	1491	The introducer into England of the art of printing.
Wynkyn de Worde ..	—	1534	One of our earliest printers.—A native of Lowme.—Was with Caxton till his death in 1492, and succeeded him in his business.—Less famous as a scholar than a typographer.
Thomas Wolsey ....	1474	1530	Archbishop of York and Lord Chancellor under Henry VIII.
Sir Nicholas Bacon ..	1510	1579	A great lawyer and statesman of Elizabeth's reign.
William Cecil, Lord	1521	1598	The foremost statesman of the great Elizabethan era of English history.—Prime minister for forty years.
Burleigh .....			
Sir Francis Wal-	1536	1590	Secretary of State in the reign of Elizabeth.
singham .....			
William Gilbert ....	1540	1603	A distinguished physician and natural philosopher.
John Napier (or	1550	1617	The inventor of logarithms, and the greatest pure mathematician of his age.
Neper) .....			
Sir Edward Coke ....	1552	1634	An eminent lawyer.—The highest authority on the municipal law of England.
James Crichton.....	1560	1583	Commonly called 'the Admirable.'
William Lee (or Lea)	uncertain	1653	The reputed inventor of the stocking-frame (1589).
Inigo Jones.....	1572	1653	One of the most famous of English architects.—The banqueting-house, Whitehall, and St. Paul's, Covent Garden, were built by him.—He has been styled the 'English Palladio,' and the Father of modern English architecture.
Edmund Gunter ....	1581	1627	An English mathematician.—Inventor of the 'sector;' also of the logarithmic or 'Gunter's' scale (known also as the slide-rule).
Orlando Gibbons ....	1583	1625	'One of the rarest musicians of his time.'—Composer of Church music, madrigals, &c.
Sir Thomas Went-	1593	1641	Minister of Charles I.—Executed May 12, 1641.
worth, Lord Staf-			
ford.....			
Edward Somerset,	1597?	1667	Inventor of the first practically efficient steam-engine.
Marquis of Wor-			
cester.....			
Earl of Clarendon ..	1608	1674	Statesman and historian.
Sir Peter Lely .....	1618	1680	A great portrait painter.—Born in Westphalia.—Came to England in 1641.—Painted Charles I., Cromwell, and the so-called 'Charles II. beauties.'—Buried in St. Paul's, Covent Garden.
Thomas Sydenham ..	1624	1689	One of the greatest names in the history of medicine.
Edward Cocker.....	1631?	1675?	Author of the first truly practical and commercial treatise on arithmetic.—By profession an engraver.
Sir Christopher Wren	1631	1723	The greatest of English architects.—His first building seems to have been the chapel of Pembroke College, Cambridge.—St. Paul's Cathedral, Royal Exchange, Custom House, Temple Bar, College of Physicians, Monument, Marlborough House, and fifty-one churches in the city of London are among the principal of his works.

\* For Statesmen and Men of Science who were also great literary characters, see preceding Table.



STATESMEN, ARTISTS, &c. (continued).

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Remarks.</i>
Sir Isaac Newton....	1642	1726	The distinguished mathematician and natural philosopher. (For list of works, see Table vi.)
Sir Godfrey Kneller	1646	1723	A great portrait painter.—The famous Kit-Cat Club portraits were the work of this artist.
Grinling Gibbons....	1648	1721	The distinguished sculptor in wood.—Employed by Sir C. Wren in the decorations of St. Paul's Cathedral.—Unrivalled in his time for his carving of foliage, fruit, flowers, still life, &c.
John Radcliffe .....	1650	1714	A celebrated physician.—Founder of the 'Radcliffe Library' at Oxford.
Lord Somers .....	1652	1716	A talented lawyer, statesman, and man of letters.—Chairman of the Committee which produced the famous 'Declaration of Right.'—Lord Keeper and afterwards Chancellor.
Edmund Halley ....	1656	1742	The celebrated astronomer.
Henry Purcell .....	1658	1695	Musician.—Organist of Westminster Abbey and the Chapel Royal.
Sir Hans Sloane ....	1660	1752	An eminent physician and collector.—His collections were purchased by the Government and formed the contents of the British Museum (opened in 1759).
Sir John Vanbrugh..	1666	1726	Architect and dramatist.—Castle Howard and Blenheim House were built by him.
Sir Robert Walpole..	1676	1745	Prime minister of England from 1721 to 1742.
Sir James Thornhill	1676	1734	Painter.—His greatest work was the painted Hall of Greenwich Hospital.—The cupola of St. Paul's, and the state apartments in Hampton Court and Kensington Palaces were also painted by him.—His daughter married William Hogarth.
George Frederick } Handel .....	1685	1759	The great musician.—Born at Halle.—Came to England in 1710.
William Hogarth... }	1697	1764	The celebrated satirist and painter.
William Pitt (Earl } of Chatham..... }	1708	1778	The great orator and statesman.
Thomas Augustine } Arne .....	1710	1778	Musician.—Composer of oratorios, operas, and many songs and detached pieces, for which last he is mostly remembered.
James Brindley.....	1716	1772	The celebrated engineer.—Founder of the system of canals in England.
Sir Joshua Reynolds	1723	1792	Founder of the English School of Painting.—First president of the Royal Academy upon its foundation in 1768.
John Smeaton .....	1724	1792	The great engineer.—Eddystone lighthouse, the harbours of Ramsgate and St. Ives, and many other works of the greatest magnitude and importance were planned and executed by him.
John Hunter .....	1728	1793	One of the most distinguished anatomists, physiologists, and practical surgeons of any age or nation.
Josiah Wedgwood ..	1730	1795	The first improver of English pottery, and the founder of a new and important branch of British commerce.
Sir Richard Ark- } wright .....	1732	1792	Celebrated for his inventions in cotton-spinning.—The first cotton-mill in England was set up by him at Cromford, near Matlock, in Derbyshire.
James Hargreaves ..	1732	1778	The inventor of the carding-machine and the spinning-jenny.
James Watt .....	1736	1819	The great engineer and natural philosopher, and the chief inventor and improver of the steam-engine.
Benjamin West.....	1738	1820	One of the chiefs of the English school of historical painters.—He was one of the original thirty-six members of the Royal Academy, and succeeded Sir J. Reynolds as president in 1792.
Sir William Herschel	1738	1822	A distinguished astronomer.—Discoverer of the planet Uranus.

## STATESMEN, ARTISTS, &amp;c. (continued).

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Remarks.</i>
John Bacon.....	1740	1799	A distinguished sculptor.—His statue of Mars, and Pitt's monument in Westminster Abbey, are regarded as his masterpieces.
Edmund Cartwright	1743	1823	The inventor of the power-loom.
Charles James Fox ..	1749	1806	The great statesman.—Rival of William Pitt.
Edward Jenner.....	1749	1823	The discoverer of vaccination.
John Scott, Earl of Eldon.....	1751	1838	An accomplished and excellent judge.—Lord Chancellor, 1801—1806, and again from 1807 to 1827.
Samuel Crompton ..	1753	1827	Inventor of the spinning-machine, called the 'mule.'
John Flaxman .....	1755	1826	An eminent sculptor, painter, and designer.—The monument of Lord Mansfield in Westminster Abbey, that of Sir J. Reynolds in St. Paul's, and the colossal group of 'Satan and the Archangel Michael,' are among the most celebrated of his works.*
William Pitt .....	1759	1806	One of the most famous of English statesmen.—Second son of the great Earl of Chatham.
John Rennie .....	1761	1821	The great engineer.—Plymouth breakwater was his greatest work.—Others were Waterloo, London, and Southwark Bridges, the London, East India, and Sheerness docks, Holyhead harbour, the Kennet and Avon canal, &c.
William Cobbett ....	1762	1835	An English political writer.—His political writings amount to 100 octavo volumes.
John Wall Callcott..	1766	1821	A great musical composer.—Chiefly remembered for his numerous glees, canons, and catches.
Sir Astley Paston } Cooper .....	1768	1841	A distinguished surgeon.—President of the College of Surgeons in 1817.
Sir Thomas Lawrence	1769	1830	A great portrait painter.—President of the Royal Academy on the death of West in 1820.
Sir Marc Isambard } Brunel .....	1769	1849	A civil engineer of consummate ability and originality.—Inventor of the first double-acting marine-steam engine.
George Canning ....	1770	1827	Statesman and orator.—Premier, April 24th, 1827.
Joseph Mallord Wil- } liam Turner ....	1775	1851	"The prince of landscape painters."
Henry, Lord } Brougham .....	1778	1868	A celebrated lawyer.—Lord Chancellor (1830—1834).
Sir Humphrey Davy	1778	1829	One of the greatest chemists of his own or any age.—Inventor of the miner's 'Safety' Lamp.
George Stephenson ..	1781	1848	The father of the modern railway system.
Sir David Brewster ..	1781	1868	One of the most distinguished of physical inquirers.—Famous for his discoveries in 'Optics.'
Sir Francis Chantrey	1782	1841	Sculptor.
Sir David Wilkie ....	1785	1841	Artist.—The chief of the British school of <i>genre</i> painters.
Sir Henry Bishop....	1786	1855	Musical composer.
Michael Faraday....	1791	1867	One of the greatest physical philosophers of the nineteenth century.—Famous for his discoveries in electricity, chemistry, and physics.
Sir Charles Barry....	1795	1860	Architect of the new palace of Westminster.
Charles Wheatstone	1802		A distinguished man of science.—Inventor of many improvements in electric telegraphy.
Hugh Miller .....	1802	1856	The celebrated geologist and journalist.
Robert Stephenson..	1803	1859	An engineer, second only to his father.
Sir Joseph Paxton ..	1803	1865	An eminent horticulturist and architect.
Isambard Kingdom } Brunel .....	1806	1859	One of the most eminent engineers of the present century.—Builder of the <i>Great Eastern</i> steam-ship.

## VIII. MILITARY AND NAVAL COMMANDERS.

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Campaigns or Engagements.</i>
<b>Egbert</b> .....	—	836	Conquest of the other Saxon kingdoms of the Heptarchy.—The Norse invaders defeated at Hengedown.
<b>Alfred the Great</b> ....	849	901	Wars with the Danish invaders.
<b>Athelstane</b> .....	895	941	Brunanburgh.
<b>Canute</b> .....	—	1036	Conquest of England, Sweden, and Norway.
<b>Harold</b> .....	—	1066	Norwegians defeated at Stamford Bridge.
<b>William I.</b> .....	1027	1087	Hastings.—Wars in France.
<b>Richard I.</b> .....	1157	1199	Third Crusade.—Siege of Acre.—Victories over Saladin.
<b>Simon de Montfort.</b> ..	—	1265	Civil war.—Lewes (1264).—Slain at Evesham.
<b>Edward I.</b> .....	1239	1307	Conquest of Wales.—War with Scotland.—Falkirk (1298).
<b>Edward III.</b> .....	1312	1377	Wars with Scotland and France.
<b>Edward the Black Prince</b> .....	1330	1376	Victories of Crecy and Poitiers.—Navarete, in Spain.
<b>Henry V.</b> .....	1388	1422	Wars with France.—Agincourt (1415).
<b>Richard, Duke of York</b> .....	—	1460	Wars of the Roses.—Slain at Wakefield.
<b>Earl of Warwick.</b> ....	—	1471	Wars of the Roses.—Slain at Barnet.
<b>Thomas, Earl of Surrey, afterwards third Duke of Norfolk</b> .....	1473	1554	Victory over the Scots at Flodden (1513).—Naval engagements with the French.
<b>Sir John Hawkins</b> ..	1520	1595	Expeditions against the Spaniards in the West Indies.—Died at Dominica.—Rear-admiral on board the <i>Victory</i> at the defeat of the Spanish Armada.
<b>Lord Howard, of Effingham</b> .....	1536	1624	Lord High-admiral.—Spanish Armada.—Expedition against Cadiz.
<b>Sir Martin Frobisher</b> ..	—	1594	Commanded the <i>Triumph</i> in the engagement with the Armada.—Expeditions against Spain.
<b>Sir Francis Drake</b> ..	1546	1595	Expeditions against the Spaniards in the West Indies.—Sailed round the world (1577—1580).—Employed against the Armada.
<b>Sir Walter Raleigh</b> ..	1552	1618	With Essex and Effingham in the expedition against Cadiz.—Expedition to Guiana.
<b>Sir Philip Sidney</b> ....	1554	1586	With the Earl of Leicester in the campaign in the Low Countries against Spain.—Mortally wounded at Zutphen.
<b>Robert Devereux, third Earl of Essex</b> ..	1592	1646	Parliamentary general.—Edgehill, Reading, Gloucester, Newbury.
<b>Oliver Cromwell</b> ....	1599	1658	Civil wars.—Marston Moor; Naseby; campaign in Ireland; Dunbar; Worcester.
<b>Robert Blake</b> .....	1599	1657	The founder of England's naval supremacy.—Parliamentary general.—Defence of Taunton.—Engagements with the Dutch fleets.—Expedition to the Mediterranean.
<b>Lord Falkland</b> .....	1610	1643	Royalist general.—Killed at Newbury.
<b>Sir Thomas Fairfax</b> ..	1611	1671	Parliamentary general.—Defeated the Royalists at Hull, Nantwich, &c.—Overthrown at Atherton Moor.—Commanded the right wing at Marston Moor.
<b>George Monk, Duke of Albemarle</b> .....	1608	1669	Parliamentary general.—Naval commander in the wars with Holland.
<b>Sir William Penn</b> ....	1621	1670	Admiral both under the Commonwealth and Charles II.—Expedition to the West Indies.—Captured Jamaica.
<b>William III.</b> .....	1650	1702	Campaign in Ireland.—Battle of the Boyne.
<b>John Benbow</b> .....	1650	1702	Admiral.—Engaged in the West Indies against the French and Spaniards.
<b>Edward, Lord Russell</b> ..	—	1727	Admiral of the united fleets of England and Holland.—Battle of La Hogue (1692).

MILITARY AND NAVAL COMMANDERS (*continued*).

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Born.</i>	<i>Died.</i>	<i>Campaigns or Engagements.</i>
<b>John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough</b> .....	1650	1722	War of the Spanish Succession.—Blenheim, Ramillies, Oudenarde, Malplaquet.
<b>Sir George Rooke</b> ....	1650	1709	Naval commander.—Captured Gibraltar.
<b>George Byng, Viscount Torrington</b> }	1663	1733	Took part in the battles of Beachy Head and La Hogue.—Assisted at the capture of Gibraltar.—Defeated the Spanish fleet off Messina.
<b>Lord George Anson</b> ..	1697	1762	Made the voyage round the world.—Finisterre (1747).
<b>Edward, Lord Hawke</b>	1715	1781	Victories over the French fleet off Belleisle (1747) and Quiberon (1759).
<b>Baron Rodney</b> .....	1718	1792	Expeditions to the West Indies.—Victory over the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent (1780).
<b>Duke of Cumberland</b>	1721	1765	Dettingen.—Fontenoy.—Culloden.
<b>Lord Hood</b> .....	1724	1816	West Indies.—Toulon.
<b>Lord Clive</b> .....	1725	1774	Wars in India.—Arcot.—Plassey.
<b>Lord Howe</b> .....	1725	1799	Victory over the French fleet off Brest (1794).
<b>Viscount Keppel</b> ....	1725	1786	Engagement with the French fleet off Ushant.
<b>Sir Eyre Coote</b> .....	1726	1783	Plassey, Porto Novo, and Pollilore.
<b>James Wolfe</b> .....	1727	1759	Capture of Quebec.
<b>Captain James Cook</b>	1728	1779	The great voyager and discoverer.
<b>Viscount Duncan</b> ....	1731	1804	Victory over the Dutch fleet near Camperdown (1797).
<b>Sir Ralph Abercrombie</b> ..... }	1734	1801	Seven Years' War.—Expedition to Egypt.—Killed at Alexandria.
<b>Viscount Keith</b> .....	1746	1823	Naval engagements with the Dutch.—Capture of Cape Colony.—Landing at Aboukir.
<b>Lord Exmouth</b> .....	1757	1833	Mediterranean.—Expedition against Algiers.
<b>Lord Nelson</b> .....	1758	1805	The most renowned of Britain's admirals.—St. Vincent, Aboukir, Copenhagen, Trafalgar.
<b>Sir John Moore</b> .....	1761	1809	Egypt.—Peninsular war.—Killed at Corunna.
<b>Sir William Sidney Smith</b> ..... }	1764	1841	Toulon (under Lord Hood).—Defence of Acre.—Egypt.—Expedition against Constantinople (1807).
<b>Duke of Wellington</b>	1769	1852	The greatest of England's generals.—Mahratta and Peninsular wars.—Waterloo.
<b>Sir Charles James Napier</b> ..... }	1782	1853	Peninsular war.—Conquest of Sind.—Sikh war.
<b>Sir Charles Napier</b> ..	1786	1861	Blockade of Toulon.—Siege of Acre.—Russian war (Bomarsund).
<b>Lord Raglan</b> .....	1788	1855	Peninsular war.—Waterloo.—Crimean war.
<b>Lord Lyons</b> .....	1790	1859	Navarino.—Russian war (Sebastopol).
<b>Lord Clyde (Sir Colin Campbell)</b> .. }	1792	1863	Peninsular war.—America (1814).—Chinese and Sikh wars.—Crimea.—Indian Mutiny.
<b>Sir Henry Havelock</b>	1795	1857	Burmese war. (1824).—Cabul.—Relief of Lucknow.



## IX. ADMINISTRATIONS UNDER THE BRUNSWICK DYNASTY.

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Premier.</i>	<i>Lord Chancellor.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
1714	Viscount Townshend	{ LORD HARCOURT (Aug. 3) LORD COWPER (Sept. 21)	Office of Lord-Treasurer abolished.—Walpole, Chief Commissioner of the Treasury, and Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Stanhope and Pulteney, Secretaries of State.
1716	Earl of Stanhope.....	LORD MACCLESFIELD (1718).	Sunderland and Addison, Secretaries of State.
1721	Sir Robert Walpole ..	{ LORD KING, 1725. LORD TALBOT, 1733. LORD HARDWICKE, 1737	Walpole, First Lord of the Treasury and Prime Minister.*
1742	Lord Wilmington ....	"	Lord Cartaret, afterwards Earl Granville, Secretary of State, and, in reality, Premier.
1744	Mr. Henry Pelham....	"	'The Broad Bottom Ministry.'—Pelham was the brother of the Duke of Newcastle.
1754	Duke of Newcastle....	"	Newcastle succeeds to the Premiership on the death of his brother.—Mr. Fox Secretary of State
1756	Duke of Devonshire ..	"	Mr. Pitt becomes Secretary of State, but is shortly afterwards dismissed from office.
1757	Duke of Newcastle....	LORD KEEPER HENLEY (Lord Northington).	Pitt, chief Secretary of State, and virtually Prime Minister.
1762	Lord Bute .....	"	Grenville, Secretary of State.
1763	George Grenville .....	"	Lord Halifax succeeds Grenville as Secretary of State.—Grenville, Chancellor of the Exchequer as well as First Lord of the Treasury.
1765	Lord Rockingham ....	"	The Duke of Grafton, Secretary of State.
1766	Duke of Grafton .....	LORD CAMDEN.	Charles Townshend, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Pitt forms the ministry, and becomes Privy Seal, with the title of Earl Chatham.
1770	Lord North .....	{ CHARLES YORKE. LORD BATHURST, 1771. LORD THURLOW, 1778.	Lord North, First Lord and Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1782	Lord Rockingham ....	"	Lord Cavendish, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Mr. Fox, Secretary of State.
1782	Earl of Shelburne ....	"	W. Pitt, Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1783	Duke of Portland ....	"	Lord North and Fox virtually Prime Ministers.
1783	William Pitt .....	{ LORD LOUGHBOROUGH, 1793.	Pitt, First Lord and Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1801	Henry Addington ....	LORD ELDON.	Addington, both First Lord and Chancellor of the Exchequer.

\* Since the time of Walpole, who so long directed the affairs of the nation, the First Lord of the Treasury has generally been regarded as Premier. Previously to his time, the chief authority in the cabinet had usually been enjoyed by one of the Secretaries of State.



ADMINISTRATIONS UNDER THE BRUNSWICK  
DYNASTY (*continued*).

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Premier.</i>	<i>Lord Chancellor.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
1804	William Pitt .....	LORD ELDON.	Pitt, both First Lord and Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1806	Lord Grenville .....	LORD ERSKINE.	The Ministry of 'All the Talents.'—Fox, Foreign Secretary.
1807	Duke of Portland.....	LORD ELDON.	George Canning, Foreign Secretary.—Spencer Percival, Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1809	Spencer Percival .....	"	Percival continues to hold his former office.—Lord Palmerston, Under Secretary of State.—Marquis of Wellesley, Foreign Secretary.
1812	Lord Liverpool.....	"	Mr. Vansittart, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Robert Peel and Canning, Secretaries of State.
1827	George Canning .....	LORD LYNDHURST.	Canning, First Lord and Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1827	Viscount Goderich ....	"	Mr. Goulburn, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Peel and Lord Palmerston, Secretaries of State.
1828	Duke of Wellington ..	"	
1830	Earl Grey.....	LORD BROUGHAM.	Lords Althorpe, Palmerston, and Goderich included in this administration.
1834	Viscount Melbourne ..	"	Lord Althorpe retains the Chancellorship of the Exchequer, and Lord Palmerston remains Foreign Secretary.
1834	Sir Robert Peel.....	LORD LYNDHURST.	Lord John Russell and Lord Palmerston, Secretaries of State.
1835	Viscount Melbourne ..	LORD COTTENHAM.*	
1841	Sir Robert Peel.....	LORD LYNDHURST.	Sir J. Graham and Lord Aberdeen, Secretaries of State.
1846	Lord John Russell ....	{ LORD COTTENHAM. LORD TRURO.	Sir C. Wood, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Sir G. Grey and Lords Palmerston and Granville, Secretaries of State.
1852	Earl of Derby .....	LORD ST. LEONARDS.	Benjamin Disraeli, Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1852	Earl of Aberdeen.....	LORD CRANWORTH.	W. E. Gladstone, Chancellor of the Exchequer.—Lord Palmerston and Lord J. Russell, Secretaries of State.
1855	Lord Palmerston .....	"	Sir G. Grey and Lord Clarendon, Secretaries of State.
1858	Earl of Derby .....	LORD CHELMSFORD.	Benjamin Disraeli, Chancellor of the Exchequer.


\* During the early part of Lord Melbourne's administration, the Great Seal was in commission.

**ADMINISTRATIONS UNDER THE BRUNSWICK  
DYNASTY (continued).**

<i>Date.</i>	<i>Premier.</i>	<i>Lord Chancellor.</i>	<i>Other Particulars.</i>
1859	<b>Lord Palmerston</b> ....	{ LORD CAMPBELL. { LORD WESTBURY.	<b>W. E. Gladstone</b> , Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1865	<b>Earl Russell</b> .....	LORD CRANWORTH.	<b>W. E. Gladstone</b> , Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1866	<b>Earl of Derby</b> .....	LORD CHELMSFORD.	<b>Benjamin Disraeli</b> , Chancellor of the Exchequer.
1868	<b>Benjamin Disraeli</b> ....	LORD CAIRNS.	<b>G. W. Hunt</b> , Chancellor of the Exchequer.— <b>G. Hardy</b> , and <b>Lord Stanley</b> , Secretaries of State.
1868	<b>William Ewart Gladstone</b> .....	{ LORD HATHERLEY. { LORD SELBORNE.	<b>Robert Lowe</b> , Chancellor of the Exchequer.

**X. STYLES OF ENGLISH ARCHITECTURE.**

<i>Name.</i>	<i>Prevailed.</i>	<i>Characteristics.</i>
<b>SAXON</b> .....	—1041	Towers without buttresses. "Long and short work" at the angles; arches frequently formed of two long straight stones leaning against each other. (Examples: Barnack and Earl's Barton Churches, in Northamptonshire. Both have, however, later additions.)
<b>NORMAN</b> .....	1041 to 1154	Introduced by Edward the Confessor.—Round-headed doorways and windows; heavy pillars. The later Norman buildings were richly ornamented with mouldings, chiefly zig-zag. (Examples: Nave, Rochester Cathedral; the chapel in the White Tower of the Tower of London is one of the earliest examples of pure Norman work.)
<b>GOTHIC:—</b> <b>TRANSITION</b> ....	1154 to 1189	Same, but with pointed windows. (Examples: Salisbury Cathedral; and the Choir, Canterbury Cathedral.)
<b>EARLY ENGLISH</b>	1189 to 1272	Narrow-pointed windows, generally plain; clustered pillars. (Example: Choir, Westminster Abbey.)
<b>TRANSITION</b> ....	1272 to 1307	Windows enlarged, and divided into several lights by mullions; the heads filled with tracery. (Example: east end of Lincoln Cathedral.)
<b>DECORATED</b> ....	1307 to 1377	Geometrical tracery in windows; enriched doorways; beautifully arranged mouldings. (Example: Lady Chapel, Ely.)
<b>TRANSITION</b> .... <b>PERPENDICULAR</b>	1377 to 1399 1399 to 1547	Lines less flowing. (Example: Choir, York Minster) Upright lines of mouldings in windows and doorways; the mullions frequently crossed by horizontal bars; combination of square heads with pointed mouldings, open timber roofs are very common in this style. (Examples: Nave of Winchester Cathedral; King's College Chapel, Cambridge.)
<b>TUDOR, or ELIZABETHAN</b> .....	1550 to 1600	A debased species of Perpendicular, mostly employed in domestic architecture. (Examples: Thornbury Castle, Gloucestershire; Compton Winyate House, Warwickshire.)
<b>RENAISSANCE:—</b> <b>JACOBEAN</b> .....	1603 to 1641	An admixture of Classical with all kinds of Gothic or Pointed Styles. (Example: Longleat House, Wilts.)
<b>MODERN</b> .....	—	Italian, but mixture of all styles, including Byzantine. There has also been a considerable revival of the mediæval styles, as witnessed in the New Houses of Parliament and numerous churches. (Examples: Banqueting House, Whitehall; St. Paul's Cathedral; new Government Offices, London.)

 *NEW READERS, SPECIALLY ADAPTED TO THE  
EDUCATION CODE OF 1871.*

---

THE  
TECHNICAL SERIES OF READING BOOKS.  
*With Numerous Illustrations.*

---

*\*\* ADOPTED BY THE LONDON & OTHER SCHOOL BOARDS.*

---

The growing demand for a series of books specially framed with the view of furnishing lessons that are at one and the same time interesting and instructive, constitutes the prime motive for the production of the present distinctive and specific course. It will be found, therefore, that the successive volumes of these Readers steadily tend in the direction of the domains of Nature, Art, and Science,—a uniform, duly proportioned, and rigid regard being paid to such features as command the interest and attention of enlightened minds.

---

SYLLABUS OF THE TECHNICAL SERIES OF  
READING BOOKS.

- \* BOOK I.—64 pages, cloth, 6*d.* Easy Lessons in Monosyllables on Natural History and Common Objects, with simple Stories and Fables.
- BOOK II.—96 pages, cloth, 8*d.* Natural History—Miscellaneous Lessons—Simple Stories—Poetry.
- BOOK III.—128 pages, cloth, 10*d.* Natural History—Geography of the British Isles—Object Lessons—Stories—Poetry—Dictation Lessons—Questions.
- BOOK IV.—160 pages, cloth, 1*s.* Natural History—Geography of the British Possessions—Easy Lessons of a Scientific Nature—English History, to the Tudor Period—Poetry—Dictation Lessons—Questions.
- BOOK V.—224 pages, cloth, 1*s.* 3*d.* Descriptive Geography of the Continents, etc.—Physics—English History, to the American Revolution—Poetry—Dictation Lessons—Questions.
- BOOK VI., WITH AN APPENDIX ON ENGLISH COMPOSITION.—288 pages, cloth, 1*s.* 6*d.* Geography (Physical, Commercial, and Astronomical)—Physics and Applied Mechanics—Physiology and Sanitary Economy—Political Economy, together with Modern English History and Constitutional Progress—Literature, with alternate samples of Prose and Poetry.
- \* URDU READERS—Adapted from the above, for use in the Vernacular Schools of India. Vols. I. and II., at 6*d.* each.


# NEW STANDARD READERS.

The new style of Binding equals that of any other School Books,  
in NEATNESS combined with STRENGTH.

The Original Standard Readers kept in Stock.

## THE NEW STANDARD READERS.

Remodelled and GREATLY Simplified Edition of the *first four* Readers, with numerous illustrations, Spelling and Dictation Exercises on all the difficult words, Arithmetical Tables, Sums, Lithographed Writing, &c., at the following *reduced* prices.

	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
<i>The NEW Standard Primer.</i>		
64 pp. ... ..	0	3
<i>The NEW First Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Tales and Rhymes. 64 pp. ... ..	0	4
<i>The NEW Second Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Easy Stories. 96 pp. ... ..	0	6
<i>The NEW Third Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Moral Tales. 128 pp. ... ..	0	8
<i>The NEW Fourth Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Stories of Animals. 160 pp. ... ..	0	10
<i>The Fifth Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Poetry and Adventure. 256 pp. ... ..	1	2
<i>The Sixth Standard Reader ;</i>		
Or, Descriptive Sketches. 320 pp. ... ..	1	4
 <i>The NEW Fifth Standard Reader.</i>	} Ready Sept. 1st.	
<i>The NEW Sixth Standard Reader.</i>		

## CHEAP EDITION OF THE NEW READERS.

<i>The NEW Standard Primer</i> ... ..	per doz.	1	6
<i>The NEW First Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	3
<i>The NEW Second Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	5
<i>The NEW Third Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	7
<i>The NEW Fourth Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	8
<i>The Fifth Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	8
<i>The Sixth Standard Reader</i> ... ..		0	10

\*.\* Introductory to both the Technical and the Standard Series :—

<i>Ornamented Reading Sheets</i> ... ..	per set	2	6
Ditto ditto mounted ... ..	,,	5	0

# MANUALS OF SPECIFIC INSTRUCTION.



## ENGLISH GRAMMAR, &c.

	<i>s. d.</i>
<b>English Grammar Simplified.</b>	
Framed with especial reference to Analysis and Composition, with copious Examples and Exercises, Questions, and Appended Tables. 64 pp. Cloth ... ..	0 6
<b>Easy Steps in English Composition ;</b>	
With Supplementary Exercises. 48 pp. Cloth ... ..	0 6
<b>Analysis of Sentences.</b>	
In a Series of Short Lessons, with a set of carefully Graduated Exercises. 48 pp. Cloth ... ..	0 6
<b>Manual of English Spelling.</b>	
Containing all the difficulties of Spelling, in a series of systematically Graduated Lessons, with numerous Practical Exercises. 192 pp. Cloth ... ..	1 0

---

## HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

<b>Facts and Features of English History.</b>	
In a Series of alternating Reading and Memory Exercises, with Historical Map and Appendices, by John Hill, Principal of the Government Normal Institution, Colombo, Ceylon. 320 pp. Cloth, 2s. ; superior edition, extra gilt ... ..	2 6
<b>Manual of Elementary Geography.</b>	
Re-modelled and completely revised to 1873. With maps. 160 pp. Strong limp, 9d. ; cloth ... ..	1 0
<b>The Sixpenny Geography :</b>	
Containing Parts I. and II. of the Manual of Geography entire, and the remaining portion abridged.	
<b>Laurie's Physical Maps.</b>	
Being fac-similes of relievos, executed in crayon-lithography, mounted on cardboard, varnished, each 6d., viz. :—1. Hemispheres. 2. British Islands. 3. India. 4. Europe. 5. Asia. 6. Africa. 7. N. America. 8. S. America.	



# LAURIE'S MANUALS OF SPECIFIC INSTRUCTION.

(Continued.)

s. d

## The Primary Geography.

In a Series of Progressive Lessons; in Three Parts, with Maps; adapted to the requirements of the Geography Section of the "Specific Subjects" Schedule of the New Code.

PART I. (Standard IV.)—DEFINITIONS; THE MEANING OF A MAP; AND THE CHIEF DIVISIONS OF THE WORLD. With Two Maps. 32 pp. Paper ... 0 2

PART II. (Standard V.)—PHYSICAL FEATURES AND POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF ENGLAND AND WALES. With Two Maps. 32 pp. Paper ... 0 2

PART III. (Standard VI.)—INDUSTRIAL AND COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY OF ENGLAND; GEOGRAPHY OF SCOTLAND, IRELAND, AND THE REMAINING COUNTRIES OF EUROPE. With Two Maps. 48 pp. Paper ... 0 3

## Geography of India.

With Maps and Historical Appendix tracing the growth of the British Empire in India. 128 pp. Cloth ... 1 6

## ARITHMETICS, &c

### The Standard Manual of Arithmetic.

192 pp. Strong limp, 9d.; cloth, 1s.; with Key ... 1 6

Also in Parts: viz., I., II., III., IV., at 1d.; V., VI., at 1½d.; VII., at 2½d.

### Key to Standard Manual of Arithmetic.

Cloth ... 1 0

### Arithmetical Examples.

In a series of plain and carefully Graduated Exercises, chiefly in words. In Three Divisions, 1½d. each; complete cloth ... 0 8

DIVISION I. Simple Rules—Compound Rules.

" II. Bills and Practice—Weights and Measures.

" III. Fractions—Proportion—The Metric System.

\*\* Also to be had in the form of Cards, in sets corresponding to the Six Parts.

### Answers to Arithmetical Examples.

Complete, cloth, 6d.; or in Three Parts, at 3d. each.

### Elementary Algebra.

In a series of Graduated Exercises. Complete, 64 pp., cloth, 6d.; or in Two Parts, at 3d. each.

### Answers to Elementary Algebra,

Cloth ... 0 6

THE  
**Shilling Entertaining Library.**

WITH FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS, BY FIRST-RATE ARTISTS, AND  
TASTEFULLY BOUND.

---

The following Ten Volumes are now on sale :—

1. **Robinson Crusoe.**  
“In a handsome new dress, and beautifully illustrated.”—*North British Mail.*
2. **Christmas Tales.**  
“They are all good tales, written in simple, nervous language, and varied in their subjects—grave, gay, lively, and severe.”
3. **History of the Plague.**  
“Perhaps next to his ‘Robinson Crusoe’ ‘De Foe’s History of the Plague of 1665’ is one of the best works the Editor could have chosen. As a realistic picture of the time, replete with the terribly picturesque, it has never been surpassed.”—*London Review.*
4. **Gulliver’s Travels.**  
“Purged from all objectionable passages, and beautifully illustrated.”
5. **Sandford and Merton.**  
“This volume enchains and preserves the interest and attention, by giving incidents and their lessons without all the didactics of the original.”  
—*Nonconformist.*
6. **Evenings at Home.**  
“We doubt whether any prettier edition of this dear old book was ever printed than this one.”—*Sun.*
7. **The Swiss Family Robinson.**  
“This work is at length presented to the public (*for the first time*) in a form so revised and corrected as, it is presumed, the author himself would have adopted had he re-written the whole in the light of the present day.”  
—*Sun.*
8. **Select Anecdotes.**  
“Will surely supply an agreeable and innocent recreation in moments of leisure or languor. It is infinitely amusing.”—*Nonconformist.*
9. **Pilgrim’s Progress.**  
“Like its companion volumes, it is characterised by its excellent print, good illustrations, and strong serviceable binding.”—*Public Opinion.*
10. **Vicar of Wakefield.**  
“School libraries will be incomplete without this admirable set of entertaining books.”—*Papers for the Schoolmaster.*  
“Charming little Shilling Library of English Classics.”—*Sun.*  
“Excellent series.”—*Reader.*

# LAURIE'S STANDARD COPY BOOKS.

Being a systematic Course of Exercises for the rapid acquirement of a CLEAR and BOLD handwriting; in Thirteen Books, with a Supplementary Series of Eight.

## *Elementary Series (per dozen, 2s.).*

Each page has two headlines: the one faint for tracing; the other heavy and bold, as a sample for copying.

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| I. Elementary Strokes and Small Letters .                                       | Text.                   |
| II. Small Letters ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .                                | Text.                   |
| III. Small Letters, combined in easy Words<br>and Figures . . . . .             | Text and Small Text.    |
| IV. Long Letters and their Combination .  | Small Text.             |
| V. Capitals and Christian Names, &c. .  | Text and Round.         |
| VI. Proper Names . . . . .  | Small Text.             |
| VII. Miscellaneous Sentences, Hints on<br>Writing, &c., &c. . . . .             | Round.                  |
| VIII. Weights and Measures, Fractions, etc.                                     | Text and Small.         |
| IX. Geographical—The British Empire .   | } Small Hand.           |
| X. Geographical—The Countries, Capitals,<br>Rivers, &c., of the World . . . . . |                         |
| XI. Leading Historical Events, &c., with<br>Dates . . . . .                     |                         |
| XII. Historical Events ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .                           |                         |
| XII½. Revise Book . . . . .   | Text, Round, and Small. |

## *Supplementary Series (per dozen, 2s. 6d.).*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| *XIII. Letters, Miscellaneous.                       |  |
| *XIV. Business Letters and Bills . . . . .           | } Sample Letters, &c., designed<br>to be copied on the opposite<br>page. |
| *XV. Letters, Complimentary, and<br>Poetry . . . . . |  |

 *Duplicates of Nos. XIII., XIV., and XV. in French.*

- XVI. Finishing Hand for Males.
- XVII. Finishing Hand for Females.
- XVIII. Sketch Book for Outline Maps.
- XIX. Outline Maps. First Series.
- XX. Ditto. Second Series.

*Superior Edition, post size, on extra-fine paper, 4s. per dozen.*

\*New Editions in copper plate and fluent handwriting, ready Sept. 1.

---

## THE STANDARD HOME-LESSON BOOKS.

So simple and carefully graduated as to be readily understood without assistance.

- PART I., 24 pp., 1d. PART II., 32 pp., 2d.  
PART III., 48 pp., 2d. PART IV., 48 pp., 2d. PART V., 64 pp., 3d.







